LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

BENJAMIN L. D’OOGE

This public domain grammar was brought to digital life by:

Textkit – Greek and Latin Learning tools

Find more grammars at http://www.textkit.com
LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE, Ph.D.
PROFESSOR IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

GINN AND COMPANY
BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON
PREFAE

To make the course preparatory to Cæsar at the same time systematic, thorough, clear, and interesting is the purpose of this series of lessons.

The first pages are devoted to a brief discussion of the Latin language, its history, and its educational value. The body of the book, consisting of seventy-nine lessons, is divided into three parts.

Part I is devoted to pronunciation, quantity, accent, and kindred introductory essentials.

Part II carries the work through the first sixty lessons, and is devoted to the study of forms and vocabulary, together with some elementary constructions, a knowledge of which is necessary for the translation of the exercises and reading matter. The first few lessons have been made unusually simple, to meet the wants of pupils not well grounded in English grammar.

Part III contains nineteen lessons, and is concerned primarily with the study of syntax and of subjunctive and irregular verb forms. The last three of these lessons constitute a review of all the constructions presented in the book. There is abundant easy reading matter; and, in order to secure proper concentration of effort upon syntax and translation, no new vocabularies are introduced, but the vocabularies in Part II are reviewed.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers:

The forms are presented in their natural sequence, and are given, for the most part, in the body of the book as well as in a grammatical appendix. The work on the verb is intensive in character, work in other directions being reduced to a minimum while this is going on. The forms of the subjunctive are studied in correlation with the subjunctive constructions.
The vocabulary has been selected with the greatest care, using Lodge's "Dictionary of Secondary Latin" and Browne's "Latin Word List" as a basis. There are about six hundred words, exclusive of proper names, in the special vocabularies, and these are among the simplest and commonest words in the language. More than ninety-five per cent of those chosen are Cæsarian, and of these more than ninety per cent are used in Cæsar five or more times. The few words not Cæsarian are of such frequent occurrence in Cicero, Vergil, and other authors as to justify their appearance here. But teachers desiring to confine word study to Cæsar can easily do so, as the Cæsarian words are printed in the vocabularies in distinctive type. Concrete nouns have been preferred to abstract, root words to compounds and derivatives, even when the latter were of more frequent occurrence in Cæsar. To assist the memory, related English words are added in each special vocabulary. To insure more careful preparation, the special vocabularies have been removed from their respective lessons and placed by themselves. The general vocabulary contains about twelve hundred words, and of these above eighty-five per cent are found in Cæsar.

The syntax has been limited to those essentials which recent investigations, such as those of Dr. Lee Byrne and his collaborators, have shown to belong properly to the work of the first year. The constructions are presented, as far as possible, from the standpoint of English, the English usage being given first and the Latin compared or contrasted with it. Special attention has been given to the constructions of participles, the gerund and gerundive, and the infinitive in indirect statements. Constructions having a logical connection are not separated but are treated together.

Exercises for translation occur throughout, those for translation into Latin being, as a rule, only half as long as those for translation into English. In Part III a few of the commoner idioms in Cæsar are introduced and the sentences are drawn mainly from that author. From first to last a consistent effort is made to instill a proper regard for Latin word order, the first principles of which are laid down early in the course.
Selections for reading are unusually abundant and are introduced from the earliest possible moment. These increase in number and length as the book progresses, and, for the most part, are made an integral part of the lessons instead of being massed at the end of the book. This arrangement insures a more constant and thorough drill in forms and vocabulary, promotes reading power, and affords a breathing spell between succeeding subjects. The material is drawn from historical and mythological sources, and the vocabulary employed includes but few words not already learned. The book closes with a continued story which recounts the chief incidents in the life of a Roman boy. The last chapters record his experiences in Caesar's army, and contain much information that will facilitate the interpretation of the Commentaries. The early emphasis placed on word order and sentence structure, the simplicity of the syntax, and the familiarity of the vocabulary, make the reading selections especially useful for work in sight translation.

Reviews are called for at frequent intervals, and to facilitate this branch of the work an Appendix of Reviews has been prepared, covering both the vocabulary and the grammar.

The illustrations are numerous, and will, it is hoped, do much to stimulate interest in the ancient world and to create true and lasting impressions of Roman life and times.

A consistent effort has been made to use simple language and clear explanation throughout.

As an aid to teachers using this book a "Teacher's Manual" has been prepared, which contains, in addition to general suggestions, notes on each lesson.

The author wishes to express his gratitude to the numerous teachers who tested the advance pages in their classes, and, as a result of their experience, have given much valuable aid by criticism and suggestion. Particular acknowledgments are due to Miss A. Susan Jones of the Central High School, Grand Rapids, Michigan; to Miss Clara Allison of the High School at Hastings, Michigan; and to Miss Helen B. Muir and Mr. Orland O. Norris, teachers of Latin in this institution.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE

MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE
CONTENTS

LESSON
To the Student — By way of Introduction ........................................... 1–4

PART I. THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

Alphabet, Sounds of the Letters, Syllables, Quantity, Accent,
How to Read Latin ................................................................. 5–11

PART II. WORDS AND FORMS

I–VI. First Principles — Subject and Predicate, Inflection, Number,
      Nominative Subject, Possessive Genitive, Agreement of
      Verb, Direct Object, Indirect Object, etc. — Dialogue................................................................. 12–24

VII–VIII. First or A-Declension — Gender, Agreement of Adjectives,
          Word Order ........................................................................ 25–30


XI. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions ............................................. 36–37

XII. Nouns in -ius and -ium — Germania ......................................................... 38–39

XIII. Second Declension (Continued) — Nouns in -er and -ir —
      Italia — Dialogue ..................................................................... 39–41

XIV. Possessive Adjective Pronouns .................................................................... 42–43

XV. Ablative Denoting With — Cause, Means, Accompaniment, Manner — The Romans Prepare for War ................................................................. 44–46

XVI. The Nine Irregular Adjectives .................................................................... 46–47

XVII. The Demonstrative is, ea, id — Dialogue .................................................. 48–50

XVIII. Conjugation — Present, Imperfect, and Future of sum —
       Dialogue ................................................................................ 51–53

XIX. Present Active Indicative of amō and moneō .............................................. 54–56

XX. Imperfect Active Indicative of amō and moneō —
    Meaning of the Imperfect — Niobe and her Children .......................... 56–57

XXI. Future Active Indicative of amō and moneō — Niobe
     and her Children (Concluded) .................................................... 58–59

XXII. Review of Verbs — The Dative with Adjectives — Cornelia
      and her Jewels ........................................................................ 59–61
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XXIII. Present Active Indicative of regō and audiō—</td>
<td>61-63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornelia and Her Jewels (Concluded)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIV. Imperfect Active Indicative of regō and audiō—</td>
<td>63-65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXV. Future Active Indicative of regō and audiō—</td>
<td>65-66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVI. Verbs in -iō — Present, Imperfect, and Future Active</td>
<td>66-68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative of capiō — The Imperative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVII. Passive Voice — Present, Imperfect, and Future Active</td>
<td>68-72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative of amō and moneō — Perseus and Andromeda</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of regō and</td>
<td>72-73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiō — Perseus and Andromeda (Continued)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIX. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of -iō Verbs</td>
<td>73-75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Passive Infinitive and Imperative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX. Synopses in the Four Conjugations — The Ablative Denoting From</td>
<td>75-78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place from Which, Separation, Personal Agent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of sum — Dialogue</td>
<td>79-81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXII. Perfect Active Indicative of the Four Regular Conjugations —</td>
<td>81-83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meanings of the Perfect — Perseus and Andromeda (Continued)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIII. Pluperfect and Future Perfect Active Indicative — Perfect</td>
<td>84-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Infinitive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIV. Review of the Active Voice — Perseus and Andromeda (Concluded)</td>
<td>86-87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXV. Passive Perfects of the Indicative — Perfect Passive and Future</td>
<td>88-90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Infinitive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVI. Review of Principal Parts — Prepositions, Yes-or-No Questions</td>
<td>90-93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVII. Conjugation of possum — The Infinitive used as in English —</td>
<td>93-96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative Subject of an Infinitive — The Faithless Tarpeia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVIII. The Relative Pronoun and the Interrogative Pronoun —</td>
<td>97-101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agreement of the Relative — The Faithless Tarpeia (Concluded)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIX–XLI. The Third Declension — Consonant Stems</td>
<td>101-106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLII. Review Lesson — Terror Cimbricus</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIII. Third Declension — I-Stems</td>
<td>108-110</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON</th>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XLIV.</td>
<td>Irregular Nouns of the Third Declension — Gender in the Third Declension — The First Bridge over the Rhine</td>
<td>111-112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLV.</td>
<td>Adjectives of the Third Declension — The Romans Invade the Enemy’s Country</td>
<td>113-115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVI.</td>
<td>The Fourth or U-Declension</td>
<td>116-117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVII.</td>
<td>Expressions of Place — Place to Which, Place from Which, Place at or in Which, the Locative — Declension of domus</td>
<td>117-121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVIII.</td>
<td>The Fifth or E-Declension — Ablative of Time — Dædalus and Icarus (Continued)</td>
<td>121-123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIX.</td>
<td>Pronouns — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns — Dædalus and Icarus (Concluded)</td>
<td>123-126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L.</td>
<td>The Intensive Pronoun ipse and the Demonstrative idem — How Horatius Held the Bridge</td>
<td>126-127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LI.</td>
<td>The Demonstratives hic, iste, ille — A German Chief-tain Addresses his Followers — How Horatius Held the Bridge (Continued)</td>
<td>128-130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LII.</td>
<td>The Indefinite Pronouns — How Horatius Held the Bridge (Concluded)</td>
<td>130-132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIII.</td>
<td>Regular Comparison of Adjectives</td>
<td>133-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIV.</td>
<td>Irregular Comparison of Adjectives — Ablative with Comparatives</td>
<td>135-136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV.</td>
<td>Irregular Comparison of Adjectives (Continued) — Declension of plūs</td>
<td>137-138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVI.</td>
<td>Irregular Comparison of Adjectives (Concluded) — Ablative of the Measure of Difference</td>
<td>138-139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVII.</td>
<td>Formation and Comparison of Adverbs</td>
<td>140-142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVIII.</td>
<td>Numerals — Partitive Genitive</td>
<td>142-144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIX.</td>
<td>Numerals (Continued) — Accusative of Extent — Caesar in Gaul</td>
<td>144-146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LX.</td>
<td>Deponent Verbs — Prepositions with the Accusative</td>
<td>146-147</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PART III. CONSTRUCTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON</th>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LXI.</td>
<td>The Subjunctive Mood — Inflection of the Present — Indicative and Subjunctive Compared</td>
<td>148-151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXII.</td>
<td>The Subjunctive of Purpose</td>
<td>151-153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXIII.</td>
<td>Inflection of the Imperfect Subjunctive — Sequence of Tenses</td>
<td>153-155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXIV.</td>
<td>Inflection of the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive — Substantive Clauses of Purpose</td>
<td>156-159</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LXV. Subjective of <em>possunt</em> — Verbs of Fearing</td>
<td>160–161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXVI. The Participles — Tenses and Declension</td>
<td>161–164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXVII. The Irregular Verbs <em>volō, nōlō, mālō</em> — Ablative Absolute</td>
<td>164–166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXVIII. The Irregular Verb <em>fiō</em> — Subjunctive of Result</td>
<td>167–168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXIX. Subjunctive of Characteristic — Predicate Accusative</td>
<td>169–171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXX. Constructions with <em>cum</em> — Ablative of Specification</td>
<td>171–173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXI. Vocabulary Review — Gerund and Gerundive — Predicate Genitive</td>
<td>173–177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXII. The Irregular Verb <em>ēō</em> — Indirect Statements</td>
<td>177–180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXIII. Vocabulary Review — The Irregular Verb <em>ferō</em> — Dative with Compounds</td>
<td>181–183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXIV. Vocabulary Review — Subjunctive in Indirect Questions</td>
<td>183–185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXV. Vocabulary Review — Dative of Purpose or End for Which</td>
<td>185–186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXVI. Vocabulary Review — Genitive and Ablative of Quality or Description</td>
<td>186–188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXVII. Review of Agreement — Review of the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative</td>
<td>189–190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXVIII. Review of the Ablative</td>
<td>191–192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXIX. Review of the Syntax of Verbs</td>
<td>192–193</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# READING MATTER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Suggestions</td>
<td>194–195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Labors of Hercules</td>
<td>196–203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. Cornelius Lentulus: The Story of a Roman Boy</td>
<td>204–225</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# APPENDIXES AND VOCABULARIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appendix</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Appendix I. Tables of Declensions, Conjugations, Numerals, etc.</td>
<td>226–260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix II. Rules of Syntax</td>
<td>261–264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix III. Reviews</td>
<td>265–282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Vocabularies</td>
<td>283–298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin-English Vocabulary</td>
<td>299–331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English-Latin Vocabulary</td>
<td>332–343</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Index | 344–348 |
LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

TO THE STUDENT—BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION

What is Latin? If you will look at the map of Italy on the opposite page, you will find near the middle of the peninsula and facing the west coast a district called Latium,¹ and Rome its capital. The Latin language, meaning the language of Latium, was spoken by the ancient Romans and other inhabitants of Latium, and Latin was the name applied to it after the armies of Rome had carried the knowledge of her language far beyond its original boundaries. As the English of to-day is not quite the same as that spoken two or three hundred years ago, so Latin was not always the same at all times, but changed more or less in the course of centuries. The sort of Latin you are going to learn was in use about two thousand years ago. And that period has been selected because the language was then at its best and the greatest works of Roman literature were being produced. This period, because of its supreme excellence, is called the Golden Age of Roman letters.

The Spread of Latin. For some centuries after Rome was founded, the Romans were a feeble and insignificant people, their territory was limited to Latium, and their existence constantly threatened by warlike neighbors. But after the third century before Christ, Rome’s power grew rapidly. She conquered all Italy, then reached out for the lands across the sea and beyond the Alps, and finally ruled over the whole ancient world. The empire thus established lasted for more than four

¹ Pronounce Lāˈʃiːəm.
hundred years. The importance of Latin increased with the growth of Roman power, and what had been a dialect spoken by a single tribe became the universal language. Gradually the language changed somewhat, developing differently in different countries. In Italy it has become Italian, in Spain Spanish, and in France French. All these nations, therefore, are speaking a modernized form of Latin.

The Romans and the Greeks. In their career of conquest the Romans came into conflict with the Greeks. The Greeks were inferior to the Romans in military power, but far superior to them in culture. They excelled in art, literature, music, science, and philosophy. Of all these pursuits the Romans were ignorant until contact with Greece revealed to them the value of education and filled them with the thirst for knowledge. And so it came about that while Rome conquered Greece by force of arms, Greece conquered Rome by force of her intellectual superiority and became her schoolmaster. It was soon the established custom for young Romans to go to Athens and to other centers of Greek learning to finish their training, and the knowledge of the Greek language among the educated classes became universal. At the same time many cultured Greeks—poets, artists, orators, and philosophers—flocked to Rome, opened schools, and taught their arts. Indeed, the preëminence of Greek culture became so great that Rome almost lost her ambition to be original, and her writers vied with each other in their efforts to reproduce in Latin what was choicest in Greek literature. As a consequence of all this, the civilization and national life of Rome became largely Grecian, and to Greece she owed her literature and her art.

Rome and the Modern World. After conquering the world, Rome impressed her language, laws, customs of living, and modes of thinking upon the subject nations, and they became Roman; and the world has remained largely Roman ever since. Latin continued to live, and the knowledge of Latin was the only light of learning that burned steadily through the dark ages that followed the downfall of the Roman Empire. Latin was the common language of scholars and remained so even down to the days of Shakespeare. Even yet it is
more nearly than any other tongue the universal language of the learned. The life of to-day is much nearer the life of ancient Rome than the lapse of centuries would lead one to suppose. You and I are Romans still in many ways, and if Cæsar and Cicero should appear among us, we should not find them, except for dress and language, much unlike men of to-day.

**Latin and English.** Do you know that more than half of the words in the English dictionary are Latin, and that you are speaking more or less Latin every day? How has this come about? In the year 1066 William the Conqueror invaded England with an army of Normans. The Normans spoke French—which, you remember, is descended from Latin—and spread their language to a considerable extent over England, and so Norman-French played an important part in the formation of English and forms a large proportion of our vocabulary. Furthermore, great numbers of almost pure Latin words have been brought into English through the writings of scholars, and every new scientific discovery is marked by the addition of new terms of Latin derivation. Hence, while the simpler and commoner words of our mother tongue are Anglo-Saxon, and Anglo-Saxon forms the staple of our colloquial language, yet in the realms of literature, and especially in poetry, words of Latin derivation are very abundant. Also in the learned professions, as in law, medicine, and engineering, a knowledge of Latin is necessary for the successful interpretation of technical and scientific terms.

**Why study Latin?** The foregoing paragraphs make it clear why Latin forms so important a part of modern education. We have seen that our civilization rests upon that of Greece and Rome, and that we must look to the past if we would understand the present. It is obvious, too, that the knowledge of Latin not only leads to a more exact and effective use of our own language, but that it is of vital importance and of great practical value to any one preparing for a literary or professional career. To this it may be added that the study of Latin throws a flood of light upon the structure of language in general and lays an excellent foundation for all grammatical study.
Finally, it has been abundantly proved that there is no more effective means of strengthening the mind than by the earnest pursuit of this branch of learning.

**Review Questions.** Whence does Latin get its name? Where is Latium? Where is Rome? Was Latin always the same? What sort of Latin are we to study? Describe the growth of Rome's power and the spread of Latin. What can you say of the origin of Italian, French, and Spanish? How did the ancient Greeks and Romans compare? How did Greece influence Rome? How did Rome influence the world? In what sense are we Romans still? What did Latin have to do with the formation of English? What proportion of English words are of Latin origin, and what kind of words are they? Why should we study Latin?
PART I

THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet contains the same letters as the English except that it has no $w$ and no $j$.

2. The vowels, as in English, are $a$, $e$, $i$, $o$, $u$, $y$. The other letters are consonants.

3. $I$ is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the value of a consonant and is called $I$ consonant.

Thus in Iū-li-us the first $i$ is a consonant, the second a vowel.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

4. Latin was not pronounced like English. The Romans at the beginning of the Christian era pronounced their language substantially as described below.

5. The vowels have the following sounds:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>á as in father</td>
<td>hāc, stās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>á like the first $a$ in aha', never as in hat</td>
<td>ā'-māt, că'-nās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as in they</td>
<td>tē'-lā, mē'-tā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē as in met</td>
<td>tē'-nēt, mēr'-cēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĩ as in machine</td>
<td>sēr'-tī, prā'-tī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 N.B. The sounds of the letters are best learned by hearing them correctly pronounced. The matter in this section is, therefore, intended for reference rather than for assignment as a lesson. As a first step it is suggested that the teacher pronounce the examples in class, the pupils following.

2 Long vowels are marked $-$, short ones $\circ$. 

5
VOWELS

ï as in bit
ö as in holy
ð as in wholly, never as in hot
û as in rude, or as oo in boot
ü as in full, or as oo in foot

NOTE. It is to be observed that there is a decided difference in sound, except in the case of a, between the long and the short vowels. It is not merely a matter of quantity but also of quality.

6. In diphthongs (two-vowel sounds) both vowels are heard in a single syllable.

DIPHTHONGS

ae as ai in aisle
au as ou in out
ei as ei in eight
eu as ð'ð (a short e followed by a short u in one syllable)
oe like oi in tool
ui like ð'o (a short u followed by a short i in one syllable. Cf. English we)

NOTE. Give all the vowels and diphthongs their proper sounds and do not slur over them in unaccented syllables, as is done in English.

7. Consonants are pronounced as in English, except that

CONSONANTS

c is always like c in cat, never as in cent

g is always like g in get, never as in gern
i consonant is always like y in yes
n before c, gu, or g is like ng in sing (compare the sound of n in anchor)
qu, gu, and sometimes su before a vowel have the sound of gw, gu, and sw.
Here n has the value of consonant n and is not counted a vowel
s is like s in sea, never as in case
t is always like t in native, never as in nation


SYLLABLES

Consonants
- v is like w in wine, never as in vine
- x has the value of two consonants (cs or gs) and is like x in extract, not as in exact
- bs is like ps and bt like pt
- ch, ph, and th are like c, p, t

Latin Examples
- vi'-nüm, vîr
- ēx'-trā, ēx-āc'-tūs
- ūrbs, ōb-tē'-nē-ō
- pūl'-chēr, Phoe'-bē, thē-ā'-trūm

a. In combinations of consonants give each its distinct sound. Doubled consonants should be pronounced with a slight pause between the two sounds. Thus pronounce tt as in rat-trap, not as in rattle; pp as in hop-pole, not as in upper. Examples, mit'-tō, Āp'ī-ūs, bēl'-lūm.

SYLLABLES

8. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. Thus aes-tā'-tē has three syllables, au-dī-ēn'-dūs has four.

a. Two vowels with a consonant between them never make one syllable, as is so often the case in English. Compare English inside with Latin in-si'-dē.

9. Words are divided into syllables as follows:

1. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second. Thus ā-mā'-bī-līs, mē-mō'-rī-ā, ān-tē'-rē-ā, ā'-bēst, pē-rē'-gīt.1

2. Combinations of two or more consonants:

a. A consonant followed by l or r goes with the l or r. Thus pū'-bli-cūs, ā'-grī.

Exception. Prepositional compounds of this nature, as also ll and rr, follow rule b. Thus āb'-lū-ō, āb-rūm'-pō, īl'-lē, fēr'-rūm.

b. In all other combinations of consonants the first consonant goes with the preceding vowel.2 Thus māg'-nūs, ē-gēs'-tās, vic-tō'-rī-ā, hōs'-pēs, ān'-nūs, sū-bāc'-tūs.

3. The last syllable of a word is called the ult_-ti-_ma; the one next to the last, the pen-ult_; the one before the penult, the ante- penult_.

---

1 In writing and printing it is customary to divide the parts of a compound, as inter-eā, ab-est, sub-āctus, per-ēgit, contrary to the correct phonetic rule.
2 The combination ncē is divided nc-t, as fūnc-tūs, sānc-tūs.
10. EXERCISE

Divide the words in the following passage into syllables and pronounce them, placing the accent as indicated:

Vádé ád főmicám, Ō pígér, čt cónsiděrá víás ejüs ět díscě sǎpiěn-tiäm: quae cúm nón háběát dúcem něc praccětóřěm něc prínčípěm, párát čn aestátě cíbům síbi ět cόngrěgáti ĭn méssě quǒd cómědáti.

[Go to the ant, thou sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise: which, having no guide, overseer, or ruler, provideth her meat in the summer and gathereth her food in the harvest.]

QUANTITY

11. The quantity of a vowel or a syllable is the time it takes to pronounce it. Correct pronunciation and accent depend upon the proper observance of quantity.

12. Quantity of Vowels. Vowels are either long (') or short (·). In this book the long vowels are marked. Unmarked vowels are to be considered short.

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or h; as pő-e'-ta, trá'-hō.
2. A vowel is short before nt and nd, before final m or t, and, except in words of one syllable, before final l or r. Thus a'-mānt, a-mān'-dus, a-mā'-bām, a-mā'-bāt, a'-ni-māl, a'-mōr.
3. A vowel is long before nf, ns, nx, and nd. Thus in'-fe-rō, re'-gēns, sān'-xī, sānc'-tus.
4. Diphthongs are always long, and are not marked.

13. Quantity of Syllables. Syllables are either long or short, and their quantity must be carefully distinguished from that of vowels.

1. A syllable is short,
   a. If it ends in a short vowel; as a'-mō, pį'-grī.

Note. In final syllables the short vowel may be followed by a final consonant. Thus the word mě-mō'-rī-ám contains four short syllables. In the first three a short vowel ends the syllable, in the last the short vowel is followed by a final consonant.
2. A syllable is long,
   
a. If it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, as cū'-rō, poe'-nae, 
aes-tā'-te.

b. If it ends in a consonant which is followed by another consonant, 
as cor'-pus, mag'-nus.

   Note. The vowel in a long syllable may be either long or short, and should 
be pronounced accordingly. Thus in ter'-ra, in'-ter, the first syllable is long, 
but the vowel in each case is short and should be given the short sound. In 
words like saxum the first syllable is long because x has the value of two 
consonants (cs or gs).

3. In determining quantity h is not counted a consonant.

   Note. Give about twice as much time to the long syllables as to the short 
one. It takes about as long to pronounce a short vowel plus a consonant as 
it does to pronounce a long vowel or a diphthong, and so these quantities are 
considered equally long. For example, it takes about as long to say cūr'-rō as 
it does cū'-rō, and so each of these first syllables is long. Compare mōl'-lis and 
mō'-lis, ā-mis'-sī and ā-mī'-sī.

ACCENT

14. Words of two syllables are accented on the first, as mēn'-sa, 
Cae'-sar.

15. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult 
if the penult is long. If the penult is short, accent the antepenult. 
Thus mo-nē'-mus, re'-gi-tur, a-gri'-co-la, a-ma*n'-dus.

   Note. Observe that the position of the accent is determined by the length 
of the syllable and not by the length of the vowel in the syllable. (Cf. § 13.2, 
Note.)

16. Certain little words called enclitics, which have no separate 
existence, are added to and pronounced with a preceding word. The 
most common are -que, and; -ve, or; and -ne, the question sign. 
The syllable before an enclitic takes the accent, regardless of its 
quantity. Thus populus'que, dea'que, rēgna've, audit'ne.

1 Enclitic means leaning back, and that is, as you see, just what these little 
words do. They cannot stand alone and so they lean back for support upon 
the preceding word.
HOW TO READ LATIN

17. To read Latin well is not so difficult, if you begin right. Correct habits of reading should be formed now. Notice the quantities carefully, especially the quantity of the penult, to insure your getting the accent on the right syllable. (Cf. § 15.) Give every vowel its proper sound and every syllable its proper length. Then bear, in mind that we should read Latin as we read English, in phrases rather than in separate words. Group together words that are closely connected in thought. No good reader halts at the end of each word.

18. Read the stanzas of the following poem by Longfellow, one at a time, first the English and then the Latin version. The syllables inclosed in parentheses are to be slurred or omitted to secure smoothness of meter.

**EXCELSIOR [HIGHER]!**

The shades of night were falling fast,  
As through an Alpine village passed  
A youth, who bore, 'mid snow and ice,  
A banner with the strange device,  
  Excelsior!

His brow was sad; his eye beneath,  
Flashed like a falchion from its sheath,  
And like a silver clarion rung  
The accents of that unknown tongue,  
  Excelsior!

In happy homes he saw the light  
Of household fires gleam warm and bright;  
Above, the spectral glaciers shone,  
And from his lips escaped a groan,  
  Excelsior!

"Try not the Pass!" the old man said;  
"Dark lowers the tempest overhead,

Cadēbant noctis umbrae, dum  
Ībat per vicum Alpicum  
Gelū nivequ(e) adolēscēns,  
Vēxillum cum signō ferēns,  
  Excelsior!

Frōns trīstis, micat oculus  
Velut ē vāginā gladius;  
Sonantque similēs tubae  
Accentūs lingu(ae) incognitae,  
  Excelsior!

In domibus videt clārās  
Focōrum lūcēs calidās;  
Relūcet glaciēs ācris,  
Et rumpit gemitūs labrīs,  
  Excelsior!

Dicit senex, "Nē trānscēs!  
Suprā nigrēscit tempestās;

---

1 Translation by C. W. Goodchild in *Praeco Latinus*, October, 1898.
PART II

WORDS AND FORMS

LESSON I

FIRST PRINCIPLES

19. Subject and Predicate. 1. Latin, like English, expresses thoughts by means of sentences. A sentence is a combination of words that expresses a thought, and in its simplest form is the statement of a single fact. Thus,

Galba is a farmer
Galba est agricola

The sailor fights
Nauta pugnat

In each of these sentences there are two parts:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Subject} & : & \begin{cases} 
\text{Galba} \\
\text{Galba} \\
\text{The sailor} \\
\text{Nauta}
\end{cases} & \quad \text{Predicate} & : & \begin{cases} 
\text{is a farmer} \\
\text{est agricola} \\
\text{fights} \\
\text{pugnat}
\end{cases}
\end{align*}
\]

2. The subject is that person, place, or thing about which something is said, and is therefore a noun or some word which can serve the same purpose.

a. Pronouns, as their name implies (pro, "instead of," and noun), often take the place of nouns, usually to save repeating the same noun, as, Galba is a farmer; he is a sturdy fellow.

3. The predicate is that which is said about the subject, and consists of a verb with or without modifiers.

a. A verb is a word which asserts something (usually an act) concerning a person, place, or thing.
The roaring torrent is deep and wide!"
And loud that clarion voice replied,
Excelsior!

At break of day, as heavenward
The pious monks of Saint Bernard
Uttered the oft-repeated prayer,
A voice cried through the startled air,
Excelsior!

A traveler, by the faithful hound,
Half-buried in the snow was found,
Still grasping in his hand of ice
That banner with the strange device,
Excelsior!

There in the twilight cold and gray,
Lifeless, but beautiful, he lay,
And from the sky, serene and far,
A voice fell, like a falling star,
Excelsior!

Latin:
Lātus et altus est torrēns."
Clāra vēnit vōx respondēns,
Excelsior!

Iam lūcēscēbat, et frātrēs
Sāctī Bernardī vigilēs
Ōrābant precēs solitās,
Cum vōx clāmāvit per aurās,
Excelsior!

Sēmi-sepultus viātor
Can(e) ā fidō reperītur,
Comprēndēns pugnō gelidō
Ilūd vēxīllum cum signō,
Excelsior!

Iacet corpus examīnum
Sed lūce frigidā pulchrum;
Et caelō procul exīēns
Cadit vōx, ut stella cadēns,
Excelsior!
20. **The Object.** In the two sentences, *The boy hit the ball* and *The ball hit the boy*, the same words are used, but the meaning is different, and depends upon the order of the words. The *doer* of the act, that about which something is said, is, as we have seen above, the *subject*. That to which something is *done* is the **direct object** of the verb. *The boy hit the ball* is therefore analyzed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>The boy</em></td>
<td><em>hit the ball</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* (verb) (direct object)

*a*. A verb whose action passes over to the object directly, as in the sentence above, is called a **transitive verb**. A verb which does not admit of a direct object is called **intransitive**, as, *I walk; he comes.*

21. **The Copula.** The verb *to be* in its different forms——*are, is, was*, etc.—does not tell us anything about the subject; neither does it govern an object. It simply connects the subject with the word or words in the predicate that possess a distinct meaning. Hence it is called the *copula*, that is, the *joiner* or *link*.

22. In the following sentences pronounce the Latin and name the *nouns, verbs, subjects, objects, predicates, copulas*:

1. America est patria mea
   *America is fatherland my*

2. Agricola filiam amat
   *(The) farmer (his) daughter loves*

3. Filia est Iulia
   *(His) daughter is Julia*

4. Iulia et agricola sunt in Insulâ
   *Julia and (the) farmer are on (the) island*

5. Iulia aquam portat
   *Julia water carries*

6. Rosam in comis habet
   *(A) rose in (her) hair (she) has*

7. Iulia est puella pulchra
   *Julia is (a) girl pretty*

8. Domina filiam pulchram habet
   *(The) lady (a) daughter beautiful has*

*a*. The sentences above show that Latin does not express some words which are necessary in English. First of all, *Latin has no article the or a*; thus *agricola* may mean *the farmer, a farmer*, or simply *farmer*. Then, too, the personal pronouns, *I, you, he, she*, etc., and the possessive pronouns, *my, your, his, her*, etc., are not expressed if the meaning of the sentence is clear without them.
LESSON II

FIRST PRINCIPLES (Continued)

23. Inflection. Words may change their forms to indicate some change in sense or use, as, *is, are; was, were; who, whose, whom; farmer, farmer’s; woman, women.* This is called inflection. The inflection of a noun, adjective, or pronoun is called its declension, that of a verb its conjugation.

24. Number. Latin, like English, has two numbers, singular and plural. In English we usually form the plural by adding *-s or -es* to the singular. So Latin changes the singular to the plural by changing the ending of the word. Compare

\[
\text{Naut-a pugnat} \quad \text{The sailor fights} \\
\text{Naut-ae pungnant} \quad \text{The sailors fight}
\]

25. Rule. *Nouns that end in -a in the singular end in -ae in the plural.*

26. Learn the following nouns so that you can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English. Write the plural of each.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>agri’cola</em></td>
<td><em>farmer</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>aqua</em></td>
<td><em>water</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>causa</em></td>
<td><em>cause, reason</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>do’mina</em></td>
<td><em>lady of the house,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mistress</em></td>
<td>(dominate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>filia</em></td>
<td><em>daughter</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fortu’na</em></td>
<td><em>fortune</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuga</em></td>
<td><em>flight</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>iniu’ria</em></td>
<td><em>wrong, injury</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>luna</em></td>
<td><em>moon</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>nauta</em></td>
<td><em>sailor</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>puel’la</em></td>
<td><em>girl</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>silva</em></td>
<td><em>forest</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>terra</em></td>
<td><em>land</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27. Compare again the sentences

\[
\text{Nauta pugna-t} \quad \text{The sailor fights} \\
\text{Nautae pugna-nt} \quad \text{The sailors fight}
\]

In the first sentence the verb *pugna-t* is in the third person singular, in the second sentence *pugna-nt* is in the third person plural.

1 The words in parentheses are English words related to the Latin. When the words are practically identical, as *causa, cause,* no comparison is needed.
28. **Rule. Agreement of Verb.** A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject.

29. **Rule.** In the conjugation of the Latin verb the third person singular active ends in -t, the third person plural in -nt. The endings which show the person and number of the verb are called personal endings.

30. **Learn the following verbs and write the plural of each.** The personal pronouns he, she, it, etc., which are necessary in the inflection of the English verb, are not needed in the Latin, because the personal endings take their place. Of course, if the verb's subject is expressed we do not translate the personal ending by a pronoun; thus *nauta pugnat* is translated *the sailor fights, not the sailor he fights.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ama-t</td>
<td><em>he (she, it)</em> loves, is loving, does love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(amity, amiable)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labó-ra-t</td>
<td><em>“labors, is laboring, does labor</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nůntia-t</td>
<td><em>announces, is announcing, does announce</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porta-t</td>
<td><em>carries, is carrying, does carry</em> (porter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pugna-t</td>
<td><em>fights, is fighting, does fight</em> (pugnacious)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

31. **Exercises**

I. 1. The daughter loves, the daughters love. 2. The sailor is carrying, the sailors carry. 3. The farmer does labor, the farmers labor. 4. The girl is announcing, the girls do announce. 5. The ladies are carrying, the lady carries.


1 The *u* in nůntiō is long by exception. (Cf. § 12.2.)
LESSON III

FIRST PRINCIPLES (Continued)

32. Declension of Nouns. We learned above (§§ 19, 20) the difference between the subject and object, and that in English they may be distinguished by the order of the words. Sometimes, however, the order is such that we are left in doubt. For example, the sentence The lady her daughter loves might mean either that the lady loves her daughter, or that the daughter loves the lady.

1. If the sentence were in Latin, no doubt could arise, because the subject and the object are distinguished, not by the order of the words, but by the endings of the words themselves. Compare the following sentences:

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{Domina filiam amat} \\
&\text{Filiam dominam amat} \\
&\text{Amat filiam dominam} \\
&\text{Domina amat filiam} \\
&\text{Filia dominam amat} \\
&\text{Dominam filia amat} \\
&\text{Amat dominam filia} \\
&\text{Filia amat dominam}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{The lady loves her daughter} \\
&\text{The daughter loves the lady}
\end{align*}
\]

2. Observe that in each case the subject of the sentence ends in -a and the object in -am. The form of the noun shows how it is used in the sentence, and the order of the words has no effect on the essential meaning.

2. As stated above (§ 23), this change of ending is called declension, and each different ending produces what is called a case. When we decline a noun, we give all its different cases, or changes of endings. In English we have three cases, — nominative, possessive, and objective; but, in nouns, the nominative and objective have the same form, and only the possessive case shows a change of ending, by adding 's or the apostrophe. The interrogative pronoun, however, has the fuller declension, who? whose? whom?
33. The following table shows a comparison between English and Latin declension forms, and should be thoroughly memorized:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Cases</th>
<th>Latin Cases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Decension of who?</strong></td>
<td><strong>Name of case and use</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who?</td>
<td>Nominative — case of the subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whose?</td>
<td>Possessive — case of the possessor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whom?</td>
<td>Objective — case of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who?</td>
<td>Nominative — case of the subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whose?</td>
<td>Possessive — case of the possessor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whom?</td>
<td>Objective — case of the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the nominative singular of a noun ends in -a, observe that

a. The nominative plural ends in -ae.
b. The genitive singular ends in -ae and the genitive plural in -ārum.
c. The accusative singular ends in -am and the accusative plural in -ās.
d. The genitive singular and the nominative plural have the same ending.

34. **EXERCISE**

Pronounce the following words and give their general meaning. Then give the number and case, and the use of each form. Where the same form stands for more than one case, give all the possible cases and uses.

35. We learned from the table (§ 33) that the Latin nominative, genitive, and accusative correspond, in general, to the nominative, possessive, and objective in English, and that they are used in the same way. This will be made even clearer by the following sentence:

Filia agricolae nautam amat, the farmer’s daughter (or the daughter of the farmer) loves the sailor

What is the subject? the direct object? What case is used for the subject? for the direct object? What word denotes the possessor? In what case is it?

36. Rule. Nominative Subject. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative and answers the question Who? or What?

37. Rule. Accusative Object. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative and answers the question Whom? or What?

38. Rule. Genitive of the Possessor. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the Genitive and answers the question Whose?

Diana Sagittas portat et feras necat
39. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.


For the order of words imitate the Latin above.

II. 1. The daughter of Latona does love the forests. 2. Latona's daughter carries arrows. 3. The farmers' daughters do labor. 4. The farmer's daughter loves the waters of the forest. 5. The sailor is announcing the girls' flight. 6. The girls announce the sailors' wrongs. 7. The farmer's daughter labors. 8. Diana's arrows are killing the wild beasts of the land.

40. CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin. The answers may be found in the exercises preceding.

1. Quis est Diāna? 4. Quis silvam amat?
2. Cuius filia est Diāna? 5. Quis sagittās portat?

LESSON V

FIRST PRINCIPLES (Continued)

41. The Dative Case. In addition to the relationships between words expressed by the nominative, genitive (possessive), and accusative (objective) cases, there are other relationships, to express which in English we use such words as from, with, by, to, for, in, at.¹

Latin, too, makes frequent use of such prepositions; but often it expresses these relations without them by means of case forms which

¹ Words like to, for, by, from, in, etc., which define the relationship between words, are called prepositions.
English does not possess. One of the cases found in the Latin declension and lacking in English is called the dative.

42. When the nominative singular ends in -a, the dative singular ends in -ae and the dative plural in -is.

Note. Observe that the genitive singular, the dative singular, and the nominative plural all have the same ending, -ae; but the uses of the three cases are entirely different. The general meaning of the sentence usually makes clear which case is intended.

a. Form the dative singular and plural of the following nouns: fuga, causa, fortuna, terra, aqua, puella, agricola, nauta, domina.

43. The Dative Relation. The dative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions to, towards, for.

These prepositions are often used in English in expressions of motion, such as She went to town, He ran towards the horse, Columbus sailed for America. In such cases the dative is not used in Latin, as motion through space is foreign to the dative relation. But the dative is used to denote that to or towards which a benefit, injury, purpose, feeling, or quality is directed, or that for which something serves or exists.

a. What dative relations do you discover in the following?

The teacher gave a prize to John because he replied so promptly to all her questions—a good example for the rest of us. It is a pleasure to us to hear him recite. Latin is easy for him, but it is very hard for me. Some are fitted for one thing and others for another.

44. The Indirect Object. Examine the sentence

Nauta fugam nuntiat, the sailor announces the flight

Here the verb, nuntiat, governs the direct object, fugam, in the accusative case. If, however, we wish to mention the persons to whom the sailor announces the flight, as, The sailor announces the flight to the farmers, the verb will have two objects:

1. Its direct object, flight (fugam)
2. Its indirect object, farmers

According to the preceding section, to the farmers is a relation covered by the dative case, and we are prepared for the following rule:
45. Rule. Dative Indirect Object. The indirect object of a verb is in the Dative.
   
a. The indirect object usually stands before the direct object.

46. We may now complete the translation of the sentence The sailor announces the flight to the farmers, and we have

   Nauta agricolis fugam nūntiat

47. EXERCISES

   First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

   Point out the direct and indirect objects and the genitive of the possessor.


   Imitate the word order of the preceding exercise.

   II. 1. To whom do the girls give a wreath? 2. The girls give a wreath to Julia, because Julia loves wreaths. 3. The sailors tell the ladies a story, because the ladies love stories. 4. The farmer gives his (§ 22. a) daughter water. 5. Galba announces the cause of the battle to the sailor. 6. The goddess of the moon loves the waters of the forest. 7. Whose wreath is Latona carrying? Diana's.

1 Observe that in English the indirect object often stands without a preposition to to mark it, especially when it precedes the direct object.
LESSON VI

FIRST PRINCIPLES (Continued)

48. The Ablative Case. Another case, lacking in English but found in the fuller Latin declension, is the ablative.

49. When the nominative singular ends in -a, the ablative singular ends in -ā and the ablative plural in -īs.

   a. Observe that the final -ā of the nominative is short, while the final -ā of the ablative is long, as,

         Nom. filiā
         Abl. filiā

   b. Observe that the ablative plural is like the dative plural.

   c. Form the ablative singular and plural of the following nouns: fuga, causa, fortūna, terra, aqua, puella, agricola, nauta, domina.

50. The Ablative Relation. The ablative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions from, with, by, at, in. It denotes

   1. That from which something is separated, from which it starts, or of which it is deprived — generally translated by from.
   2. That with which something is associated or by means of which it is done — translated by with or by.
   3. The place where or the time when something happens — translated by in or at.

   a. What ablative relations do you discover in the following?

   In our class there are twenty boys and girls. Daily at eight o’clock they come from home with their books, and while they are at school they study Latin with great zeal. In a short time they will be able to read with ease the books written by the Romans. By patience and perseverance all things in this world can be overcome.

51. Prepositions. While, as stated above (§ 41), many relations expressed in English by prepositions are in Latin expressed by case forms, still prepositions are of frequent occurrence, but only with the accusative or ablative.
52. Rule. Object of a Preposition. A noun governed by a preposition must be in the Accusative or Ablative case.

53. Prepositions denoting the ablative relations from, with, in, on, are naturally followed by the ablative case. Among these are

ā¹ or ab, from, away from  cum, with
dē, from, down from  in, in, on
e¹ or ex, from, out from, out of

1. Translate into Latin, using prepositions. In the water, on the land, down from the forest, with the fortune, out of the forests, from the victory, out of the waters, with the sailors, down from the moon.

54. Adjectives. Examine the sentence

Puella parva bonam deam amat, the little girl loves the good goddess

In this sentence parva (little) and bonam (good) are not nouns, but are descriptive words expressing quality. Such words are called adjectives,² and they are said to belong to the noun which they describe.

You can tell by its ending to which noun an adjective belongs. The ending of parva shows that it belongs to puella, and the ending of bonam that it belongs to deam. Words that belong together are said to agree, and the belonging-together is called agreement. Observe that the adjective and its noun agree in number and case.

55. Examine the sentences

Puella est parva, the girl is little
Puella parva bonam deam amat, the little girl loves the good goddess

In the first sentence the adjective parva is separated from its noun by the verb and stands in the predicate. It is therefore called a predicate adjective. In the second sentence the adjectives parva and

¹ ā and ē are used only before words beginning with a consonant; ab and ex are used before either vowels or consonants.
² Pick out the adjectives in the following: "When I was a little boy, I remember that one cold winter's morning I was accosted by a smiling man with an ax on his shoulder. 'My pretty boy,' said he, 'has your father a grindstone?'—'Yes, sir,' said I.—'You are a fine little fellow,' said he. 'Will you let me grind my ax on it?'"
bonam are closely attached to the nouns *puella* and *deam* respectively, and are called *attributive adjectives*.

a. Pick out the attributive and the predicate adjectives in the following:

Do you think Latin is hard? Hard studies make strong brains. Lazy students dislike hard studies. We are not lazy.

56. **DIALOGUE**

**JULIA AND GALBA**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

I. Quis, Galba, est Diāna?
G. Diāna, Iūlia, est pulchra dea lūnae et silvārum.
I. Cuius filia, Galba, est Diāna?
G. Lātōnae filia, Iūlia, est Diāna.
I. Quid Diāna portat?
G. Sagittās Diāna portat.
I. Cūr Diāna sagittās portat?
G. Diāna sagittās portat, Iūlia, quod malās ferās silvae magnae necat.
I. Amatne Lātōna filiam?
G. Amat, et filia Lātōnam amat.
I. Quid filia tua parva portat?
G. Corōnās pulchrās filia mea parva portat.
I. Cui filia tua corōnās pulchrās dat?
G. Diānae corōnās dat.
I. Quis est cum filiā tua? Estne sōla?
G. Sōla nōn est; filia mea parva est cum ancillā meā.

a. When a person is called or addressed, the case used is called the *vocative* (Latin *vocāre*, "to call"). *In form the vocative is regularly like the nominative.* In English the name of the person addressed usually stands first in the sentence. *The Latin vocative rarely stands first.* Point out five examples of the vocative in this dialogue.

b. Observe that questions answered by *yes* or *no* in English are answered in Latin by repeating the verb. Thus, if you wished to answer in Latin the question *Is the sailor fighting?* *Pugnatne nauta?* you would say *Pugnat*, *he is fighting,* or *Nōn pugnat*, *he is not fighting.*
LESSON VII

THE FIRST OR Ā-DECLENSION

57. In the preceding lessons we have now gone over all the cases, singular and plural, of nouns whose nominative singular ends in -a. All Latin nouns whose nominative singular ends in -a belong to the First Declension. It is also called the Ā-Declension because of the prominent part which the vowel a plays in the formation of the cases. We have also learned what relations are expressed by each case. These results are summarized in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Use and General Meaning of Each Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>do'min-a</td>
<td>the lady</td>
<td>The subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>domin-ae</td>
<td>of the lady, or the lady's</td>
<td>The possessor of something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>domin-ae</td>
<td>to or for the lady</td>
<td>Expressing the relation to or for, especially the indirect object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>domin-am</td>
<td>the lady</td>
<td>The direct object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>domin-ā</td>
<td>from, with, by, in, the lady</td>
<td>Separation (from), association or means (with, by), place where or time when (in, at)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom. | domin-ae        | the ladies                   | The same as the singular                                                 |
| Gen. | domin-ā'rum     | of the ladies, or the ladies'|                                                                          |
| Dat. | domin-is        | to or for the ladies         |                                                                          |
| Acc. | domin-ās        | the ladies                   |                                                                          |
| Abl. | domin-is        | from, with, by, in, the ladies|                                                                          |

58. The Base. That part of a word which remains unchanged in inflection and to which the terminations are added is called the base.

Thus, in the declension above, domin- is the base and -a is the termination of the nominative singular.
59. Write the declension of the following nouns, separating the base from the termination by a hyphen. Also give them orally.

pugna, terra, lūna, ancil'la, corō'na, īn'sula, silva

60. Gender. In English, names of living beings are either masculine or feminine, and names of things without life are neuter. This is called natural gender. Yet in English there are some names of things to which we refer as if they were feminine; as, "Have you seen my yacht? She is a beauty." And there are some names of living beings to which we refer as if they were neuter; as, "Is the baby here? No, the nurse has taken it home." Some words, then, have a gender quite apart from sex or real gender, and this is called grammatical gender.

Latin, like English, has three genders. Names of males are usually masculine and of females feminine, but names of things have grammatical gender and may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter. Thus we have in Latin the three words, lapis, a stone; rūpēs, a cliff; and saxum, a rock. Lapis is masculine, rūpēs feminine, and saxum neuter. The gender can usually be determined by the ending of the word, and must always be learned, for without knowing the gender it is impossible to write correct Latin.

61. Gender of First-Declension Nouns. Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males. Thus silva is feminine, but nauta, sailor, and agricola, farmer, are masculine.

62. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.


1 Note that the relation expressed by the dative case covers that to which a feeling is directed. (Cf. § 43.)
II. 1. Where does the farmer live? 2. The farmer lives in the small cottage. 3. Who lives with the farmer? 4. (His) little daughter lives with the farmer. 5. (His) daughter is getting (parat) a good dinner for the farmer. 6. The farmer praises the good dinner. 7. The daughter’s good dinner is pleasing to the farmer.

What Latin words are suggested by this picture?

63. CONVERSATION

Answer the questions in Latin.

1. Quis cum agricolā in casā habitat?
2. Quid bona filia agricolae parat?
3. Quem agricola laudat?
4. Vocatne filia agricolae gallīnās ad cēnām?
5. Cuius filia est grāta dominae?
6. Cui domina pecūniam dat?
LESSON VIII

FIRST DECLENSION (Continued).

64. We have for some time now been using adjectives and nouns together, and you have noticed an agreement between them in case and in number (§ 54). They agree also in gender. In the phrase silva magna, we have a feminine adjective in -a agreeing with a feminine noun in -a.


66. Feminine adjectives in -a are declined like feminine nouns in -a, and you should learn to decline them together as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>domina (base domin-)</td>
<td>bona (base bon-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR</strong></td>
<td><strong>TERMINATIONS</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. do'mina</td>
<td>bona -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. dominae</td>
<td>bonae -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. dominae</td>
<td>bonae -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. dominam</td>
<td>bonam -am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. dominā</td>
<td>bonā -ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLURAL</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. dominae</td>
<td>bonae -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. dominārum</td>
<td>bonārum -ārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. dominis</td>
<td>bonis -īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. dominās</td>
<td>bonās -ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. dominīs</td>
<td>bonīs -īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. In the same way decline together puella mala, the bad girl; ancil'la parva, the little maid; fortū'na magna, great fortune.

67. The words dea, goddess, and filia, daughter, take the ending -ābus instead of -īs in the dative and ablative plural. Note the dative and ablative plural in the following declension:
ORDER OF WORDS IN LATIN

dea bona (bases de- bon-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. dea bona</td>
<td>deae bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. deae bonae</td>
<td>dea’rum bonā’rum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. deae bonae</td>
<td>dea’bus bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. deam bonam</td>
<td>deās bonās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. deā bonā</td>
<td>deā’bus bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. In the same way decline together filia parva.

68. Latin Word Order. The order of words in English and in Latin sentences is not the same.

In English we arrange words in a fairly fixed order. Thus, in the sentence My daughter is getting dinner for the farmers, we cannot alter the order of the words without spoiling the sentence. We can, however, throw emphasis on different words by speaking them with more force. Try the effect of reading the sentence by putting special force on my, daughter, dinner, farmers.

In Latin, where the office of the word in the sentence is shown by its ending (cf. § 32. 1), and not by its position, the order of words is more free, and position is used to secure the same effect that in English is secured by emphasis of voice. To a limited extent we can alter the order of words in English, too, for the same purpose. Compare the sentences

I saw a game of football at Chicago last November (normal order)
Last November I saw a game of football at Chicago
At Chicago, last November, I saw a game of football

1. In a Latin sentence the most emphatic place is the first; next in importance is the last; the weakest point is the middle. Generally the subject is the most important word, and is placed first; usually the verb is the next in importance, and is placed last. The other words of the sentence stand between these two in the order of their importance. Hence the normal order of words — that is, where no unusual emphasis is expressed — is as follows:

subject — modifiers of the subject — indirect object — direct object — adverb — verb

Changes from the normal order are frequent, and are due to the desire for throwing emphasis upon some word or phrase. Notice the order of the
ORDER OF WORDS IN LATIN

Latin words when you are translating, and imitate it when you are turning English into Latin.

2. Possessive pronouns and modifying genitives normally stand after their nouns. When placed before their nouns they are emphatic, as filia mea, my daughter; mea filia, my daughter; casa Galbae, Galba’s cottage; Galbae casa, Galba’s cottage.

Notice the variety of emphasis produced by writing the following sentence in different ways:

- Filia mea agricolis cēnam parat (normal order)
- Mea filia agricolis parat cēnam (mea and cēnam emphatic)
- Agricolis filia mea cēnam parat (agricolis emphatic)

3. An adjective placed before its noun is more emphatic than when it follows. When great emphasis is desired, the adjective is separated from its noun by other words.

- Filia mea casam parvam nōn amat (parvam not emphatic)
- Filia mea parvam casam nōn amat (parvam more emphatic)
- Parvam filia mea casam nōn amat (parvam very emphatic)

4. Interrogative words usually stand first, the same as in English.

5. The copula (as est, sunt) is of so little importance that it frequently does not stand last, but may be placed wherever it sounds well.

69. EXERCISE

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.

Note the order of the words in these sentences and pick out those that are emphatic.

THE SECOND DECLENSION

First Review of Vocabulary and Grammar, §§ 502–505

LESSON IX

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION

70. Latin nouns are divided into five declensions.

The declension to which a noun belongs is shown by the ending of the genitive singular. This should always be learned along with the nominative and the gender.

71. The nominative singular of nouns of the Second or O-Declension ends in -us, -er, -ir, or -um. The genitive singular ends in -i.

72. Gender. Nouns in -um are neuter. The others are regularly masculine.

73. Declension of nouns in -us and -um. Masculines in -us and neuters in -um are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>do’minus 1</td>
<td>-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominí</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominó</td>
<td>-ó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominó</td>
<td>-ó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>domine</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

| Nom.     | dominí       | -i           | pila          | -a           |
| Gen.     | dominó’reum  | -órum        | piló’reum     | -órum        |
| Dat.     | dominís      | -ís          | pilís         | -ís          |
| Acc.     | dominós      | -ós          | píla          | -a           |
| Abl.     | dominís      | -ís          | pilís         | -ís          |

1 Compare the declension of domina and of dominus.
THE PREDICATE NOUN

a. Observe that the masculines and the neuters have the same terminations excepting in the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural.

b. The vocative singular of words of the second declension in -us ends in -ê, as domine, O master; serve, O slave. This is the most important exception to the rule in § 56. a.

74. Write side by side the declension of domina, dominus, and pilum. A comparison of the forms will lead to the following rules, which are of great importance because they apply to all five declensions:

a. The vocative, with a single exception (see § 73. b), is like the nominative. That is, the vocative singular is like the nominative singular, and the vocative plural is like the nominative plural.

b. The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuter nouns are alike, and in the plural end in -a.

c. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines ends in -m and the accusative plural in -s.

d. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

e. Final -i and -o are always long; final -a is short, except in the ablative singular of the first declension.

75. Observe the sentences

Lesbia est bona, Lesbia is good
Lesbia est ancilla, Lesbia is a maidservant

We have learned (§ 55) that bona, when used, as here, in the predicate to describe the subject, is called a predicate adjective. Similarly a noun, as ancilla, used in the predicate to define the subject is called a predicate noun.

76. Rule. Predicate Noun. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.
77.

DIALOGUE

Galba and Marcus

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

G. Quis, Márce, est légá tus cum piló et tubá?
   M. Légá tus, Galba, est Sextus.
   G. Ubi Sextus habi-
   tat?
   M. In oppidó Sextus
cum filiábus habitat.
   G. Amantne oppidáni
   Sextum?
   M. Amant oppidáni
   Sextum et laudant, quod
   magná cum cónstantiá
   pugnat.
   G. Ubi, Márce, est
   ancilla tua? Cúr nón
cénam parat?
   M. Ancilla mea, Galba,
equó légáti aquam et
frúmentum dat.
   G. Cúr nón servus Sextï
equum domini cúrat?
   M. Sextus et servus ad
múrum oppidí properant. Oppidáni bellum
parant.²

¹ habitat is here translated does live. Note the three possible translations of the Latin present tense:

\[
\text{habitat} \begin{cases} 
\text{he lives} \\
\text{he is living} \\
\text{he does live}
\end{cases}
\]

Always choose the translation which makes the best sense.

² Observe that the verb paró means not only to prepare but also to prepare for; and governs the accusative case.
CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin.

1. Ubi filiae Sexti habitant?
2. Quem oppidāni amant et laudant?
3. Quid ancilla equō légāti dat?
4. Cuius equum ancilla curat?
5. Quis ad mūrūm cum Sextō properat?
6. Quid oppidāni parant?

LESSON X

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

79. We have been freely using feminine adjectives, like bona, in agreement with feminine nouns of the first declension and declined like them. Masculine adjectives of this class are declined like dominus, and neuters like pīlum. The adjective and noun, masculine and neuter, are therefore declined as follows:

**Masculine Noun and Adjective**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Terminations</th>
<th>Neuter Noun and Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dominus</td>
<td>bonus, the good master</td>
<td>pīlum bonum, the good spear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base</td>
<td>domin- bon-</td>
<td>BASES pīl- bon-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>do'minus bonus</td>
<td>domini boni</td>
<td>dominō bonō</td>
<td>dominum bonum</td>
<td>dominō bonō</td>
<td>domine bone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Terminations | |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| -us          | pīlum bonum     | -um             |
| -i           | pīli bonī       | -i              |
| -ō           | pīlō bonō       | -ō              |
| -um          | pīlum bonum     | -um             |
| -e           | pīlum bonum     | -um             |

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dominī bonī</td>
<td>dominō rum bonō rum</td>
<td>dominis bonīs</td>
<td>dominōs bonīs</td>
<td>dominis bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Terminations | |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| -i           | pīla bona       | -a              |
| -is          | pīlō rum bonō rum | -orum          |
| -is          | pilēs bonīs     | -is             |
| -a           | pīla bona       | -a              |
| -is          | pilēs bonīs     | -is             |
Decline together bellum longum, equus parvus, servus malus, mūrus altus, frūmentum novum.

80. Observe the sentences

Lesbia ancilla est bona, Lesbia, the maidservant, is good
Filia Lesbiae ancillae est bona, the daughter of Lesbia, the maidservant, is good
Servus Lesbiām ancillam amat, the slave loves Lesbia, the maidservant

In these sentences ancilla, ancillae, and ancillam denote the class of persons to which Lesbia belongs and explain who she is. Nouns so related that the second is only another name for the first and explains it are said to be in apposition, and are always in the same case.

81. Rule. Apposition. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.

82. Exercises

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.


II. 1. Wicked slave, who is your friend? Why does he not praise Galba, your master? 2. My friend is from (ex) a village of Germany, my fatherland. 3. My friend does not love the people of Italy. 4. Who is caring for the good horse of Galba, the farmer? 5. Mark, where is Lesbia, the maidservant? 6. She is hastening to the little cottage of Julia, the farmer’s daughter.

1 See footnote 1, p. 33. Remember that curat is transitive and governs a direct object. 2 Not the dative. (Cf. § 43.)
ADJECTIVES

LESSON XI

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

83. Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined in the three genders as follows:

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. bone</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom. bonī</th>
<th>bona</th>
<th>bonum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. bonōrum</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Write the declension and give it orally *across the page*, thus giving the three genders for each case.

b. Decline grātus, -a, -um; malus, -a, -um; altus, -a, -um; parvus, -a, -um.

84. Thus far the adjectives have had the same terminations as the nouns. However, the agreement between the adjective and its noun does *not* mean that they must have the same termination. If the adjective and the noun belong to different declensions, the terminations will, in many cases, not be the same. For example, nauta, sailor, is masculine and belongs to the first declension. The masculine form of the adjective bonus is of the second declension. Consequently, a *good* sailor is nauta bonus. So, the wicked farmer is agricola malus. Learn the following declensions:
85. nauta bonus (bases naut- bon-), m., the good sailor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. nauta</td>
<td>nautae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. nautae</td>
<td>nautae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. nautae</td>
<td>nautae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. nautam</td>
<td>nautas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. nautā</td>
<td>nautās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. nauta</td>
<td>nautae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

86. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.


II. 1. The wicked farmer is hastening to the village with (his) booty. 2. The reputation of the wicked farmer is not good. 3. Why does Galba’s daughter give arms and weapons to the wicked farmer? 4. Lesbia invites the good sailor to dinner. 5. Why is Lesbia with the good sailor hastening from the cottage? 6. Sextus, where is my helmet? 7. The good sailors are hastening to the toilsome battle. 8. The horses of the wicked farmers are small. 9. The Roman people give money to the good sailors. 10. Friends care for the good sailors. 11. Whose friends are fighting with the wicked farmers?

1 Est, beginning a declarative sentence, there is.
LESSON XII

NOUNS IN -IUS AND -IUM

87. Nouns of the second declension in -ius and -ium end in -i in the genitive singular, not in -ii, and the accent rests on the penult; as, filii from filius (son), praesi’dì from praesi’dium (garrison).

88. Proper names of persons in -ius, and filius, end in -i in the vocative singular, not in -ē, and the accent rests on the penult; as, Vergi’li, O Vergil; fili, O son.

a. Observe that in these words the vocative and the genitive are alike.

89. praesidium (base praesidi-), n., garrison filius (base filli-), m., son

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. praesidium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. praesi’dī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. praesidiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. praesidium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. praesidiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. praesidium</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural is regular. Note that the -i- of the base is lost only in the genitive singular, and in the vocative of words like filius.

Decline together praesidium parvum; filius bonus; fluvius longus, the long river; proelium clārum, the famous battle.

90. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.


LESSON XIII

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

91. Declension of Nouns in -er and -ir. In early Latin all the masculine nouns of the second declension ended in -os. This -os later became -us in words like servus, and was dropped entirely in words with bases ending in -r, like puer, boy; ager, field; and vir, man. These words are therefore declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>puer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>puerī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>puerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>puerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>puerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Dative with finitimus. (See § 43.)
ADJECTIVES IN -ER

a. The vocative case of these words is like the nominative, following the general rule (§ 74, a).

b. The declension differs from that of servus only in the nominative and vocative singular.

c. Note that in puer the e remains all the way through, while in ager it is present only in the nominative. In puer the e belongs to the base, but in ager (base agr-) it does not, and was inserted in the nominative to make it easier to pronounce. Most words in -er are declined like ager. The genitive shows whether you are to follow puer or ager.

93. Masculine adjectives in -er of the second declension are declined like nouns in -er. A few of them are declined like puer, but most of them like ager. The feminine and neuter nominatives show which form to follow, thus,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>liberum (free)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
<td>pulchrum (pretty)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the full declension in the three genders, see § 469, b. c.

94. Decline together the words vir liber, terra libera, frumentum liberum, puer pulcher, puella pulchra, oppidum pulchrum.

95. Itália

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.


1 In this selection note especially the emphasis as shown by the order of the words. 2 orbis terrárum, of the world. 3 Tiberím, the Tiber, accusative case.
ADJECTIVES IN -ER

96.

DIALOGUE

MARCUS AND CORNELIUS

C. Ubi est, Mārce, filius tuus? Estne in pulchrā terrā Italīā?
M. Nōn est, Cornēli, in Italīā. Ad fluvium Rhēnum properat cum
cōpiis Rōmānīs quia est 1 fāma
novī belli cum Germānīs. Liber
Germaniae populus Rōmānōs
nōn amat.

C. Estne filius tuus cōpiārum
Rōmānārum lēgātus?
M. Lēgātus nōn est, sed est
apud lēgōnāriōs.

C. Quae ² arma portat ³?
M. Scūtum magnum et lōri-
cam dūram et galeam pulchram
portat.

C. Quae tēla portat?

C. Amatne lēgātus filium
tuum?
M. Amat, et saepe filiō meō
praemia pulchra et praedam
multam dat.

C. Ubi est terra Germānōrum?
M. Terra Germānōrum, Cornēli, est fīnītima Rhēnō, fluvīō magnō
et altō.

¹ est, before its subject, there is; so sunt, there are. ² Quae, what kind of, an interrogative adjective pronoun. ³ What are the three possible translations of the present tense?
LES S S E N S XIV

THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS

97. Observe the sentences

This is my shield
This shield is mine

In the first sentence my is a possessive adjective; in the second mine is a possessive pronoun, for it takes the place of a noun, this shield is mine being equivalent to this shield is my shield. Similarly, in Latin the possessives are sometimes adjectives and sometimes pronouns.

98. The possessives my, mine, your, yours, etc. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

SINGULAR

1st Pers. meus, mea, meum
2nd Pers. tuus, tua, tuum
3rd Pers. suus, sua, suum

my, mine
your, yours
his (own), her (own), its (own)

PLURAL

1st Pers. noster, nostra, nostrum
2nd Pers. vester, vestra, vestrum
3rd Pers. suus, sua, suum

our, ours
your, yours
their (own), theirs

Note. Meus has the irregular vocative singular masculine mí, as mí filí, O my son.

a. The possessives agree with the name of the thing possessed in gender, number, and case. Compare the English and Latin in

Sextus is calling his boy
Julia is calling her boy

Sextus suum puerum vocat
Íulia

Observe that suum agrees with puerum, and is unaffected by the gender of Sextus or Julia.

b. When your, yours, refers to one person, use tuus; when to more than one, vester; as,

Lesbia, your wreaths are pretty
Girls, your wreaths are pretty

Corónae tuae, Lesbia, sunt pulchrae
Corónae vestae, puellae, sunt pulchrae
c. Suus is a reflexive possessive, that is, it usually stands in the predicate and regularly refers back to the subject. Thus, Vir suōs servōs vocat means *The man calls his (own) slaves*. Here his (suōs) refers to man (vir), and could not refer to any one else.

d. Possessives are used much less frequently than in English, being omitted whenever the meaning is clear without them. (Cf. § 22. a.) This is especially true of suus, -a, -um, which, when inserted, is more or less emphatic, like our his own, her own, etc.

99. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.


II. 1. Our teacher praises Mark’s industry. 2. My son Sextus is carrying his booty to the Roman camp.¹ 3. Your good girls are giving aid to the sick and wretched.² 4. There are³ frequent battles in our villages. 5. My son, where is the lieutenant’s food? 6. The camp is mine, but the weapons are yours.

¹ Not the dative. Why? ² Here the adjectives *sick* and *wretched* are used like nouns. ³ Where should *sunt* stand? Cf. I. 2 above.
THE ABLATIVE DENOTING \textit{WITH}

LESSON XV

THE ABLATIVE DENOTING \textit{WITH}

100. Of the various relations denoted by the ablative case (§ 50) there is none more important than that expressed in English by the preposition \textit{with}. This little word is not so simple as it looks. It does not always convey the same meaning, nor is it always to be translated by \textit{cum}. This will become clear from the following sentences:

\begin{enumerate}
\item a. Mark is feeble \textit{with (for or because of)} want of food
\item b. Diana kills the beasts \textit{with (or by)} her arrows
\item c. Julia is \textit{with} Sextus
\item d. The men fight \textit{with} great steadiness
\end{enumerate}

\begin{enumerate}
\item a. In sentence \textit{a}, \textit{with want (of food)} gives the \textit{cause} of Mark's feebleness. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the \textit{ablative of cause}:

\textit{Mārcus est īnfirmus inopiā cibī}

\item b. In sentence \textit{b}, \textit{with (or by) her arrows} tells \textit{by means of what} Diana kills the beasts. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the \textit{ablative of means}:

\textit{Diāna sagittīs suīs ferās necat}

\item c. In sentence \textit{c} we are told that Julia is not alone, but \textit{in company with} Sextus. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative with the preposition \textit{cum}, and the construction is called the \textit{ablative of accompaniment}:

\textit{Iūlia est cum Sextō}

\item d. In sentence \textit{d} we are told \textit{how the men fight}. The idea is one of \textit{manner}. This is expressed in Latin by the ablative with \textit{cum}, unless there is a modifying adjective present, in which case \textit{cum} may be omitted. This construction is called the \textit{ablative of manner}:

\textit{Virī (cum) cōnstantiā magnā pugnant}
\end{enumerate}

101. You are now able to form four important rules for the ablative denoting \textit{with}:
102. Rule. Ablative of Cause. Cause is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question Because of what?

103. Rule. Ablative of Means. Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question By means of what? With what?

N.B. Cum must never be used with the ablative expressing cause or means.

104. Rule. Ablative of Accompaniment. Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with cum. This answers the question With whom?

105. Rule. Ablative of Manner. The ablative with cum is used to denote the manner of an action. Cum may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question How? In what manner?

106. What uses of the ablative do you discover in the following passage, and what question does each answer?

The soldiers marched to the fort with great speed and broke down the gate with blows of their muskets. The inhabitants, terrified by the din, attempted to cross the river with their wives and children, but the stream was swollen with (or by) the rain. Because of this many were swept away by the waters and only a few, almost overcome with fatigue, with great difficulty succeeded in gaining the farther shore.

107. Exercises

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

I. The Romans prepare for War. Römani, clārus Italiae populus, bellum parant. Ex agrīs suis, vicis, oppidisque magnō studiō virī validī ad arma properant. iam légāri cum legiōnāriīs ex Itāliā ad Rhēnum, fluvium Germāniae altum et lātum, properant, et servī equīs et carrīs cibum frūmentumque ad castra Rōmāna portant. Inopīa bonōrum 5 tēlorum ūnfīrmi sunt Germānī, sed Rōmāni armāti galeīs, lōricīs, scūtīs, glādiis, pilīisque sunt validī.
II. 1. The sturdy farmers of Italy labor in the fields with great
diligence. 2. Sextus, the lieutenant, and (his) son Mark are fighting
with the Germans. 3. The Roman legionaries are armed with long
spears. 4. Where is Lesbia, your maid, Sextus? Lesbia is with my
friends in Galba’s cottage. 5. Many are sick because of bad water
and for lack of food. 6. The Germans, with (their) sons and daughters,
are hastening with horses and wagons.

LESSON XVI

THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

108. There are nine irregular adjectives of the first and second
decensions which have a peculiar termination in the genitive and
dative singular of all genders:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.  -ius</td>
<td>-ius</td>
<td>-ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.   -í</td>
<td>-í</td>
<td>-í</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Otherwise they are declined like bonus, -a, -um. Learn the list
and the meaning of each:

alius, alia, aliud, other, another (of
several)
aliter, altera, alterum, the one, the
other (of two)
únus, -a, -um, one, alone; (in the
plural) only
ullus, -a, -um, any

109. PARADIGMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>nullus</td>
<td>nulla</td>
<td>nullum</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nullús</td>
<td>nullíus</td>
<td>nullíus</td>
<td>aliús</td>
<td>alíus</td>
<td>aliús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nullí</td>
<td>nullí</td>
<td>nullí</td>
<td>alií</td>
<td>alií</td>
<td>alií</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nullum</td>
<td>nullam</td>
<td>nullum</td>
<td>alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nulló</td>
<td>nullá</td>
<td>nulló</td>
<td>alió</td>
<td>aliá</td>
<td>alió</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Plural is Regular
THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

a. Note the peculiar neuter singular ending in -d of alius. The genitive alius is rare. Instead of it use alterius, the genitive of alter.

b. These peculiar case endings are found also in the declension of pronouns (see § 114). For this reason these adjectives are sometimes called the pronominal adjectives.

110. Learn the following idioms:

alter, -era, -erum . . . alter, -era, -erum, the one . . . the other (of two)
alis, -a, -ud . . . alius, -a, -ud, one . . . another (of any number)
alii, -ae, -a . . . alii, -ae, -a, some . . . others

EXAMPLES

1. Alterum oppidum est magnum, alterum parvum, the one town is large, the other small (of two towns).

2. Aliud oppidum est validum, aliud infirmum, one town is strong, another weak (of towns in general).

3. Alii gladiōs, aliī scūta portant, some carry swords, others shields.

111. EXERCISES


NOTE. The pronominal adjectives, as you observe, regularly stand before and not after their nouns.

II. 1. The men of all Germany are preparing for war. 2. Some towns are great and others are small. 3. One boy likes chickens, another horses. 4. Already the booty of one town is in our fort. 5. Our whole village is suffering for (i.e. weak because of) lack of food. 6. The people are already hastening to the other town. 7. Among the Romans (there) is no lack of grain.
112. A demonstrative is a word that points out an object definitely, as this, that, these, those. Sometimes these words are pronouns, as, Do you hear these? and sometimes adjectives, as, Do you hear these men? In the former case they are called demonstrative pronouns, in the latter demonstrative adjectives.

113. Demonstratives are similarly used in Latin both as pronouns and as adjectives. The one used most is

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ Singular } & \quad \text{ Plural} \\
\text{ this} & \quad \text{ these} \\
\text{ that} & \quad \text{ those}
\end{align*}
\]

is, masculine; ea, feminine; id, neuter

114. Is is declined as follows. Compare its declension with that of alius, § 109.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. eum</td>
<td>cām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. eō</td>
<td>cā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the base e- changes to i- in a few cases. The genitive singular eius is pronounced ek'yus. In the plural the forms with two i's are preferred and the two i's are pronounced as one. Hence, pronounce iī as ī and iīs as īs.

115. Besides being used as demonstrative pronouns and adjectives the Latin demonstratives are regularly used for the personal pronoun he, she, it. As a personal pronoun, then, is would have the following meanings:
COMPARISON BETWEEN SUUS AND IS 49

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Nom.} & \quad \text{is, he; ea, she; id, it} \\
\text{Gen.} & \quad \text{eius, of him or his; eius, of her, her, or hers; eius, of it or its} \\
\text{Sing.} & \quad \text{Dat.} \quad \text{ei, to or for him; ei, to or for her; ei, to or for it} \\
& \quad \text{Acc.} \quad \text{eum, him; eam, her; id, it} \\
& \quad \text{Abl.} \quad \text{eō, with, from, etc., him; eā, with, from, etc., her; eō, with, from, etc., it} \\
\text{Nom.} & \quad \text{ei or ii, eae, ea, they} \\
\text{Gen.} & \quad \text{eōrum, eārum, eōrum, of them, their} \\
\text{Plur.} & \quad \text{Dat.} \quad \text{eis or iīs, eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, to or for them} \\
& \quad \text{Acc.} \quad \text{ēōs, eās, ea, them} \\
& \quad \text{Abl.} \quad \text{eis or iīs, eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, with, from, etc., them}
\end{align*}
\]

116. Comparison between suus and is. We learned above (§ 98. c) that suus is a reflexive possessive. When his, her (poss.), its, their, do not refer to the subject of the sentence, we express his, her, its by eius, the genitive singular of is, ea, id; and their by the genitive plural, using eōrum to refer to a masculine or neuter antecedent noun and eārum to refer to a feminine one.

EXAMPLES

Galba calls his (own) son, Galba suum filium vocat
Galba calls his son (not his own, but another’s), Galba eius filium vocat
Julia calls her (own) children, Iūlia suōs liberōs vocat
Julia calls her children (not her own, but another’s), Iūlia eius liberōs vocat
The men praise their (own) boys, virī suōs puerōs laudant
The men praise their boys (not their own, but others’), virī eōrum puerōs laudant

117. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

1. He praises her, him, it, them. 2. This cart, that report, these teachers, those women, that abode, these abodes. 3. That strong garrison, among those weak and sick women, that want of firmness, those frequent plans.

4. The other woman is calling her chickens (her own). 5. Another woman is calling her chickens (not her own). 6. The Gaul praises
his arms (*his own*). 7. The Gaul praises his arms (*not his own*). 8. This farmer often plows their fields. 9. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*their own*). 10. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*not their own*). 11. Free men love their own fatherland. 12. They love its villages and towns.

118. 

**DIALOGUE**

**Cornelius and Marcus**

M. Quis est vir, Cornēlii, cum puerō parvō? Estne Rōmānus et liber?
C. Rōmānus nōn est, Mārcē. Is vir est servus et eius domicilium est in silvis Galliae.
M. Estne puer filius eius servi an alterius?
C. Neutrius filius est puer. Is est filius lēgātī Sextī.
M. Quō puer cum eo servō properat?
C. Is cum servō properat ad lātōs Sextī agrōs.② Tōtum frūmentum est iam mātūrum et magnus servōrum numerus in Italīae ③ agrīs labōrat.
M. Agricolaene sunt Gallī et patriae suae agrōs arant?
M. Magister noster pueris puellisque grātās Gallōrum fābulās saepe nārrat et laudat eōs saepe.
C. Mala est fortūna eōrum et saepe miserī servi multīs cum lacrimis patriam suam désiderant.

① There are a number of departures from the normal order in this dialogue. Find them, and give the reason. ② When a noun is modified by both a genitive and an adjective, a favorite order of words is _adjective, genitive, noun_. ③ A modifying genitive often stands between a preposition and its object.

CONJUGATION

LESSON XVIII

CONJUGATION

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES OF SUM

119. The inflection of a verb is called its conjugation (cf. § 23). In English the verb has but few changes in form, the different meanings being expressed by the use of personal pronouns and auxiliaries, as, I am carried, we have carried, they shall have carried, etc. In Latin, on the other hand, instead of using personal pronouns and auxiliary verbs, the form changes with the meaning. In this way the Romans expressed differences in tense, mood, voice, person, and number.

120. The Tenses. The different forms of a verb referring to different times are called its tenses. The chief distinctions of time are present, past, and future:

1. The present, that is, what is happening now, or what usually happens, is expressed by

2. The past, that is, what was happening; used to happen, happened, has happened, or had happened, is expressed by

3. The future, that is, what is going to happen, is expressed by

121. The Moods. Verbs have inflection of mood to indicate the manner in which they express action. The moods of the Latin verb are the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and infinitive.

a. A verb is in the indicative mood when it makes a statement or asks a question about something assumed as a fact. All the verbs we have used thus far are in the present indicative.

122. The Persons. There are three persons, as in English. The first person is the person speaking (I sing); the second person the person spoken to (you sing); the third person the person spoken of
(he sings). Instead of using personal pronouns for the different persons in the two numbers, singular and plural, the Latin verb uses the personal endings (cf. § 22 a; 29). We have already learned that -t is the ending of the third person singular in the active voice and -nt of the third person plural. The complete list of personal endings of the active voice is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Pers. I</td>
<td>-m or -ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d Pers. thou or you</td>
<td>-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d Pers. he, she, it</td>
<td>-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we -mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you -tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they -nt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

123. Most verbs form their moods and tenses after a regular plan and are called regular verbs. Verbs that depart from this plan are called irregular. The verb to be is irregular in Latin as in English. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are inflected as follows:

**PRESENT INDICATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Pers. su-m, I am</td>
<td>su-mus, we are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d Pers. e-s, you 1 are</td>
<td>es-tis, you 1 are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d Pers. es-t, he, she, or it is</td>
<td>su-nt, they are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERFECT INDICATIVE**

| 1st Pers. er-a-m, I was | er-a'-mus, we were |
| 2d Pers. er-a-s, you were | er-a'-tis, you were |
| 3d Pers. er-a-t, he, she, or it was | er-a-nt, they were |

**FUTURE INDICATIVE**

| 1st Pers. er-ō, I shall be | er'-i-mus, we shall be |
| 2d Pers. er-i-s, you will be | er'-i-tis, you will be |
| 3d Pers. er-i-t, he will be | er-u-nt, they will be |

a. Be careful about vowel quantity and accent in these forms, and consult §§ 12. 2; 14; 15.

1 Observe that in English you are, you were, etc. may be either singular or plural. In Latin the singular and plural forms are never the same.
124.

DIALOGUE

THE BOYS SEXTUS AND MARCUS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

S. Ubi es, Marcæ? Ubi est Quintus? Ubi estis, amici?
M. Cum Quintō, Sexte, in silva sum. Non sōli sumus; sunt in silvā multi aliī puerī.
S. Nunc laetus es, sed nūper nōn laetus erās. Cūr miser erās?
M. Miser eram quia amīci mei erant in aliō vīcō et eram sōlus.
Nunc sum apud sociōs meōs. Nunc laeti sumus et erimus.
S. Erātisne in lūdō hodiē?
M. Hodiē nōn eramus in lūdō, quod magister erat aeger.
S. Eritisne mox in lūdō?
M. Amīci meī ibi erunt, sed ego (I) nōn erō.
S. Cūr nōn ibi eris? Magister, saepe irātus, inopiam tuam studi
diligentiaque nōn laudat.
M. Nūper aeger eram et nunc-infimus sum.

125.

EXERCISE

1. You are, you were, you will be, (sing. and plur.). 2. I am, I was, I shall be. 3. He is, he was, he will be. 4. We are, we were, we shall be. 5. They are, they were, they will be.
6. Why were you not in school to-day? I was sick. 7. Lately he was a sailor, now he is a farmer, soon he will be a teacher. 8. To-day I am happy, but lately I was wretched. 9. The teachers were happy because of the boys' industry.
LESSON XIX

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS · PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF AMÔ AND MONEÔ

126. There are four conjugations of the regular verbs. These conjugations are distinguished from each other by the final vowel of the present conjugation-stem.¹ This vowel is called the distinguishing vowel, and is best seen in the present infinitive.

Below is given the present infinitive of a verb of each conjugation, the present stem, and the distinguishing vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Pres. Infin.</th>
<th>Pres. Stem</th>
<th>Distinguishing Vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amā're, to love</td>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>monē're, to advise</td>
<td>monē-</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>re'gē're, to rule</td>
<td>regē-</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>audī're, to hear</td>
<td>audī-</td>
<td>ĩ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Note that the present stem of each conjugation is found by dropping -re, the ending of the present infinitive.

Note. The present infinitive of sum is esse, and es- is the present stem.

127. From the present stem are formed the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

128. The inflection of the Present Active Indicative of the first and of the second conjugation is as follows:

\[
\text{a'mō, amā're (love)} \quad \text{mo'neō, monē're (advise)}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. Stem</th>
<th>1. a'mō, I love</th>
<th>mo'neō, I advise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>2. a'mās, you love</td>
<td>mo'nes, you advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. a'mat, he (she, it) loves</td>
<td>mo'net, he (she, it) advises</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Plur. | 1. amā'mus, we love | mo'ne'mus, we advise |
|       | 2. a'mātis, you love | mo'netis, you advise |
|       | 3. a'mant, they love | mo'net, they advise |

¹ The stem is the body of a word to which the terminations are attached. It is often identical with the base (cf. § 58). If, however, the stem ends in a vowel, the latter does not appear in the base, but is variously combined with the inflectional terminations. This point is further explained in § 230.
The present tense is inflected by adding the personal endings to the present stem, and its first person uses -ō and not -m. The form amō is for amā-ō, the two vowels ā-ō contracting to ō. In moneō there is no contraction. Nearly all regular verbs ending in -ēō belong to the second conjugation.

Note that the long final vowel of the stem is shortened before another vowel (monē-ō = mo'neō), and before final -t (amāt, monēt) and -nt (amānt, monēnt). Compare § 12. 2.

129. Like amō and moneō inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs:\n
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative Present</th>
<th>Infinitive Present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a'rō, I plow</td>
<td>arā're, to plow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cū'tō, I care for</td>
<td>cūrā're, to care for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*dēleō, I destroy</td>
<td>dēle're, to destroy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsi'derō, I long for</td>
<td>dēsiderā're, to long for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dō, * I give</td>
<td>da're, to give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ha'beō, I have</td>
<td>habē're, to have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'bitō, I live, I dwell</td>
<td>habitā're, to live, to dwell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*iu'beō, I order</td>
<td>iubē're, to order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labō'rō, I labor</td>
<td>labōrā're, to labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lau'dō, I praise</td>
<td>laudā're, to praise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mātū'rō, I hasten</td>
<td>mātūrā're, to hasten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*mo'veō, I move</td>
<td>movē're, to move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nār'rō, I tell</td>
<td>nārrā're, to tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ne'cō, I kill</td>
<td>necā're, to kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūn'tiō, I announce</td>
<td>nūntiā're, to announce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pa'rō, I prepare</td>
<td>parā're, to prepare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>por'tō, I carry</td>
<td>portā're, to carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro'perō, I hasten</td>
<td>properā're, to hasten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pug'nō, I fight</td>
<td>pugnā're, to fight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*vi'deo, I see</td>
<td>vidē're, to see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vo'cō, I call</td>
<td>vocā're, to call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

130. The Translation of the Present. In English there are three ways of expressing present action. We may say, for example, I live, I am living, or I do live. In Latin the one expression habitō covers all three of these expressions.

1 The only new verbs in this list are the five of the second conjugation which are starred. Learn their meanings. 2 Observe that in dō, dāre, the a is short, and that the present stem is dā- and not dā-. The only forms of dō that have a long are dās (pres. indic.), dā (pres. inv.), and dāns (pres. part.).
131. **EXERCISES**

Give the *voice*, *mood*, *tense*, *person*, and *number* of each form.


N.B. Observe that the personal ending is of prime importance in translating a Latin verb form. Give that your first attention.

II. 1. We plow, we are plowing, we do plow. 2. They care for, they are caring for, they do care for. 3. You give, you are having, you do have (*sing.*). 4. We destroy, I do long for, they are living. 5. He calls, they see, we are telling. 6. We do fight, we order, he is moving, he prepares. 7. They are laboring, we kill, you announce.

**LESSON XX**

**IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF AMŌ AND MONEŌ**

132. **Tense Signs.** Instead of using auxiliary verbs to express differences in tense, like *was*, *shall*, *will*, etc., Latin adds to the verb stem certain elements that have the force of auxiliary verbs. These are called *tense signs.*

133. **Formation and Inflection of the Imperfect.** The tense sign of the imperfect is *-bā-*, which is added to the present stem. The imperfect consists, therefore, of three parts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Tense Sign</th>
<th>Personal Ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loving</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The inflection is as follows:

**Conjugation I**

| 1. amā′bam, *I was loving* | monē′bam, *I was advising* |
| 2. amā′bās, *you were loving* | monē′bās, *you were advising* |
| 3. amā′bat, *he was loving* | monē′bat, *he was advising* |

**Conjugation II**

| 1. | monē′bam, *I was advising* | -m |
| 2. | monē′bās, *you were advising* | -s |
| 3. | monē′bat, *he was advising* | -t |
1. amābā’mus, we were loving  
2. amābā’tis, you were loving  
3. amā’bant, they were loving

monēbā’mus, we were advising  
monēbā’tis, you were advising  
monē’bant, they were advising

a. Note that the ā of the tense sign -bā- is shortened before -nt, and before m and t when final. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 129.

134. **Meaning of the Imperfect.** The Latin imperfect describes an act as **going on or progressing in past time**, like the English past-progressive tense (as, *I was walking*). It is the regular tense used to describe a past situation or condition of affairs.

135. **EXERCISES**

II. 1. You were having (*sing. and plur.*), we were killing, they were laboring. 2. He was moving, we were ordering, we were fighting. 3. We were telling, they were seeing, he was calling. 4. They were living, I was longing for, we were destroying. 5. You were giving, you were moving, you were announcing, (*sing. and plur.*) 6. They were caring for, he was plowing, we were praising.

136. **Niōbe and Her Children**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

Niōbē, rēgīna Thēbānōrum, erat pulchra fēmina sed superba. Erat superba nōn sālum fōrmā ¹ suā maritique potentiā ¹ sed etiam magnō liberōrum numerō. ¹ Nam habēbat ² septem filiōs et septem filiās. Sed ea superbia erat rēgīnae ³ causa magnae tristitiae et liberīs ³ causa dūrae poenae.

**Note.** The words Niōbē, Thēbānōrum, and marītī will be found in the general vocabulary. Translate the selection without looking up any other words.

¹ Ablative of cause. ² Translate *had*; it denotes a past situation. (See § 134.) ³ Dative, cf. § 43.
LESSON XXI

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF AMŌ AND MONEŌ

137. The tense sign of the Future Indicative in the first and second conjugations is -bi-. This is joined to the present stem of the verb and followed by the personal ending, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Tense Sign</th>
<th>Personal Ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

138. The Future Active Indicative is inflected as follows:

**Conjugation I**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Conjugation II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. amāʾbō, I shall love</td>
<td>monēʾbō, I shall advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāʾbis, you will love</td>
<td>monēʾbis, you will advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amāʾbit, he will love</td>
<td>monēʾbit, he will advise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. amāʾbimus, we shall love</td>
<td>monēʾbimus, we shall advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāʾbitis, you will love</td>
<td>monēʾbitis, you will advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amāʾbunt, they will love</td>
<td>monēʾbunt, they will advise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The personal endings are as in the present. The ending -bō in the first person singular is contracted from -bi-ō. The -bi- appears as -bu- in the third person plural. Note that the inflection is like that of erō, the future of sum. Pay especial attention to the accent.

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 129.

139. **EXERCISES**


II. 1. We shall announce, we shall see, I shall hasten. 2. I shall carry, he will plow, they will care for. 3. You will announce, you will
move, you will give, (sing. and plur.). 4. We shall fight, we shall destroy, I shall long for. 5. He will call, they will see, you will tell (plur.). 6. They will dwell, we shall order, he will praise. 7. They will labor, we shall kill, you will have (sing. and plur.), he will destroy.

140. **Niôbe and Her Children (Concluded)**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Apollō et Diāna erant liberī Lātōnae. Iis Thēbānī sacra crēbra parābant.¹ Oppidāni amābant Lātōnam et liberōs eius. Id superbae rēginae erat molestum. "Cūr," inquit, "Lātōnae et liberōs sacra parātis?" Duōs liberōs habet Lātōna; quattuordecim habeō ego. Ubi sunt mea sacra?" Lātōna iis veribus² irāta liberōs suōs vocat. 5 Ad eam volant Apollō Diānaque et sagittis³ suīs miserōs liberōs rēginae superbae délent. Niobē, nūper laeta, nunc misera, sedet apud liberōs interfectōs et cum perpetuīs lacrimis⁴ eōs désiderat.

**Note.** Consult the general vocabulary for Apollō, inquit, duōs, and quattuordecim. Try to remember the meaning of all the other words.

**LESSON XXII**

**REVIEW OF VERBS - THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES**

141. Review the present, imperfect, and future active indicative, both orally and in writing, of sum and the verbs in § 129.

142. We learned in § 43 for what sort of expressions we may expect the dative, and in § 44 that one of its commonest uses is with verbs to express the indirect object. It is also very common with adjectives to express the object toward which the quality denoted by the adjective is directed. We have already had a number of cases.

¹ Observe the force of the imperfect here, used to prepare, were in the habit of preparing; so amābant denotes a past situation of affairs. (See § 134.) ² Ablative of cause. ³ Ablative of means. ⁴ This may be either manner or accompaniment. It is often impossible to draw a sharp line between means, manner, and accompaniment. The Romans themselves drew no sharp distinction. It was enough for them if the general idea demanded the ablative case.
where grātus, agreeable to, was so followed by a dative; and in the last lesson we had molestus, annoying to, followed by that case. The usage may be more explicitly stated by the following rule:

143. Rule. Dative with Adjectives. The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites.

144. Among such adjectives memorize the following:

idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable (for)         molestus, -a, -um, annoying (to), troublesome (to)
amīcus, -a, -um, friendly (to)            finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring (to)
inimīcus, -a, -um, hostile (to)          proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next (to)
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing (to), agreeable (to)

145. EXERCISES


II. 1. The sacrifices of the people will be annoying to the haughty queen. 2. The sacrifices were pleasing not only to Latona but also to Diana. 3. Diana will destroy those hostile to Latona. 4. The punishment of the haughty queen was pleasing to the goddess Diana. 5. The Romans will move their forces to a large field suitable for a camp. 6. Some of the allies were friendly to the Romans, others to the Gauls.

1 Why not the dative?
146. **Cornelia and Her Jewels**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.


**Note.** Can you translate the paragraph above? There are no new words.

**LESSON XXIII**

**Present Active Indicative of *regō* and *audiō***

147. As we learned in § 126, the present stem of the third conjugation ends in -ē, and of the fourth in -ī. The inflection of the Present Indicative is as follows:

**Conjugation III**  
*re'gō, re'gere (rule)*  
Pres. Stem *rege-*

**Conjugation IV**  
*au'diō, audi're (hear)*  
Pres. Stem *audi-*

**Singular**

1. *re'gō, I rule*  
2. *re'gis, you rule*  
3. *re'git, he (she, it) rules*

**Plural**

1. *re'gimus, we rule*  
2. *re'gitis, you rule*  
3. *re'gunt, they rule*  

1. The personal endings are the same as before.

2. The final short -e- of the stem *rege-* combines with the -ō in the first person, becomes -u- in the third person plural, and becomes -i- elsewhere. The inflection is like that of *erō*, the future of *sum*.

1 Observe that all the imperfects denote continued or progressive action, or describe a state of affairs. (Cf. § 134.)
PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

3. In audiō the personal endings are added regularly to the stem audi-. In the third person plural -u- is inserted between the stem and the personal ending, as audi-u-nt. Note that the long vowel of the stem is shortened before final -t just as in amō and moneō. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

Note that -i- is always short in the third conjugation and long in the fourth, excepting where long vowels are regularly shortened. (Cf. § 12. 1, 2.)

148. Like regō and audiō inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative Present</th>
<th>Infinitive Present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agō, I drive</td>
<td>agere, to drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcō, I say</td>
<td>dīcere, to say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcō, I lead</td>
<td>dūcere, to lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittō, I send</td>
<td>mittere, to send</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūniō, I fortify</td>
<td>mūnīre, to fortify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reperīō, I find</td>
<td>reperīre, to find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venīō, I come</td>
<td>venīre, to come</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

149. EXERCISES


II. 1. What do they find? Whom do they hear? Why does he come? 2. Whose camp are we fortifying? To whom does he say? What are we saying? 3. I am driving, you are leading, they are hearing. 4. You send, he says, you fortify (sing. and plur.). 5. I am coming, we find, they send. 6. They lead, you drive; he does fortify. 7. You lead, you find, you rule, (all plur.).

150. CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS (Concluded)

Proximum domiciliō Cornēliae erat pulchrae Campānae domicilium. Campāna erat superba nōn sōlum fōrmā suā sed maximē ornāmentis suis. Ea¹ laudābat semper. “Habēsne tū ulla ornāmenta, Cornēlia?”

¹Ea, accusative plural neuter.

Note. The only new words here are Campâna, semper, and tû.

"Pucri mei sunt mea ornamenti"

Lesson XXIV

Imperfect Active Indicative of regō and audiō · The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs

151. Paradigms

Conjugation III

1. regē'bam, I was ruling
2. regē'bās, you were ruling
3. regē'bat, he was ruling

Conjugation IV

1. audiē'bam, I was hearing
2. audiē'bās, you were hearing
3. audiē'bat, he was hearing

Plural

1. regēbā'mus, we were ruling
2. regēbā'tis, you were ruling
3. regē'bant, they were ruling

audiēbā'mus, we were hearing
audiēbā'tis, you were hearing
audiē'bant, they were hearing
1. The tense sign is -bā-, as in the first two conjugations.
2. Observe that the final -ē- of the stem is lengthened before the tense sign -bā-. This makes the imperfect of the third conjugation just like the imperfect of the second (cf. monēbam and regēbam).
3. In the fourth conjugation -ē- is inserted between the stem and the tense sign -bā- (audi-ē-ba-m).
4. In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 148.

152. 

EXERCISES


II. 1. They were leading, you were driving (sing. and plur.), he was fortifying. 2. They were sending, we were finding, I was coming. 3. You were sending, you were fortifying, (sing. and plur.), he was saying. 4. They were hearing, you were leading (sing. and plur.), I was driving. 5. We were saying, he was sending, I was fortifying. 6. They were coming; he was hearing, I was finding. 7. You were ruling (sing. and plur.), we were coming, they were ruling.

153. The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs. We learned above (§ 20. a) that a verb which does not admit of a direct object is called an intransitive verb. Many such verbs, however, are of such meaning that they can govern an indirect object, which will, of course, be in the dative case (§ 45). Learn the following list of intransitive verbs with their meanings. In each case the dative indirect object is the person or thing to which a benefit, injury, or feeling is directed. (Cf. § 43.)

creēō, creēere, believe (give belief to)  
faveō, favēre, favor (show favor to)  
noceō, nocēre, injure (do harm to)  
pāreō, pāreere, obey (give obedience to)  
persuādeō, persuādere, persuade (offer persuasion to)  
resistō, resistēre, resist (offer resistance to)  
studēō, studēre, be eager for (give attention to)
154. **Rule. Dative with Intransitive Verbs.** *The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs crēdō, faveō, noceō, pāreō, persuādeō, resistō, studeō,* and others of like meaning.

155. **Exercise**

2. Mei finītimī cōnsiēū tuō nōn favēbunt, quod bellō student.
3. Tibērius et Gāius disciplīnae dūrae nōn resistēbant et Cornēliae pārēbant.
4. Dea erat inīniica septem filiābus rēgīnae.
5. Dūra poena et perpetua tristitia rēgīnae nōn persuādēbunt.
7. Mox sagittae volābunt et liberis miserīs nocēbunt.

**LESSON XXV**

**FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF REGĒ AND AUDIĒ**

156. In the future tense of the third and fourth conjugations we meet with a new tense sign. Instead of using -bi-, as in the first and second conjugations, we use -ā-\(^1\) in the first person singular and -ē- in the rest of the tense. In the third conjugation the final -ē- of the stem is dropped before this tense sign; in the fourth conjugation the final -ī- of the stem is retained.\(^2\)

157. **Paradigms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Conjugation III</strong></th>
<th><strong>Conjugation IV</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. régām, I shall rule</td>
<td>au’diām, I shall hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. régēs, you will rule</td>
<td>au’diēs, you will hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ré’get, he will rule</td>
<td>au’diet, he will hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. regē’mus, we shall rule</td>
<td>audiē’mus, we shall hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. regē’tis, you will rule</td>
<td>audiē’tis, you will hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ré’gente, they will rule</td>
<td>au’dient, they will hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) The -ā- is shortened before -m final, and -ē- before -t final and before -nt. (Cf. § 12.2.)

\(^2\) The -ī- is, of course, shortened, being before another vowel. (Cf. § 12.1.)
VERBS IN -ĪŌ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

1. Observe that the future of the third conjugation is like the present of the second, excepting in the first person singular.
2. In the same manner inflect the verbs given in § 148.

158. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dicet, dūcētis, mūniēmus. 2. Dicent, dīcētis, mittēmus.

II. 1. I shall find, he will hear, they will come. 2. I shall fortify, he will send, we shall say. 3. I shall drive, you will lead, they will hear. 4. You will send, you will fortify, (sing. and plur.), he will say.
5. I shall come, we shall find, they will send.

6. Who¹ will believe the story? I² shall believe the story. 7. Whose friends do you favor? We favor our friends. 8. Who will resist our weapons? Sextus will resist your weapons. 9. Who will persuade him? They will persuade him. 10. Why were you injuring my horse? I was not injuring your horse. 11. Whom does a good slave obey? A good slave obeys his master. 12. Our men were eager for another battle.

LESSON XXVI

VERBS IN -ĪŌ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION · THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

159. There are a few common verbs ending in -īō which do not belong to the fourth conjugation, as you might infer, but to the third. The fact that they belong to the third conjugation is shown by the ending of the infinitive. (Cf. § 126.) Compare

audīō, audīre (hear), fourth conjugation
capiō, ca'pere (take), third conjugation

¹ Remember that quis, who, is singular in number. ² Express by ego, because it is emphatic.
160. The present, imperfect, and future active indicative of capiō are inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>capiē'bam</td>
<td>ca'piam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca'pis</td>
<td>capiē'bās</td>
<td>ca'piēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca'pit</td>
<td>capiē'bat</td>
<td>ca'piēt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ca'pimus</td>
<td>capiēbā'mus</td>
<td>capiē'mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca'pitis</td>
<td>capiēbā'tis</td>
<td>capiē'tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca'piunt</td>
<td>capiē'bant</td>
<td>ca'piēnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that capiō and the other -iō verbs follow the fourth conjugation wherever in the fourth conjugation two vowels occur in succession. (Cf. capiō, audiō; capiunt, audiunt; and all the imperfect and future.) All other forms are like the third conjugation. (Cf. capis, regis; capit, regit; etc.)

2. Like capiō, inflect

faciō, facere, *make, do*  
faciē, facere, *do*  
faciēbat, facerebat, *did*  
faciēbamus, facerebamus, *did*  
faciēbatis, facerebatis, *did*  
faciēbant, facerebant, *did*

iaciō, iacere, *hurl*  
iaciē, iacere, *hurl*  
iaciēbat, iacerebat, *hurl*  
iaciēbamus, iacerebamus, *hurl*  
iaciēbatis, iacerebatis, *hurl*  
iaciēbant, iacerebant, *hurl*

rapiō, rapere, *seize*  
rapiē, rapere, *seize*  
rapiēbat, raperebat, *seized*  
rapiēbamus, raperebamus, *seized*  
rapiēbatis, raperebatis, *seized*  
rapiēbant, raperebant, *seized*

161. The Imperative Mood. The imperative mood expresses a command; as, come! send! The present tense of the imperative is used only in the second person, singular and plural. The singular in the active voice is regularly the same in form as the present stem. The plural is formed by adding -te to the singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amā, <em>love thou</em></td>
<td>amā'te, <em>love ye</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>monē, <em>advise thou</em></td>
<td>monē'te, <em>advise ye</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. (a) rege, <em>rule thou</em></td>
<td>re'gite, <em>rule ye</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. (b) cape, <em>take thou</em></td>
<td>ca'pite, <em>take ye</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>audī, <em>hear thou</em></td>
<td>audī'te, <em>hear ye</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum (irregular)</td>
<td>es, <em>be thou</em></td>
<td>este, <em>be ye</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. In the third conjugation the final -ē- of the stem becomes -ǐ- in the plural.
2. The verbs dico, say; duco, lead; and facio, make, have the irregular forms dic, duc, and fac in the singular.
3. Give the present active imperative, singular and plural, of venio, duco, voco, decid, laudo, dic, sedeo, ago, facio, munio, mitto, rapiio.

162. EXERCISES


II. 1. The goddess will seize her arms and will hurl her weapons.
2. With her weapons she will destroy many beasts.
3. She will give aid to the weak.①
4. She will fly to many lands and the beasts will flee.
5. Romans, tell② the famous story to your children.

Third Review, Lessons XVIII-XXVI, §§ 510-512

LESSON XXVII

THE PASSIVE VOICE—PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE
INDICATIVE OF AMō AND MONEō

163. The Voices. Thus far the verb forms have been in the active voice; that is, they have represented the subject as performing an action; as,

The lion —> killed —> the hunter

A verb is said to be in the passive voice when it represents its subject as receiving an action; as,

The lion ← was killed ← by the hunter

Note the direction of the arrows.

① Plural. An adjective used as a noun. (Cf. § 99. II. 3.) ② Imperative. The imperative generally stands first, as in English.
164. Passive Personal Endings. In the passive voice we use a different set of personal endings. They are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-r, I</td>
<td>-mur, we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-ris, -re, you</td>
<td>-mini, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>-tur, he, she, it</td>
<td>-ntur, they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* Observe that the letter -r appears somewhere in all but one of the endings. This is sometimes called the passive sign.

165. **PARADIGMS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amō, amāre</th>
<th>moneō, monēre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Stem</td>
<td>Pres. Stem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amā, amāre</th>
<th>moneō, monēre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present Indicative</td>
<td>personal endings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a’mor, I am loved</td>
<td>mo’neor, I am advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā’ris or amā’re, you are loved</td>
<td>monē’ris or monē’re, you are advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā’tur, he is loved</td>
<td>monē’tur, he is advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā’mur, we are loved</td>
<td>monē’mur, we are advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amā’mini, you are loved</td>
<td>monē’mini, you are advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aman’tur, they are loved</td>
<td>monen’tur, they are advised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Imperfect Indicative (Tense Sign -bā-)
| amā’bar, I was being loved | monē’bar, I was being advised |
| amābā’ris or amābā’re, you were being loved | monēbā’ris or monē-bā’re, you were being advised |
| amābā’tur, he was being loved | monēbā’tur, he was being advised |
| amābā’mur, we were being loved | monēbā’mur, we were being advised |
| amābā’mini, you were being loved | monēbā’mini, you were being advised |
| amāban’tur, they were being loved | monēban’tur, they were being advised |

1 In the present the personal ending of the first person singular is -or.
EXERCISES

FUTURE (TENSE SIGN -bi-)

**Sing.**

- amā'bor, *I shall be loved*
  - monē'bor, *I shall be advised*
- amā'beris or amā'bere, *you will be loved*
  - monē'beris or monē'-bere, *you will be advised*
- amā'bitur, *he will be loved*
  - monē'bitur, *he will be advised*

**Plur.**

- amā'bimur, *we shall be loved*
  - monē'bimur, *we shall be advised*
- amā'bi'minī, *you will be loved*
  - monē'bi'minī, *you will be advised*
- amā'bun'tur, *they will be loved*
  - monē'bun'tur, *they will be advised*

**PERSONAL ENDINGS**

- -r
- -ris or -re
- -tur
- -mur
- -mini
- -ntur

1. The tense sign and the personal endings are added as in the active.
2. In the future the tense sign -bi- appears as -bo- in the first person,
   -be- in the second, singular number, and as -bu- in the third person plural.
3. Inflect laudō, necō, portō, moveō, dēleō, iubeō, in the present, imperfect,
   and future indicative, active and passive.

166. Intransitive verbs, such as māturō, *I hasten*; habitō, *I dwell*,
   do not have a passive voice with a personal subject.

167.

I. 1. Laudāris or laudāre, laudās, datur, dat. 2. Dabitur, dabit, vidē-
   -minī, vidētis. 3. Vocābat, vocābātur, dēlebitis, dēlebimini. 4. Parā-
   -bātur, parābat, cūrās, cūrāris or cūrāre. 5. Portābantur, portābant,
   vidēbimur, vidēbimus. 6. Iubēris or iubēre, iubēs, laudābāris or laudā-
   -bāre, laudābās. 7. Movēberis or movēbere, movēbis, dabantur, dabant.
   8. Dēlentur, dēlent, parābāmur, parābāmus.

II. 1. We prepare, we are prepared, *I shall be called, I shall call,
   you were carrying, you were being carried*. 2. I see, I am seen, it
   was being announced, *he was announcing, they will order, they will
   be ordered*. 3. You will be killed, *you will kill, you move, you are
   moved, we are praising, we are being praised*. 4. I am called, I call,
you will have, you are cared for. 5. They are seen, they see, we were teaching, we were being taught, they will move, they will be moved.

168. Per'seus and Androm'eda

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Perseus filius erat Iovis,\(^1\) maxim\(^2\) deorum. Dē eō multās fabulās narrant poētae. Eī favent dei, eī magica arma et ālās dant. Eīs tēlis armātus et ālīs frētus ad multās terrās volābat et mōnstra saeva délēbat et miserīs īnfirmīsque auxilium dabat.

\(^1\) Iovis, the genitive of Iuppiter. \(^2\) Used substantively, the greatest. So below, l. 4, miserīs and īnfirmīs are used substantively.

LESSON XXVIII

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE
PASSIVE OF REGŌ AND AUDIŌ

169. Review the present, imperfect, and future indicative active of regō and audiō, and learn the passive of the same tenses (§§ 490, 491).

a. Observe that the tense signs of the imperfect and future are the same as in the active voice, and that the passive personal endings (§ 164) are added instead of the active ones.

b. Note the slight irregularity in the second person singular present of the third conjugation. There the final -e- of the stem is not changed to -i-, as it is in the active. We therefore have re’geris or re’gere, not re’giris, re’gire.

c. Inflect agō, dīcō, dūcō, mūniō, reperiō, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

170. EXERCISES

I. 1. Agēbat, agēbātur, mittēbat, mittēbātur, dūcēbat. 2. Agunt, aguntur, mittuntur, mittunt, mūniunt. 3. Mittor,mittar,mittam, dūcēre, dūcere. 4. Dicēmur, dicēmus, dicēmus, dicēmur, mūniēbāmini. 5. Dūcitur, dūcimini, reperiēmur, reperiēr, agitur. 6. Agēbāmus, agēbāmur, reperiēris, reperiēmini. 7. Mūniēmini, veniēbam, dūcēbar,

\(^1\) Pronounce in two syllables, Cēpheus.  
\(^2\) Ei, at him, dative with irātus.  
\(^3\) The present is often used, as in English, in speaking of a past action, in order to make the story more vivid and exciting.

II. 1. I was being driven, I was driving, we were being led, he says, it is said. 2. I shall send, I shall be sent, you will find, you will be found, they lead, they are led. 3. I am found, we are led, they are driven, you were being led (sing. and plur.). 4. We shall drive, we shall be driven, he leads, he is being led, they will come, they will be fortified. 5. They were ruling, they were being ruled, you will send, you will be sent, you are sent, (sing. and plur.). 6. He was being led, he will come, you are said (sing. and plur.).

171. Perseus and Andromeda (Continued)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.


Lesson XXIX

Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of -ō Verbs · Present Passive Infinitive and Imperative

172. Review the active voice of capīō, present, imperfect, and future, and learn the passive of the same tenses (§ 492).

a. The present forms capiōr and capiuntur are like audiōr, audiuntur, and the rest of the tense is like regōr.

b. In like manner inflect the passive of iaciō and rapiō.

173. The Infinitive. The infinitive mood gives the general meaning of the verb without person or number; as, amāre, to love. Infinitive means unlimited. The forms of the other moods, being limited by person and number, are called the fīniē, or limited, verb forms.
174. The forms of the Present Infinitive, active and passive, are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amā-</td>
<td>amā́re, to love</td>
<td>amā́ri, to be loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>monē-</td>
<td>monḗre, to advise</td>
<td>monḗri, to be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>rege-</td>
<td>régere, to rule</td>
<td>régí, to be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cape-</td>
<td>cá́pere, to take</td>
<td>cápí, to be taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>audī-</td>
<td>audī́re; to hear</td>
<td>audī́ri, to be heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that to form the present active infinitive we add -re to the present stem.

   a. The present infinitive of sum is esse. There is no passive.

2. Observe that the present passive infinitive is formed from the active by changing final -e to -i, except in the third conjugation, which changes final -ere to -i.

3. Give the active and passive present infinitives of doceō, sedeō, volō, cūrō, mittō, dūcō, mūniō, reperiō, iaciō, rapiō.

175. The forms of the Present Imperative, active and passive, are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CONJ.</td>
<td>SING.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>a’mā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>mo’nē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>re’ge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ca’pe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>audī́e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that the second person singular of the present passive imperative is like the present active infinitive, and that both singular and plural are like the second person singular and plural, respectively, of the present passive indicative.

2. Give the present imperative, both active and passive, of the verbs in §174. 3.

---

1 For the sake of comparison the active is repeated from §161.

2 That is, using the personal ending -re. A form like amāre may be either indicative, infinitive, or imperative.
176. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.


II. 1. Fly thou, to be cared for, be ye sent, lead thou. 2. To lead, to be led, be ye seized, fortify thou. 3. To be hurled, to fly, send thou, to be found. 4. To be sent, be ye led, to hurl, to be taken. 5. Find thou, hear ye, be ye ruled, to be fortified.

**LESSON XXX**

**SYNOPSIS IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS • THE ABLATIVE DENOTING FROM**

177. You should learn to give rapidly synopses of the verbs you have had, as follows:¹

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation I</th>
<th>Conjugation II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACTIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>PASSIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>a’mō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>amā’bam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amā’bō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Synopses should be given not only in the first person, but in other persons as well, particularly in the third singular and plural.
1. Give the synopsis of rapiō, muniō, reperiō, docēo, videō, dicō, agō, laudō, portō, and vary the person and number.

178. We learned in § 50 that one of the three relations covered by the ablative case is expressed in English by the preposition *from*. This is sometimes called the *separative ablative*, and it has a number of special uses. You have already grown familiar with the first mentioned below.
179. **Rule.** Ablative of the Place From. *The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions à or ab, dé, ē or ex.*

Agricolae ex agris veniunt, *the farmers come from the fields*

a. à or ab denotes *from near* a place; ē or ex, *out from* it; and dé, *down from* it. This may be represented graphically as follows:

![Diagram](image)

180. **Rule.** Ablative of Separation. *Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning.*

a. If the separation is *actual* and *literal* of one material thing from another, the preposition à or ab, ē or ex, or dé is generally used. If no actual motion takes place of one thing from another, no preposition is necessary.

(a) Perseus terram à mōnstrīs liberat

*Perseus frees the land from monsters* (literal separation — actual motion is expressed)

(b) Perseus terram tristitiā liberat

*Perseus frees the land from sorrow* (figurative separation — no actual motion is expressed)

181. **Rule.** Ablative of the Personal Agent. *The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition à or ab.*

a. In this construction the English translation of à, ab is *by* rather than *from*. This ablative is regularly used with passive verbs to indicate the *person by whom* the act was performed.

Mōnstrum à Perseō necātur, *the monster is being slain by (lit. from) Perseus*
b. Note that the active form of the above sentence would be *Perseus mōnstrum necat*, *Perseus is slaying the monster*. In the passive the object of the active verb becomes the subject, and the subject of the active verb becomes the ablative of the personal agent, with ā or ab.

c. Distinguish carefully between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent. Both are often translated into English by the preposition by. (Cf. § 100. b.) *Means is a thing; the agent or actor is a person.* The ablative of means has no preposition. The ablative of the personal agent has ā or ab. Compare

Fera sagittā necātur, *the wild beast is killed by an arrow*
Fera ā Diānā necātur, *the wild beast is killed by Diana*

Sagittā, in the first sentence, is the ablative of means; ā Diānā, in the second, is the ablative of the personal agent.

182. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.


II. 1. The weary sailors were approaching a place dear to the goddess Diana. 2. They were without food and without wine. 3. Then Galba and seven other men are sent to the ancient island by Sextus. 4. Already they are not far away from the land, and they see armed men on a high place. 5. They are kept from the land by the men with spears and arrows. 6. The men kept hurling their weapons down from the high place with great eagerness.

1 inimīcis, here used as a noun. See vocabulary.
LESSON XXXI

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF SUM

183. Principal Parts. There are certain parts of the verb that are of so much consequence in tense formation that we call them the principal parts.

In English the principal parts are the present, the past, and the past participle; as, go, went, gone; see, saw, seen, etc.

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the first person singular of the present indicative, the present infinitive, the first person singular of the perfect indicative, and the perfect passive participle.

184. Conjugation Stems. From the principal parts we get three conjugation stems, from which are formed the entire conjugation. We have already learned about the present stem, which is found from the present infinitive (cf. § 126. a). The other two stems are the perfect stem and the participial stem.

185. The Perfect Stem. The perfect stem of the verb is formed in various ways, but may always be found by dropping -ī from the first person singular of the perfect, the third of the principal parts. From the perfect stem are formed the following tenses:

The Perfect Active Indicative
The Pluperfect Active Indicative (English Past Perfect)
The Future Perfect Active Indicative

All these tenses express completed action in present, past, or future time respectively.

186. The Endings of the Perfect. The perfect active indicative is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. These endings are different from those found in any other tense, and are as follows:

Sing. \[1. -i, \text{i} \]
\[2. -isti, \text{you} \]
\[3. -it, \text{he, she, it} \]

Plur. \[1. -imus, \text{we} \]
\[2. -istis, \text{you} \]
\[3. -erunt or -ère, \text{they} \]
187. Inflection of sum in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuī, I have been, I was</td>
<td>fuimus, we have been, we were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuis'tī, you have been, you were</td>
<td>fuis'tis, you have been, you were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuīt, he has been, he was</td>
<td>fuē'run or fuē're, they have been, they were</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect (Tense Sign -erā-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Single</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fu'eram, I had been</td>
<td>fuerā'mus, we had been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu'erās, you had been</td>
<td>fuerā'tis, you had been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu'erat, he had been</td>
<td>fuerā'tis, they had been</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future Perfect (Tense Sign -eri-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Single</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fu'erō, I shall have been</td>
<td>fue'rimus, we shall have been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu'eris, you will have been</td>
<td>fue'ritis, you will have been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu'erit, he will have been</td>
<td>fue'rint, they will have been</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect.
2. Observe that the pluperfect may be formed by adding eram, the imperfect of sum, to the perfect stem. The tense sign is -erā-.
3. Observe that the future perfect may be formed by adding erō, the future of sum, to the perfect stem. But the third person plural ends in -erint, not in -erunt. The tense sign is -eri-.
4. All active perfects, pluperfects, and future perfects are formed on the perfect stem and inflected in the same way.

188. Dialogue

The Boys Titus, Marcus, and Quintus

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

M. Ubi fuis'tis, Tīte et Quīnte?
T. Ego in meō lūdō fuī et Quīntus in suō lūdō fuit. Bonī puerī fuimus. Fuitne Sextus in vicō hodiē?
M. Fuit. Nūper per agrōs proximōs fluviō properābat. Ibi is et Cornēlius habent nāvigium.
THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

T. Navigium dicas? Alii narrā eam fābulam!
M. Vērō (Yes, truly), pulchrum et novum navigium!
Q. Cuīus pecūniā² Sextus et Cornēlius id navigium parant? Quīs īs pecūniam dat?
M. Amīci Comēli multum habent aurum et puer pecūniā nōn egent.
T. Quō puerī navigābunt? Navigābunt-ne longē ā terrā?
M. Dubia sunt cōnsilia eōrum. Sed hōdiē, crēdō, si ventus erit idōneus, ad maximam insulam navigābunt. Iam anteā ībi fuērunt. Tum autem ventus erat perfidus et puerī magnō in periculō erant.
Q. Aqua ventō commōta est inimica nautis semper, et sāepe perfidus ventus navigia rāpit, agit, dēleque. Īi puerī, si nōn fuerint maximē attenti, irātā aquā et validō ventō superābuntur et īta interficientur.

189. EXERCISE

1. Where had the boys been before? They had been in school.
2. Where had Sextus been? He had been in a field next to the river.
3. Who has been with Sextus to-day? Cornelius has been with him.
4. Who says so? Marcus. 5. If the wind has been suitable, the boys have been in the boat. 6. Soon we shall sail with the boys. 7. There will be no danger, if we are (shall have been) careful.⁴

LESSON XXXII

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

190. Meanings of the Perfect. The perfect tense has two distinct meanings. The first of these is equivalent to the English present perfect, or perfect with have, and denotes that the action of the verb is complete at the time of speaking; as, I have finished my work. As this denotes completed action at a definite time, it is called the perfect definite.

¹ Dative case. (Cf. § 109.) ² Ablative of means. ³ The expletive there is not expressed, but the verb will precede the subject, as in English. ⁴ This predicate adjective must be nominative plural to agree with ēs.
The perfect is also used to denote an action that happened sometime in the past; as, I finished my work. As no definite time is specified, this is called the perfect indefinite. It corresponds to the ordinary use of the English past tense.

a. Note carefully the difference between the following tenses:

- \( I \) \begin{cases} \text{was finishing} \\ \text{used to finish} \end{cases} \text{my work (imperfect, § 134)}
- \( I \) finished my work (perfect indefinite)
- \( I \) have finished my work (perfect definite)

When telling a story the Latin uses the perfect indefinite to mark the different forward steps of the narrative, and the imperfect to describe situations and circumstances that attend these steps. If the following sentences were Latin, what tenses would be used?

"Last week I went to Boston. I was trying to find an old friend of mine, but he was out of the city. Yesterday I returned home."

191. Inflection of the Perfect. We learned in § 186 that any perfect is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. The inflection in the four regular conjugations is then as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Inflected Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conj. I</td>
<td>amāvī</td>
<td>I have loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I loved or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>did love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conj. II</td>
<td>monuī</td>
<td>I have advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I advised or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>did advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conj. III</td>
<td>rēxī</td>
<td>I have ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I ruled or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>did rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conj. IV</td>
<td>cēpī</td>
<td>I have taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I took or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>did take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audīvī</td>
<td>I have heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I heard or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>did hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Perfect Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Inflected Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāv-</td>
<td>I have loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I loved or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>did love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monu-</td>
<td>I have advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I advised or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>did advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx-</td>
<td>I have ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I ruled or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>did rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēp-</td>
<td>I have taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I took or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>did take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīv-</td>
<td>I have heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I heard or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>did hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

1. amāvī
2. amāvis’tī
3. amāvít
4. amāvē’run
to or amāvē’re

#### Plural

1. amāvīmus
2. amāvis’tis
3. amāvē’runs
or amāvē’re

### Perfect Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Inflected Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvimus</td>
<td>I have loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I loved or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>did love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monu’imus</td>
<td>I have advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I advised or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>did advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēximus</td>
<td>I have ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I ruled or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>did rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpimus</td>
<td>I have taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I took or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>did take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvimus</td>
<td>I have heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I heard or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>did hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. The first person of the perfect is always given as the third of the principal parts. From this we get the perfect stem. This shows the absolute necessity of learning the principal parts thoroughly.

2. Nearly all perfects of the first conjugation are formed by adding -vî to the present stem. Like amâvî inflect parâvî, vocâvî, curâvî, laudâvî.

3. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect. Drill on it.

192. Learn the principal parts and inflect the perfects:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dô</td>
<td>dâre</td>
<td>dedî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dêleô</td>
<td>dêlêre</td>
<td>dêlêvî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habêô</td>
<td>habêre</td>
<td>habuî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moveô</td>
<td>movêre</td>
<td>mûvî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pâreô</td>
<td>pârêre</td>
<td>pûruî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibêô</td>
<td>prohibêre</td>
<td>prohibûî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videô</td>
<td>vidêre</td>
<td>vidî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dîcô</td>
<td>dîcere</td>
<td>dîxî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discêdô</td>
<td>discêdere</td>
<td>discessî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dîcô</td>
<td>dûcere</td>
<td>dûxî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciô</td>
<td>facere</td>
<td>fêcî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mîtô</td>
<td>mittere</td>
<td>mûsî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mûniô</td>
<td>mûnîre</td>
<td>mûnîvî</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veniô</td>
<td>venire</td>
<td>vêni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

give
destroy
have
move
obey
restrain, keep from
see
say
depart
lead
make, do
send
fortify
come

193. Perseus and Andromeda (Continued)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.

Cêpheus, adversâ fortûnâ maximê commôtus, discessit et multis cum lacrimis populô Aethiopiac verba orâculî nàrravît. Fâta Andromedae, puellae pulchrae, â tôtô populô dépôrâbuntur, tamen nûllum erat auxilium. Deinde Cêpheus cum plênô tristitiae animô càram suam filiam ex oppidi portà ad aquam dûxit et brachia eius ad saxa dûra revînxit. Tum amici puellae miserae longê discessérunt et diû mônstrum saevum exspectâvèrent.

Tum forte Perseus, âlis frêtus, super Aethiopiam volâbat. Vidit populum, Andromedam, lacrimas, et, magnopere attonitus, ad terram dêsccendit. Tum Cêpheus ei tôtâs cûrâs nàrravît et ita dixit: "Pârêbô verbis orâculî, et prô patriâ filiam meam dabô; sed si id mônstrum interficiës et Andromedam servâbis, tibi (to you) eam dabô."


PLUPERFECT, FUTURE PERFECT, INDICATIVE

**LESSON XXXIII**

**PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE**

**PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE**

194.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amō</td>
<td>moneō</td>
<td>regō</td>
<td>capiō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect Stems: amāv- monu- rēx- cēp-

**PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE Active**

Tense Sign: -erā-

**SINGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had loved</th>
<th>I had advised</th>
<th>I had ruled</th>
<th>I had taken</th>
<th>I had heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. amā’veram</td>
<td>monu’eram</td>
<td>rē’xeram</td>
<td>cē’peram</td>
<td>audi’veram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā’verās</td>
<td>monu’erās</td>
<td>rē’xerās</td>
<td>cē’perās</td>
<td>audi’verās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā’verat</td>
<td>monu’erat</td>
<td>rē’xerat</td>
<td>cē’perat</td>
<td>audi’verat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have loved</th>
<th>I shall have advised</th>
<th>I shall have ruled</th>
<th>I shall have taken</th>
<th>I shall have heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. amā’verā’mus</td>
<td>monu’erā’mus</td>
<td>rē’xerā’mus</td>
<td>cē’perā’mus</td>
<td>audi’verā’mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā’verā’tis</td>
<td>monu’erā’tis</td>
<td>rē’xerā’tis</td>
<td>cē’perā’tis</td>
<td>audi’verā’tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā’verant</td>
<td>monu’erant</td>
<td>rē’xerant</td>
<td>cē’perant</td>
<td>audi’verant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE Active**

Tense Sign: -eri-

**SINGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have loved</th>
<th>I shall have advised</th>
<th>I shall have ruled</th>
<th>I shall have taken</th>
<th>I shall have heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. amā’verō</td>
<td>monu’erō</td>
<td>rē’xerō</td>
<td>cē’perō</td>
<td>audi’verō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amā’veris</td>
<td>monu’eris</td>
<td>rē’xeris</td>
<td>cē’peris</td>
<td>audi’veris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā’verit</td>
<td>monu’erit</td>
<td>rē’xerit</td>
<td>cē’perit</td>
<td>audi’verit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have loved</th>
<th>I shall have advised</th>
<th>I shall have ruled</th>
<th>I shall have taken</th>
<th>I shall have heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. amāve’rimus</td>
<td>monue’rimus</td>
<td>rēxe’rimus</td>
<td>cēpe’rimus</td>
<td>audi’ve’rimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. amāve’ritis</td>
<td>monue’ritis</td>
<td>rēxe’ritis</td>
<td>cēpe’ritis</td>
<td>audi’ve’ritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amā’verint</td>
<td>monu’erint</td>
<td>rē’xerint</td>
<td>cē’perint</td>
<td>audi’verint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that these are all inflected alike and the rules for formation given in § 187. 2–4 hold good here.

2. In like manner inflect the pluperfect and future perfect indicative active of dō, portō, dēleō, moveō, habeō, dīcō, discēdō, faciō, veniō, mūniō.
195. The Perfect Active Infinitive. The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding -isse to the perfect stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj.</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amāv-</td>
<td>amāvis'se, <em>to have loved</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>monu-</td>
<td>monuis'se, <em>to have advised</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>(a) rēx-</td>
<td>rēxis'se, <em>to have ruled</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) cēp-</td>
<td>cēpis'se, <em>to have taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>audīv-</td>
<td>audivis'se, <em>to have heard</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>fu-</td>
<td>fuis'se, <em>to have been</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. In like manner give the perfect infinitive active of dō, portō, dēleō, moveō, habeō, dīcō, discēdō, faciō, veniō, mūniō.

196. EXERCISES

3. Miscistis, pāruērunt, discesserāmus. 4. Mūnivit, dederam, miserō.
7. Vēnerās, fēcisse, dederātis, portāvieris.
10. Amīcī ab Andromedā discesserint. 11. Mōnstrum saevum domicilia multa dēlēverat.

II. 1. They have obeyed, we have destroyed, I shall have had.
2. We shall have sent, I had come, they have fortified. 3. I had departed, he has obeyed, you have sent *(sing. and plur.)*.
4. To have destroyed, to have seen, he will have given, they have carried.
5. He had destroyed, he has moved, you have had *(sing. and plur.)*.
6. I have given, you had moved *(sing. and plur.)*, we had said.
7. You will have made *(sing. and plur.)*, they will have led, to have given.

8. Who had seen the monster? Andromeda had seen it. 9. Why had the men departed from the towns? They had departed because the monster had come.
10. Did Cepheus obey the oracle? He did.

1 *ex*. What *would* *ab* *mean*? 2 *Did* . . . *obey*, perfect tense. 3 *What* *case*?
LESSON XXXIV

REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE

197. A review of the tenses of the indicative active shows the following formation:

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

- **Present** = First of the principal parts
- **Imperfect** = Present stem + -ba-m
- **Future** = Present stem + {-bō, Conj. I and II
  -a-m, Conj. III and IV
- **Perfect** = Third of the principal parts
- **Pluperfect** = Perfect stem + -era-m
- **Future Perfect** = Perfect stem + -erō

198. The synopsis of the active voice of amō, as far as we have learned the conjugation, is as follows:

**Principal Parts amō, amāre, amāvī**

Pres. Stem amā-

- **Pres.** amā-
- **Indic.** Imperf. amābam
- **Fut.** amābō
- **Pres. Imv.** amā
- **Pres. Infin.** amāre

Perf. Stem amāv-

- **Perf.** amāvī
- **Indic.** Pluperf. amāveram
- **Fut. perf.** amāverō
- **Perf. Infin.** amāvisse

1. Learn to write in the same form and to give rapidly the principal parts and synopsis of parō, dō, laudō, dēleō, habeō, moveō, pāreō, videō, dīcō, discēdō, dūcō, mittō, capiō, mūniō, veniō.¹

199. Learn the following principal parts:²

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>fuī</td>
<td>be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab'sum</td>
<td>abes'se</td>
<td>ă'fuī</td>
<td>be away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dō</td>
<td>dare</td>
<td>dedī</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Learn to give synopses rapidly, and not only in the first person singular but in any person of either number. ² These are all verbs that you have had before, and the perfect is the only new form to be learned.
200.  

Perseus and Andromeda (Concluded)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290. Read the whole story.

Perseus semper proelio studebat¹ et respondit,¹ "Verba tua sunt maximē grāta," et laetus arma sua māgica parāvit.¹ Subītō mōnstrum vidētur; celeriter per aquam properat et Andromedae adpropinquat. Eius amīci longē absunt et misera puella est sōla. Perseus autem sine morā super aquam volāvit.¹ Subītō descendit¹ et dūrō gladiō 5 saevum mōnstrum graviter vulnerāvit.¹ Diū pugnātur;² diū proelium est dubium. Dēnique autem Perseus mōnstrum interfēcit¹ et victoriam reportāvit.¹ Tum ad saxum vēnit¹ et Andromedam liberāvit¹ et cam ad Cēpheum dūxit.¹ 'Is, nāper miser, nunc laetus, ita dixit 1: "Tuō auxiliō, mi amīce, cāra filia mea est libera; tua est Andromeda."  Diū Perseus iō cum Andromedā ibi habitābat¹ et magnopere a tōtō populō amābātur.¹

¹ See if you can explain the use of the perfects and imperfects in this passage. ² The verb pugnātur means, literally, it is fought; translate freely, the battle is fought, or the contest rages. The verb pugnō in Latin is intransitive, and so does not have a personal subject in the passive. A verb with an indeterminate subject, designated in English by it, is called impersonal.
LESSON XXXV

THE PASSIVE PERFECTS OF THE INDICATIVE. THE PERFECT PASSIVE, AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

201. The fourth and last of the principal parts (§ 183) is the perfect passive participle. From it we get the participial stem on which are formed the future active infinitive and all the passive perfects.

1. Learn the following principal parts, which are for the first time given in full:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>amō</td>
<td>amā'-re</td>
<td>amā’v-i</td>
<td>amā’t-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>mo’neō</td>
<td>monē'-re</td>
<td>mo’nu-i</td>
<td>mo’nit-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>regō</td>
<td>re’ge-re</td>
<td>rēx-i</td>
<td>rēct-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>ca’piō</td>
<td>ca’pe-re</td>
<td>cēp-i</td>
<td>capt-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>au’diō</td>
<td>audī'-re</td>
<td>audī’v-i</td>
<td>audī’t-us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is the model for all regular verbs of the first conjugation.

2. The base of the participial stem is found by dropping -us from the perfect passive participle.

202. In English the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the indicative passive are made up of forms of the auxiliary verb to be and the past participle; as, I have been loved, I had been loved, I shall have been loved.

Very similarly, in Latin, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive tenses use respectively the present, imperfect, and future of sum as an auxiliary verb with the perfect passive participle, as

- Perfect passive, amā’tus sum, I have been or was loved
- Pluperfect passive, amā’tus eram, I had been loved
- Future perfect passive, amā’tus erō, I shall have been loved

1. In the same way give the synopsis of the corresponding tenses of moneō, regō, capiō, and audīō, and give the English meanings.

203. Nature of the Participle. A participle is partly verb and partly adjective. As a verb it possesses tense and voice. As an adjective it
THE FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

is declined and agrees with the word it modifies in gender, number, and case.

204. The perfect passive participle is declined like bonus, bona, bonum, and in the compound tenses (§ 202) it agrees as a predicate adjective with the subject of the verb.

**Examples in Singular**

- Vir laudātus est, the man was praised, or has been praised
- Puella laudāta est, the girl was praised, or has been praised
- Consilium laudātum est, the plan was praised, or has been praised

**Examples in Plural**

- Viri laudāti sunt, the men were praised, or have been praised
- Puellae laudātae sunt, the girls were praised, or have been praised
- Consilia laudāta sunt, the plans were praised, or have been praised

1. Inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of amō, moneō, regō, capiō, and audiō (§§ 488–492).

205. The perfect passive infinitive is formed by adding esse, the present infinitive of sum, to the perfect passive participle; as, amāt-us (-a, -um) esse, to have been loved; mo'nit-us (-a, -um) esse, to have been advised.

1. Form the perfect passive infinitive of regō, capiō, audiō, and give the English meanings.

206. The future active infinitive is formed by adding esse, the present infinitive of sum, to the future active participle. This participle is made by adding -ārūs, -a, -um to the base of the participial stem. Thus the future active infinitive of amō is amāt-ūrūs (-a, -um) esse, to be about to love.

a. Note that in forming the three tenses of the active infinitive we use all three conjugation stems:

   - Present, amāre (present stem), to love
   - Perfect, amāvisse (perfect stem), to have loved
   - Future, amātūrus esse (participial stem), to be about to love

1. Give the three tenses of the active infinitive of laudō, moneō, regō, capiō, audiō, with the English meanings.
EXERCISES

I. 1. Fābula Andromedae nārītā est. 2. Multae fābulae ā magis-
trō nārītāe sunt. 3. Ager ab agricōlā validō arātus erat. 4. Agrī
ab agricōlis validīs arātī erant. 5. Aurum ā servō perfidī ad domi-
cīlium suum portātum erit. 6. Nostra arma ā lēgātō laudātā sunt.
Quis vestra arma laudāvit? 7. Ab ancillā tuā ad cēnam vocātae
sumus. 8. Andromeda mōnstrō nōn data est, quia mōnstrum ā
Perseō necātum erat.

II. 1. The provinces were laid waste, the field had been laid waste,
the towns will have been laid waste. 2. The oracles were heard, the
oracle was heard, the oracles had been heard. 3. The oracle will have
been heard, the province had been captured, the boats have been
captured. 4. The fields were laid waste, the man was advised, the
girls will have been advised. 5. The towns had been ruled, we shall
have been captured, you will have been heard.

LESSON XXXVI

REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS · PREPOSITIONS
YES-OR-NO QUESTIONS

208. The following list shows the principal parts of all the verbs you
have had excepting those used in the paradigms. The parts you have had
before are given for review, and the perfect participle is the only new
form for you to learn. Sometimes one or more of the principal parts are
lacking, which means that the verb has no forms based on that stem. A
few verbs lack the perfect passive participle but have the future active
participle in -ūrus, which appears in the principal parts instead.

Irregular Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sum</th>
<th>esse</th>
<th>fuī</th>
<th>futūrus</th>
<th>be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>absūm</td>
<td>abesse</td>
<td>āfuī</td>
<td>āfutūrus</td>
<td>be away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dō</td>
<td>dare</td>
<td>dēdī</td>
<td>datus</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 dō is best classed with the irregular verbs because of the short a in the
present and participial stems.
REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS

Conjugation I

portō  portāre  portāvī  portātus  carry

So for all verbs of this conjugation thus far used.

Conjugation II

contineō  continēre  continuē  contentus  hold in, keep
dēleō  dēlère  dēlevī  dēletus  destroy
doceō  docère  docuī  doctus  teach
egeō  egère  eguī  ——  lack
faveō  favère  favī  fautūrus  favor
iubeō  iubère  iussī  iussus  order
moveō  movère  movī  motus  move
noceō  nocère  nocuī  nocitūrus  injure
pāreō  pārēre  pāruī  ——  obey
persuādeō  persuādēre  persuāsi  persuāsus  persuade [from
prohibeō  prohibēre  prohibuī  prohibitus  restrain, keep
respondeō  respondēre  respondī  responsus  reply
sedeō  sedère  sēdī  -sessus  sit
studēo  studere  studuī  ——  be eager
videō  videre  vīdī  visus  see

Conjugation III

agō  agere  ĕgī  āctus  drive
crēdō  crēdere  crēdīdī  crēditus  believe
dīcō  dicere  dīxi  dictus  say
discēdō  discēdere  discēssī  discessus  depart
dūcō  dūcere  dūxi  ductus  lead
faciō  facere  fēcī  factus  make
fugiō  fugere  fūgī  fugitūrus  flee
iacō  iacere  iēcī  iactus  hurl
interficīō  interficere  interfēcī  interfectus  kill
mittō  mittere  mīsī  missus  send
rapiō  rapere  rapuī  raptus  seize
resistō  resistere  restitī  ——  resist

Conjugation IV

müniō  müniere  müniēvī  müniētus  fortify
reperiō  reperiere  rep’perī  repertus  find
veniō  venire  venī  ventus  come

1 faciō has an irregular passive which will be presented later.
209. Prepositions. 1. We learned in §§ 52, 53 that only the accusative and the ablative are used with prepositions, and that prepositions expressing ablative relations govern the ablative case. Those we have had are here summarized. The table following should be learned.

ä or ab, from, by
cum, with
dē, down from, concerning
ē or ex, out from, out of
prō, before, in front of; for, in behalf of
sine, without

2. Prepositions not expressing ablative relations must govern the accusative (§ 52). Of these we have had the following:

ad, to; apud, among; per, through

There are many others which you will meet as we proceed.

3. The preposition in when meaning in or on governs the ablative; when meaning to, into, against (relations foreign to the ablative) in governs the accusative.

210. Yes-or-No Questions. Questions not introduced by some interrogative word like who, why, when, etc., but expecting the answer yes or no, may take one of three forms:

1. Is he coming? (Asking for information. Implying nothing as to the answer expected.)
2. Is he not coming? (Expecting the answer yes.)
3. He is n’t coming, is he? (Expecting the answer no.)

These three forms are rendered in Latin as follows:

1. Venitne? is he coming?
2. Nonne venit? is he not coming?
3. Num venit? he is n’t coming, is he?

a. -ne, the question sign, is usually added to the verb, which then stands first.

b. We learned in § 56, 6 that yes-or-no questions are usually answered by repeating the verb, with or without a negative. Instead of this, ita, vero, certe, etc. (so, truly, certainly, etc.) may be used for yes, and non, minimē, etc. for no if the denial is emphatic, as, by no means, not at all.
CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

211. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.


II. 1. Where was Julia standing? She was standing where you had ordered. 2. Was Julia wearing any ornaments? She had many ornamentals of gold. 3. Did she not attempt flight when she saw the danger? She did. 4. Who captured her? Gālba captured her without delay and held her by the left arm. 5. She didn’t have the lady’s gold, did she? No, the gold had been taken by a faithless maid and has been brought back.

Fourth Review, Lessons XXVII-XXXVI, §§ 513-516

LESSON XXXVII

CONJUGATION OF POSSUM - THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

212. Learn the principal parts of possum, I am able, I can, and its inflection in the indicative and infinitive. (Cf. § 495.)

a. Possum, I can, is a compound of potis, able, and sum, I am.

213. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative. The infinitive (cf. § 173) is a verbal noun. Used as a noun, it has the constructions of a noun. As a verb it can govern a case and be modified by an adverb. The uses of the infinitive are much the same in Latin as in English.
94  THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

1. In English certain verbs of *wishing*, *commanding*, *forbidding*, and the like are used with an object clause consisting of a substantive in the objective case and an infinitive, as, *he commanded the men to flee*. Such object clauses are called infinitive clauses, and the substantive is said to be the subject of the infinitive.

 Similarly in Latin, some verbs of *wishing*, *commanding*, *forbidding*, and the like are used with an object clause consisting of an infinitive with a subject in the accusative case, as, *Is virōs fugere iussit, he commanded the men to flee.*

214. Rule. Subject of the Infinitive. *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

215. The Complementary Infinitive. In English a verb is often followed by an infinitive to complete its meaning, as, *the Romans are able to conquer the Gauls.* This is called the complementary infinitive, as the predicate is not *complete* without the added infinitive.

 Similarly in Latin, *verbs of incomplete predication* are completed by the infinitive. Among such verbs are *possīm, I am able, I can; properō, mātūrō, I hasten; temptō, I attempt,* as

*Rōmānī Gallōs superāre possunt, the Romans are able to*  
(or can) conquer the Gauls  
Bellum gerere mātūrant, they hasten to wage war

  a. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb.

Malī puerī esse bonī nōn possunt, *bad boys are not able*  
to (or cannot) be good

Observe that bonī agrees with puerī.

216. The Infinitive used as a Noun. In English the infinitive is often used as a pure noun, as the subject of a sentence, or as a predicate nominative. For example, *To conquer (= conquering) is pleasing; To see (= seeing) is to believe (= believing).* The same use of the infinitive is found in Latin, especially with *est,* as

Superāre est grātum, *to conquer is pleasing*  
Vidēre est crēdere, *to see is to believe*
EXERCISES

a. In the construction above, the infinitive often has a subject, which must then be in the accusative case, as

Galbam superāre inimicōs est grātum multīs, for Galba
to conquer his enemies is pleasing to many

b. An infinitive used as a noun is neuter singular. Thus, in the sentence superāre est grātum, the predicate adjective grātum is in the neuter nominative singular to agree with superāre the subject.

217. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1. Magister lūdi liberōs cum diligentiā laborāre iussit. 2. Egēre cibō et vinō est virīs molestum. 3. Virī armāti vetuērunt Gallōs castra 

   ibi pōnere. 4. Estne lēgātus in castellō an in mūrō? Is est prō portā. 

5. Ubi nostrī fugere incēpērunt, lēgātus ab vestrīs captus est. 


7. Allī pugnāre temptābant, allī portās petēbant. 8. Fēminae prō 

   domiciliīs sedēbant neque resistere validīs Gallīs poterant. 9. Bellum 

   est saevum, nec īnfirmīs nec miserīs favet. 10. Sed virī arma postu-

   lābant et studēbant Gallōs dē mūris agere. 11. Id castellum ab Gallīs 

   occupārī Rōmānīs nōn grātum erit. 12. Gallī ubi ā Rōmānīs victī 

   sunt, esse liberi cessāvērunt. 13. Diū sine aquā vivere nōn potēstis.

   II. 1. The girl began daily to carry water from the river to the 

   gates. 2. The Gauls had pitched their camp in a place suitable for 

   a battle. 3. For a long time they tried in vain to seize the redoubt. 

4. Neither did they cease to hurl weapons against the walls. 5. But 

   they were not able to (could not) take the town.

218. THE FAITHLESS TARPE'IA

Sabīnī ĉūmin cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant et multās victōriās re-

portāverant. Iam agrōs proximōs mūris vāstābant, iam oppidō adpro-

pinquābant. Rōmānī autem in Capitōlium fūgerant et longē periculō

1 Supply men. nostrī, vestrī, and suī are often used as nouns in this way.

2 Not children. The Romans used liberi either as an adjective, meaning free, 
or as a noun, meaning the free, thereby signifying their free-born children. 
The word was never applied to children of slaves. 3 in with the accusative.
aberant. Mūris validīs et saxīs altīs crēdébant. Frūstrā Sabinī tēla iaciēbant, frūstrā portās durās petēbant; castellum occupāre nōn poterant. Deinde novum cōnsilium cēpérunt.\(^1\)

Tarpēia erat puella Rōmāna pulchra et superba. Coūdiē aquam 5 cōpiās Rōmānīs in Capitōlium portābat. Eī\(^2\) nōn nocēbant Sabinī,

quod ea sine armīs erat neque Sabinī bellum cum fēminīs liberisque gerēbant. Tarpēia autēm maximē amābat ōrnāmenta auri. Coūdiē Sabinōrum ōrnāmenta vidēbat et mox ea désiderāre incipiēbat. Eī unus ex\(^3\) Sabinīs dīxit, "Dūc cōpiās Sabinās intrā portās, Tarpēia, 10 et maximīa erunt prae mia tua."

\(^1\) cōnsilium capere, to make a plan. Why is the perfect tense used here and the imperfect in the preceding sentences? Explain the use of tenses in the next paragraph. \(^2\) Dative with nocēbant. (Cf. § 154.) \(^3\) ex, out of, i.e. from the number of; best translated of.
Lesson XXXVIII

The Relative Pronoun and the Interrogative Pronoun

219. Sentences are simple, compound, or complex.

a. A simple sentence is a sentence containing but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: The Romans approached the town.

b. A compound sentence is a sentence containing two or more independent statements: The Romans approached the town and the enemy fled.

Note. An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend upon another statement.

c. A complex sentence is a sentence containing one independent statement and one or more dependent statements: When the Romans approached the town the enemy fled.

Note. A dependent or subordinate statement is one that depends on or qualifies another statement; thus the enemy fled is independent, and when the Romans approached the town is dependent or subordinate.

d. The separate statements in a compound or complex sentence are called clauses. In a complex sentence the independent statement is called the main clause and the dependent statement the subordinate clause.

220. Examine the complex sentence

The Romans killed the men who were taken

Here are two clauses:

a. The main clause, The Romans killed the men

b. The subordinate clause, who were taken

The word who is a pronoun, for it takes the place of the noun men. It also connects the subordinate clause who were taken with the noun men. Hence the clause is an adjective clause. A pronoun that connects an adjective clause with a substantive is called a relative pronoun, and the substantive for which the relative pronoun stands is called its antecedent. The relative pronouns in English are who, whose, whom, which, what, that.
221. The relative pronoun in Latin is *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, and it is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em></td>
<td><em>quī</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em></td>
<td><em>cuius</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em></td>
<td><em>cui</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em></td>
<td><em>quem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em></td>
<td><em>quō</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Review the declension of *is*, § 114, and note the similarity in the endings. The forms *quī*, *quae*, and *quibus* are the only forms showing new endings.

**NOTE.** The genitive *cuius* and the dative *cui* are pronounced *cṑi*yṑs* (two syllables) and *cṑi* (one syllable).

222. The Relative Pronoun is translated as follows: 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC. AND FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em> <em>who, that</em></td>
<td><em>which, what, that</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em> <em>of whom, whose</em></td>
<td><em>of which, of what, whose</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em> <em>to or for whom</em></td>
<td><em>to or for which, to or for what</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em> <em>whom, that</em></td>
<td><em>which, what, that</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em> <em>from, etc., whom</em></td>
<td><em>from, etc., which or what</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* We see from the table above that *quī*, when it refers to a person, is translated by some form of *who* or by *that*; and that when it refers to anything else it is translated by *which*, *what*, or *that*.

223. Note the following sentences:

*The Romans killed the men who were taken*
*The Romans killed the woman who was taken*
*Rōmānī interfēcērunt virōs qui captī sunt*
*Rōmānī interfēcērunt fēminam quae capta est*

In the first sentence *who* (*quī*) refers to the antecedent *men* (*virōs*), and is *masculine plural*. In the second, *who* (*quae*) refers to *woman* (*fēminam*), and is *feminine singular*. From this we learn that the relative must agree

1 This table of meanings need not be memorized. It is inserted for reference when translating.
with its antecedent in gender and number. In neither of the sentences are the antecedents and relatives in the same case. Virōs and fēminam are accusatives, and quī and quae are nominatives, being the subjects of the subordinate clauses. Hence

224. Rule. Agreement of the Relative. A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause.

225. Interrogative Pronouns. An interrogative pronoun is a pronoun that asks a question. In English the interrogatives are who? which? what? In Latin they are quis? quid? (pronominal) and quī? quae? quod? (adjective).

226. Examine the sentences

a. Who is the man? Quis est vir?
b. What man is leading them? Quī vir eōs dūcit?

In a, who is an interrogative pronoun. In b, what is an interrogative adjective. Observe that in Latin quis, quid is the pronominal and quī, quae, quod is the adjective.

227. 1. The interrogative adjective quī, quae, quod is declined just like the relative pronoun. (See § 221.)

2. The interrogative pronoun quis, quid is declined like quī, quae, quod in the plural. In the singular it is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masc. and Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quis, who?</td>
<td>quid, what? which?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius, whose?</td>
<td>cuius, whose?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui, to or for whom?</td>
<td>cui, to or for what or which?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem, whom?</td>
<td>quid, what? which?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō, from, etc., whom?</td>
<td>quō, from, etc., which or what?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. Observe that the masculine and feminine are alike and that all the forms are like the corresponding forms of the relative, excepting quis and quid.

228. Exercises

1. Quis est aeger? Servus quem amō est aeger. 2. Cuius scūtum habēs? Scūtum habeō quod lēgātus ad castellum mīsit. 3. Cui lēgātus suum scūtum dabit? Filiō meō scūtum dabit. 4. Ubi Germānī

II. 1. What victory will you announce? 2. I will announce to the people the victory which the sailors have won. 3. The men who were pitching camp were eager for battle. 4. Nevertheless they were soon conquered by the troops which Sextus had sent. 5. They could not resist our forces, but fled from that place without delay.

229. The Faithless Tarpēia (Concluded) 2

Tarpēia, commōta ōrnāmentis Sabinōrum pulchris, diū resistere nōn potuit et respondit: "Date mihi 3 ōrnāmenta quae in sinistrīs braccīs gerītis, et celeriter cōpiās vestrās in Capitōliōm dūcam." Nec

1 cum is added to the ablative of relative, interrogative, and personal pronouns instead of being placed before them. 2 Explain the use of the tenses in this selection. 3 to me.
THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS 101

Sabinī recūsāvērunt, sed per dūrās magnāsque castellī portās pro-
perāvērunt quō¹ Tarpēia dúxit et mox intrā validōs et altōs mūrōs
stābant. Tum sine morā in² Tarpēiam scūta graviter iēcērunt; nam
scūta quocque in sinistros bracchiis gerēbant. Ita perfida puella Tar-
pēia interfecta est; ita Sabīnī Capitōlium occupāvērunt.

LESSON XXXIX

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS

230. Bases and Stems. In learning the first and second declen-
sions we saw that the different cases were formed by adding the case
terminations to the part of the word that did not change, which we
called the base. If to the base we add -ā in the first declension,
and -o in the second, we get what is called the stem. Thus porta has
the base port- and the stem portā-; servus has the base serv- and the
stem servo-.

These stem vowels, -ā- and -o-, play so important a part in the
formation of the case terminations that these declensions are named
from them respectively the Ā- and O-Decensions.

231. Neuns of the Third Declension. The third declension is called
the Consonant or I-Decension, and its nouns are classified according
to the way the stem ends. If the last letter of the stem is a consonant,
the word is said to have a consonant stem; if the stem ends in -i-, the
word is said to have an i-stem. In consonant stems the stem is the same
as the base. In i-stems the stem is formed by adding -i- to the base.
The presence of the i makes a difference in certain of the cases, so
the distinction is a very important one.

232. Consonant stems are divided into two classes:

I. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular.
II. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular.

¹ quō = whither, to the place where. Here quō is the relative adverb. We
have had it used before as the interrogative adverb, whither? to what place?
² upon.
### Class I

**233.** Stems that add -s to the base in the nominative singular are either masculine or feminine and are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>princeps, m., chief</th>
<th>miles, m., soldier</th>
<th>lapis, m., stone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>princeps</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>lapis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>princeps</th>
<th>miles</th>
<th>lapis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>princeps</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>lapis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>princepis</td>
<td>militis</td>
<td>lapidis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>princepi</td>
<td>militi</td>
<td>lapidi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>princepem</td>
<td>militem</td>
<td>lapidem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>princeipe</td>
<td>militae</td>
<td>lapi de</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>princepes</th>
<th>milites</th>
<th>lapides</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>princepes</td>
<td>milites</td>
<td>lapides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>princepum</td>
<td>militum</td>
<td>lapidum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>princepibus</td>
<td>militibus</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>princepes</td>
<td>milites</td>
<td>lapides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>princepibus</td>
<td>militibus</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Bases or Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>rex, m., king</th>
<th>iudex, m., judge</th>
<th>virtus, f., manliness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rex</td>
<td>iudex</td>
<td>virtus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regis</td>
<td>iucidis</td>
<td>virtutis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>regi</td>
<td>iudici</td>
<td>virtuti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>regem</td>
<td>iudicem</td>
<td>virtute' tem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>regae</td>
<td>iudice</td>
<td>virtute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Terminations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>rex</th>
<th>iudex</th>
<th>virtus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td>-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>rex</th>
<th>iudex</th>
<th>virtus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>-es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>-es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The base or stem is found by dropping -is in the genitive singular.
2. Most nouns of two syllables, like princeps (princip-), miles (milit-), iudex (iudic-), have i in the base, but e in the nominative.
EXERCISES

a. *lapis* is an exception to this rule.

3. Observe the consonant changes of the base or stem in the nominative:
   a. A final *-t* or *-d* is dropped before *-s*; thus *miles* for *mīlets*, *lapis* for *lapīds*, *virtūs* for *virtūts*.
   b. A final *-c* or *-g* unites with *-s* and forms *-x*; thus *iūdec + s = iūdex*, *rēg + s = rēx*.

4. Review § 74 and apply the rules to this declension.
   In like manner decline *dux*, *ducis*, m., *leader*; *eques*, *equītis*, m., *horseman*; *pedes*, *peditis*, m., *foot soldier*; *pēs*, *pedīs*, m., *foot*.

234. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.


II. 1. What ship is that which I see? That (*illud*) ship is the *Victory*. It is sailing now with a favorable wind and will soon approach Italy. 2. The judges commanded the savages to be seized and to be killed. 3. The chiefs of the savages suddenly began to flee, but were quickly captured by the horsemen. 4. The king led the foot soldiers to the wall from which the townsman were hurling stones with the greatest zeal.
LESSON XL

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS (Continued)

CLASS II

235. Consonant stems that add no termination in the nominative are declined in the other cases exactly like those that add -s. They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

236.

PARADIGMS

MASCULINES AND FEMININES

cōnsul, m., legiō, f., ōrdō, m., pater, m.,

Bases or Stems: consul, legion, row, father

SINGULAR

Nom. cōnsul legiō ōrdō pater
Gen. cōnsulis legiōnis ōrdinis patris
Dat. cōnsulī legiōnī ōrdini patri
Acc. cōnsulem legiōnem ōrdinem patrem
Abl. cōnsule legiōne ōrdine patre

Plural

Nom. cōnsulēs legiōnēs ōrdinēs patrēs
Gen. cōnsulum legiōnum ōrdinum patrum
Dat. cōnsulibus legiōnibus ōrdinibus patribus
Acc. cōnsulēs legiōnēs ōrdinēs patrēs
Abl. cōnsulibus legiōnibus ōrdinibus patribus

TERMINATIONS

M. AND F.

-—
is
-ī
-em
-e

-ēs
-um
-ibus
-ēs
-ibus

1. With the exception of the nominative, the terminations are exactly the same as in Class I, and the base or stem is found in the same way.

2. Masculines and feminines with bases or stems in -in- and -ōn- drop -n- and end in -ō in the nominative, as legiō (base or stem legiōn-), ōrdō (base or stem ōrdin-).

3. Bases or stems in -tr- have -ter in the nominative, as pater (base or stem patr-).

4. Note how the genitive singular gives the clue to the whole declension. Always learn this with the nominative.
237. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

2. Quās legiōnēs vidēmus? Eae legiōnēs nūper ex Galliā vēnērunt.
3. Quid ibi fēcērunt? Studebantne pugnāre an sine virtūte erant?

II. 1. Who has seen my father to-day? 2. I saw him just now (nūper). He was hastening to your dwelling with your mother and sister. 3. When men are far from the fatherland and lack food, they cannot be restrained from wrong. 4. The safety of the soldiers is dear to Cæsar, the general. 5. The chiefs were eager to storm a town full of grain which was held by the consul. 6. The king forbade the baggage of the captives to be destroyed.

LESSON XLI

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS (Concluded)

238. Neuter consonant stems add no termination in the nominative and are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basēs OR STEMS</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flūmen, n.,</td>
<td>tempus, n.,</td>
<td>opus, n.,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>river</td>
<td>time</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom. | flūmen | tempus | opus | caput |
| Gen. | flūminis | temporīs | operīs | capitīs |
| Dat. | flūmini | temporī | operī | capitī |
| Acc. | flūmen | tempus | opus | caput |
| Abl. | flūmine | tempore | opere | capite |

1 proelium facere = to fight a battle. 2 contineō. Cf. § 180. 3 Abl. iniūriā.
### EXERCISES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. flūmina</td>
<td>tempora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. flūminum</td>
<td>temporum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. flūminibus</td>
<td>temporibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. flūmina</td>
<td>tempora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. flūminibus</td>
<td>temporibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Review § 74 and apply the rules to this declension.
2. Bases or stems in -in- have -e- instead of -i- in the nominative, as flūmen, base or stem flūmin-.
3. Most bases or stems in -er- and -or- have -us in the nominative, as opus, base or stem oper-; tempus, base or stem tempor-.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.


II. 1. The consul placed a crown on the head of the victor. 2. Before the gates he was received by the townsmen. 3. A famous orator praised him and said, "By your labors you have saved the fatherland from disaster." 4. The words of the orator were pleasing to the victor. 5. To save the fatherland was a great task.
LESSON XLII

REVIEW LESSON

240. Review the paradigms in §§ 233, 236, 238; and decline all nouns of the third declension in this selection.

TERROR CIMBRICUS

Ōlim Cimbri et Teutones, populi Germāniae, cum fēminis līberisque Italiae adpropinquāverant et cōpiās Rōmānās maximō proelīō vicerant. Ubi fuga legiōnum nūntiāta est, summus erat terror tōtius Rōmae, et Rōmāni, graviter commōti, sacra crēbra deis faciēbant et salūtem petēbant.


Marius tum in Āfricā bellum gerēbat. Sine morā ex Āfricā in Italiam vocātus est. Cōpiās novās nōn sōlum tōtī Italiae sed etiam 15 prōvinciās sociōrum imperāvit. Disciplinā autem dūrā labōribusque perpetuis militēs exercuit. Tum cum peditibus equitibusque, qui iam proelīō studēbant, ad Germānōrum castra celeriter properāvīt. Diū et ācriēr pugnātum est. 3 Dēnique barbarī fūgērunt et multī in fugā ab equitibus sunt interfecit. Marius pater patriae vocātus est.

1 About the year 100 B.C. the Romans were greatly alarmed by an invasion of barbarians from the north known as Cimbri and Teutons. They were traveling with wives and children, and had an army of 300,000 fighting men. Several Roman armies met defeat, and the city was in a panic. Then the Senate called upon Marius, their greatest general, to save the country. First he defeated the Teutons in Gaul. Next, returning to Italy, he met the Cimbri. A terrible battle ensued, in which the Cimbri were utterly destroyed; but the terror Cimbricus continued to haunt the Romans for many a year thereafter. 2 He made a levy (of troops) upon, imperāvit with the acc. and the dat. 3 Cf. § 200. n. 2.
LESSON XLIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION • I-STEMS

241. To decline a noun of the third declension correctly we must know whether or not it is an i-stem. Nouns with i-stems are:

1. Masculines and feminines:
   
   a. Nouns in -ēs and -īs with the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative. Thus caēdēs, caedis, is an i-stem, but miles, mīlitis, is a consonant stem.
   
   b. Nouns in -ns and -rs.

   c. Nouns of one syllable in -s or -x preceded by a consonant.

2. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar.

242. The declension of i-stems is nearly the same as that of consonant stems. Note the following differences:

   a. Masculines and feminines have -ium in the genitive plural and -īs or -ēs in the accusative plural.

   b. Neuters have -ī in the ablative singular, and an -ī- in every form of the plural.

243. Masculine and Feminine I-Stems. Masculine and feminine i-stems are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stems</th>
<th>Basess</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Termination M. and F.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caedi-</td>
<td>hosti-</td>
<td>urbi-</td>
<td>cliënti-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caed-</td>
<td>host-</td>
<td>urb-</td>
<td>client-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom.  | caedēs | hostis | urbs | cliëns 1 | -s, -is, ov-ēs |
| Gen.  | caedis | hostis | urbis| clientis | -is          |
| Dat.  | caēdī | hostī | urbī | clientī | -ī          |
| Acc.  | caedem | hostem | urbem | clientem | -em (-im)   |
| Abl.  | caede | hoste | urbe | cliente | -e (-ē)     |

1 Observe that the vowel before -ns is long, but that it is shortened before -nt. Cf. § 12. 2, 3.
THE THIRD DECLENSION • I-STEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>caedēs</th>
<th>hostēs</th>
<th>urbēs</th>
<th>clientēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>caedium</td>
<td>hostium</td>
<td>urbium</td>
<td>clientium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
<td>hostibus</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>caedīs, -ēs</td>
<td>hostīs, -ēs</td>
<td>urbīs, -ēs</td>
<td>clientīs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
<td>hostibus</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. avis, civis, finis, ignis, nāvis have the ablative singular in -ī or -ē.
2. turris has accusative turrim and ablative turri or turre.

244. Neuter I-Stems. Neuter i-stems are declined as follows:

**Stems**
- insigni-
- animāli-
- calcāri-

**Bases**
- insign-
- animāl-
- calcār-

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>insignis</th>
<th>animal</th>
<th>calcar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>insignis</td>
<td>animālis</td>
<td>calcāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>insignī</td>
<td>animāli</td>
<td>calcāri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>insignis</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>calcar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>insignī</td>
<td>animāli</td>
<td>calcāri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>insignia</th>
<th>animālia</th>
<th>calcāria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>insignium</td>
<td>animālium</td>
<td>calcārium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>insignibus</td>
<td>animālibus</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>insignia</td>
<td>animālia</td>
<td>calcāria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>insignibus</td>
<td>animālibus</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Review § 74 and see how it applies to this declension.
2. The final -ī- of the stem is usually dropped in the nominative. If not dropped, it is changed to -e.
3. A long vowel is shortened before final -i or -r. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

245. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

1. Quam urbem vidēmus? Urbs quam vidētis est Rōma. 2. Civēs Rōmānī urbem suam turribus altīs et mūrīs longīs mūnīverant.
3. Ventī nāvis longās prohibēbant finibus hośtium adpropinquāre.
4. Imperātor ā clientibus suīs calcāria aurī et alia insignia accēpit.
5. Mīlitēs Rōmānī cum hostibus bella saeva gessērunt et eōs caede
magnā superāvērunt. 6. Alia animālia terram, alia mare amant.
7. Nāvēs longae quae auxilium ad imperātorem portābant igni ab
hostibus dēlētae sunt. 8. In eō mari avis multās vidimus quae longē
ā terrā volāverant. 9. Nōnne vidisti nāvis longās hostium et ignis
quibus urbs nostra vāstābatūr? Certē, sed nec caedem cīvium nec

fugam cīuentium vidimus. 10. Aves et alia animālia, ubi ignem vīdē-
runt, salūtem fugā petere celeriter incēpērunt. 11. Num iūdex in
pedītum ordinibus stābat? Minimē, iūdex erat apud equītēs et equus
eius īnsignē pulchrum gerēbat.

II. 1. Because of the lack of grain the animals of the village were
not able to live. 2. When the general¹ heard the rumor, he quickly
sent a horseman to the village. 3. The horseman had a beautiful
horse and wore spurs of gold. 4. He said to the citizens, "Send
your retainers with horses and wagons to our camp, and you will
receive an abundance of grain." 5. With happy hearts they hastened
to obey his words.²

¹ Place first. ² Not the accusative. Why?
LESSON XLIV

IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECENSION · GENDER IN THE THIRD DECENSION

246. PARADIGMS

vīs, f., force
Bases vī- and vīr-

SINGULAR

Nom. vīs
Gen. vis (rare)
Dat. vī (rare)
Acc. vim
Abl. vī

iter, n., march
iter- and itiner-

iter
itineris
itinerī
iter
itinere

PlURAL

Nom. vīrīs
Gen. virīum
Dat. virībus
Acc. virīs, or -ēs
Abl. virībus

itinera
itinera
itinere
itinere
itinere
itinere
itinere
itinere

247. There are no rules for gender in the third declension that do not present numerous exceptions. The following rules, however, are of great service, and should be thoroughly mastered:

1. Masculine are nouns in -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs (gen. -itis).

a. arbor, tree, is feminine; and iter, march, is neuter.

2. Feminine are nouns in -ō, -īs, -x, and in -s preceded by a consonant or by any long vowel but ō.

a. Masculine are collis (hill), lapis, mēnis (month), ērōs, pēs, and nouns in -nis and -guis — as ignis, sanguis (blood) — and the four monosyllables
dēns, a tooth; mōns, a mountain
pōns, a bridge; fōns, a fountain

3. Neuters are nouns in -e, -al, -ar, -n, -ur, -ūs, and caput.

¹ Review § 60. Words denoting males are, of course, masculine, and those denoting females, feminine.
248. Give the gender of the following nouns and the rule by which it is determined:

animal    calamitās    flūmen    lapis    nāvis
avis      caput       ignis      legiō     opus
caedēs    eques       īnsigne    mare      salūs
calcar    finis       labor      mīles     urbs

249. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.


II. 1. The enemy had taken (possession of) the top of the mountain. 2. There were many trees on the opposite hills. 3. We pitched our camp near (ad) a beautiful spring. 4. A march through the enemies' country is never without danger. 5. The time of the month was suitable for the march. 6. The teeth of the monster were long. 7. When the foot soldiers saw the blood of the captives, they began to assail the fortifications with the greatest violence.¹

¹ Abl. of manner. ² suōs, used as a noun, his men. ³ We say buīla a bridge over; the Romans, make a bridge on. ⁴ Place first.
LESSON XLV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION - I-STEMS

250. Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions (like bonus, aeger, or liber), or they are of the third declension.

251. Nearly all adjectives of the third declension have i-stems, and they are declined almost like nouns with i-stems.

252. Adjectives learned thus far have had a different form in the nominative for each gender, as, bonus, m.; bona, f.; bonum, n. Such an adjective is called an adjective of three endings. Adjectives of the third declension are of the following classes:

I. Adjectives of three endings —
   a different form in the nominative for each gender.

II. Adjectives of two endings —
    masculine and feminine nominative alike, the neuter different.

III. Adjectives of one ending —
    masculine, feminine, and neuter nominative all alike.

253. Adjectives of the third declension in -er have three endings; those in -is have two endings; the others have one ending.

CLASS I

254. Adjectives of Three Endings are declined as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\text{Singular} & \text{MASC} & \text{FEM} & \text{NEUT} \\
\text{Nom.} & \text{ācer} & \text{ācris} & \text{ācre} & \text{ācrēs} & \text{ācrēs} & \text{ācriā} \\
\text{Gen.} & \text{ācris} & \text{ācris} & \text{ācris} & \text{ācrium} & \text{ācrium} & \text{ācrium} \\
\text{Dat.} & \text{ācri} & \text{ācri} & \text{ācri} & \text{ācribus} & \text{ācribus} & \text{ācribus} \\
\text{Acc.} & \text{ācrem} & \text{ācrem} & \text{ācre} & \text{ācrīs, -ēs} & \text{ācrīs, -ēs} & \text{ācriā} \\
\text{Abl.} & \text{ācri} & \text{ācri} & \text{ācri} & \text{ācribus} & \text{ācribus} & \text{ācribus} \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\text{Plural} & \text{MASC} & \text{FEM} & \text{NEUT} \\
\end{array}
\]
CLASS II

255. Adjectives of Two Endings are declined as follows:

omnis, omne, every, all\(^1\)

**Stem** omni-  **Base** omn-  

**Singular**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omne</td>
<td>omnēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omnium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td>omnibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>omnem</td>
<td>omne</td>
<td>omnēs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td>omnibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc. and Fem.</td>
<td>omnia</td>
<td>omnium</td>
<td>omnibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neut.</td>
<td>omnia</td>
<td>omnium</td>
<td>omnibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CLASS III

256. Adjectives of One Ending are declined as follows:

pār, equal

**Stem** pari-  **Base** par-  

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pār</td>
<td>pār</td>
<td>parēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>paris</td>
<td>paris</td>
<td>parium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>paribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>parem</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>parēs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>paribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc. and Fem.</td>
<td>paria</td>
<td>parium</td>
<td>paribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neut.</td>
<td>paria</td>
<td>parium</td>
<td>paribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. All i-stem adjectives have -ī in the ablative singular.

2. Observe that the several cases of adjectives of one ending have the same form for all genders excepting in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.

3. Decline vir ācer, legiō ācris, animal ācre, ager omnis, scūtum omne, proelium pār.

257. There are a few adjectives of one ending that have consonant stems. They are declined exactly like nouns with consonant stems.

\(^1\) omnis is usually translated every in the singular and all in the plural.
EXERCISES

258.

EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.


II. 1. Some months are short, others are long. 2. To seize the top of the mountain was difficult. 3. Among the hills of Italy are many beautiful springs. 4. The soldiers were sitting where the bag-

gage had been placed because their feet were weary. 5. The city which the soldiers were eager to storm had been fortified by strong walls and high towers. 6. Did not the king intrust a heavy crown of gold and all his money to a faithless slave? Yes, but the slave had never before been faithless.
LESSON XLVI
THE FOURTH OR U-DECLENSION

259. Nouns of the fourth declension are either masculine or neuter.

260. Masculine nouns end in -us, neuters in -ū. The genitive ends in -ūs.

a. Feminine by exception are domus, house; manus, hand; and a few others.

PARADIGMS

adventus, m., arrival cornū, n., horn
Bases advent- corn-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>adventus</td>
<td>adventūs</td>
<td>adventū (ū)</td>
<td>adventūm</td>
<td>adventū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TERMINATIONS</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-uī (ū)</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TERMINATIONS</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ū</td>
<td>-ū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cornua</td>
<td>adventūs</td>
<td>adventuum</td>
<td>adventibus</td>
<td>adventūs</td>
<td>adventibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ua</td>
<td>-uum</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>-ua</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that the base is found, as in other declensions, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. lacus, lake, has the ending -ibus in the dative and ablative plural; portus, harbor, has either -ibus or -ibus.

3. cornū is the only neuter that is in common use.

261. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. 1. Ante adventum Caesaris vēlocēs hostium equitēs ācrem impetum in castra fēcērunt. 2. Continēre exercitum ā proelīō nōn facile erat. 3. Post adventum suum Caesar iussit legiōnēs ex castrīs
duci. 4. Prō castrīs cum hostium equitātū pugnātum est. 5. Post
tempus breve equitātūs trāns flūmen fugit ubi castra hostium posita
erant. 6. Tum victor imperātor agrōs vāstāvit et vicīs hostium cre-
māvit. 7. Castra autem nōn oppugnāvit quia militēs erant dēfessi
et locus difficilis. 8. Hostēs nōn cessāvērunt iacere tēla, quae paucī
nōcērunt. 9. Post adversum proelium principēs Gallōrum légātōs ad
Caesarem mittēre studēbant, sed populō persuādēre nōn poterant.

II. 1. Did you see the man-of-war on the lake? 2. I did not see
it (fem.) on the lake, but I saw it in the harbor. 3. Because of
the strong wind the sailor forbade his brother to sail. 4. Cæsar
didn’t make an attack on the cavalry on the right wing, did he?
5. No, he made an attack on the left wing. 6. Who taught your
swift horse to obey? 7. I trained my horse with my (own) hands,
nor was the task difficult. 8. He is a beautiful animal and has great
strength.

LESSON XLVII

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE · THE DECLENSION OF DOMUS

262. We have become thoroughly familiar with expressions like the
following:

Galba ad (or in) oppidum properat
Galba ab (dē or ex) oppidō properat
Galba in oppidō habitat

From these expressions we may deduce the following rules:

263. Rule. Accusative of the Place to. The place to which is
expressed by ad or in with the accusative. This answers the
question Whither?

264. Rule. Ablative of the Place from. The place from which is
expressed by ā or ab, dē, ē or ex, with the separative ablative.
This answers the question Whence? (Cf. Rule, § 179.)

265. Rule. Ablative of the Place at or in. The place at or in
which is expressed by the ablative with in. This answers the
question Where?
a. The ablative denoting the *place* where is called the **locative ablative** (cf. *locus*, *place*).

266. **Exceptions.** Names of towns, small islands,¹ *domus*, *home*, *rūs*, *country*, and a few other words in common use omit the prepositions in expressions of place, as,

- **Galba Athēnās properat**, *Galba hastens to Athens*
- **Galba Athēnis properat**, *Galba hastens from Athens*
- **Galba Athēnis habitat**, *Galba lives at (or in) Athens*
- **Galba domum properat**, *Galba hastens home*
- **Galba rūs properat**, *Galba hastens to the country*
- **Galba domō properat**, *Galba hastens from home*
- **Galba rūre properat**, *Galba hastens from the country*
- **Galba rūrī (less commonly rūre) habitat**, *Galba lives in the country*

a. Names of countries, like *Germānia*, *Italia*, etc., do not come under these exceptions. *With them prepositions must not be omitted.*

267. **The Locative Case.** We saw above that the place-relation expressed by *at* or *in* is regularly covered by the locative ablative. However, Latin originally expressed this relation by a separate form known as the **locative case**. This case has been everywhere merged in the ablative excepting in the singular number of the first and second declensions. The form of the locative in these declensions is like the genitive singular, and its use is limited to names of towns and small islands, *domī, at home*, and a few other words.

268. **Rule.** Locative and Locative Ablative. *To express the place in which with names of towns and small islands, if they are singular and of the first or second declension, use the locative; otherwise use the locative ablative without a preposition;* as,

- **Galba Rōmae habitat**, *Galba lives at Rome*
- **Galba Corinthī habitat**, *Galba lives at Corinth*
- **Galba domī habitat**, *Galba lives at home*

¹ Small islands are classed with towns because they generally have but one town, and the name of the town is the same as the name of the island.
Here Rōmae, Corinthī, and domī are locatives, being singular and of the first and second declensions respectively. But in

Galba Athēnīs habitat, Galba lives at Athens,
Galba Pompēīī habitat, Galba lives at Pompeii

Athēnīs and Pompēīī are locative ablatives. These words can have no locative case, as the nominatives Athēnae and Pompēīī are plural and there is no plural locative case form.

269. The word domus, home, house, has forms of both the second and the fourth declension. Learn its declension (§ 468).

270. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.


II. 1. Cæsar, the famous general, when he had departed from Rome, hastened to the Roman province on a swift horse. 2. He had heard a rumor concerning the allies at Geneva. 3. After his arrival Cæsar called the soldiers together and commanded them to join battle. 4. The enemy hastened to retreat, some because they were afraid, others because of wounds. 5. Recently I was at Athens and saw the place where the judges used to sit. 6. Marcus and Sextus are my brothers; the one lives at Rome, the other in the country.

1 Latin says “by a swift horse.” What construction? 2 Distinguish between the English conjunction because (quia or quot) and the preposition because of (propter). 3 used to sit, express by the imperfect.
271. Daed'alus and Ic'arus


LESSON XLVIII

THE FIFTH OR Ė-DECLENSION • THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

272. Gender. Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except diēs, day, and meridiēs, midday, which are usually masculine.

273. PARADIGMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>diēs, m., day</th>
<th>rēs, f., thing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bases</td>
<td>di-</td>
<td>r-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diēi</td>
<td>rēi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēi</td>
<td>rēi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diem</td>
<td>rem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diē</td>
<td>rē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>diēs</th>
<th>rēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>rērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>diēs</th>
<th>rēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>rērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 And in this place; quō does not here introduce a subordinate relative clause, but establishes the connection with the preceding sentence. Such a relative is called a connecting relative, and is translated by and and a demonstrative or personal pronoun.
1. The vowel e which appears in every form is regularly long. It is shortened in the ending -ēi after a consonant, as in rēī; and before -m in the accusative singular, as in dī-em. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

2. Only diēs and rēs are complete in the plural. Most other nouns of this declension lack the plural. Acīēs, line of battle, and spēs, hope, have the nominative and accusative plural.

274. The ablative relation (§ 50) which is expressed by the prepositions at, in, or on may refer not only to place, but also to time, as at noon, in summer, on the first day. The ablative which is used to express this relation is called the ablative of time.

275. **Rule. The Ablative of Time.** The time when or within which anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

a. Occasionally the preposition in is found. Compare the English Next day we started and On the next day we started.

276. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.


II. 1. In that month there were many battles in Gaul. 2. The cavalry of the enemy made an attack upon Cæsar’s line of battle. 3. In the first hour of the night the ship was overcome by the billows. 4. On the second day the savages were eager to come under Cæsar’s protection. 5. The king had joined battle, moved by the hope of victory. 6. That year a fire destroyed many birds and other animals. 7. We saw blood on the wild beast’s teeth.
PRONOUNS CLASSIFIED

277. Daed'alus and Ic'arus (Continued)


LESSON XLIX

PRONOUNS CLASSIFIED · PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

278. We have the same kinds of pronouns in Latin as in English. They are divided into the following eight classes:

1. Personal pronouns, which show the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of; as, ego, I; tū, you; is, he. (Cf. § 279, etc.)

2. Possessive pronouns, which denote possession; as, meus, tuus, suus, etc. (Cf. § 98.)

3. Reflexive pronouns, used in the predicate to refer back to the subject; as, he saw himself. (Cf. § 281.)

4. Intensive pronouns, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun; as, I myself saw it. (Cf. § 285.)

5. Demonstrative pronouns, which point out persons or things; as, is, this, that. (Cf. § 112.)

6. Relative pronouns, which connect a subordinate adjective clause with an antecedent; as, qui, who. (Cf. § 220.)

7. Interrogative pronouns, which ask a question; as, quis, who? (Cf. § 225.)

8. Indefinite pronouns, which point out indefinitely; as, some one, any one, some, certain ones, etc. (Cf. § 296.)

279. The demonstrative pronoun is, ea, id, as we learned in § 115, is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person (he, she, it, they, etc.).
280. The personal pronouns of the first person are *ego, I; nōs, we;* of the second person, *tū, thou or you; vōs, ye or you.* They are declined as follows:

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Person</th>
<th>Second Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. <em>ego, I</em></td>
<td>tū, <em>you</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. <em>mei, of me</em></td>
<td>tui, <em>of you</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. <em>mihi, to or for me</em></td>
<td>tibi, <em>to or for you</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. <em>mē, me</em></td>
<td>tē, <em>you</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. <em>mē, with, from, etc., me</em></td>
<td>tē, <em>with, from, etc., you</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. <em>nōs, we</em></td>
<td>vōs, <em>you</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. <em>nostrum or nostrī, of us</em></td>
<td>vestrum or vestrī, <em>of you</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. <em>nōbīs, to or for us</em></td>
<td>vōbīs, <em>to or for you</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. <em>nōs, us</em></td>
<td>vōs, <em>you</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. <em>nōbīs, with, from, etc., us</em></td>
<td>vōbīs, <em>with, from, etc., you</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The personal pronouns are not used in the nominative excepting for emphasis or contrast.

281. The Reflexive Pronouns. 1. The personal pronouns *ego* and *tū* may be used in the predicate as reflexives; as,

*videō mē, I see myself*  
*vidēs tē, you see yourself*  
*vidēmus nōs, we see ourselves*  
*vidētis vōs, you see yourselves*

2. The reflexive pronoun of the third person (*himself, herself, itself, themselves*) has a special form, used only in these senses, and declined alike in the singular and plural.

**Singular and Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen. sūl</th>
<th>Acc. sē</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat. sībi</td>
<td>Abl. sē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

| Puer sē videt, *the boy sees himself* |
| Puella sē videt, *the girl sees herself* |
| Animal sē videt, *the animal sees itself* |
| Hī sē vident, *they see themselves* |

a. The form *sē* is sometimes doubled, *sēsē*, for emphasis.
3. Give the Latin for
I teach myself
You teach yourself
He teaches himself
We teach ourselves
You teach yourselves
They teach themselves

282. The preposition cum, when used with the ablative of ego, tū, or suī, is appended to the form, as, mēcum, with me; tēcum, with you; nōbiscum, with us; etc.

283. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.


II. 1. Whom do you teach? I teach myself. 2. The soldier wounded himself with his sword. 3. The master praises us, but you he does not praise. 4. Therefore he will inflict punishment on you, but we shall not suffer punishment. 5. Who will march (i.e. make a march) with me to Rome? 6. I will march with you to the gates of the city. 7. Who will show us the way? The gods will show you the way.

Dāed'alus and Ic'arus (Concluded)

284. Puer Ícarus ūnā stābat et mirum patris opus vidēbat. Post-quam manus ultīmaā ālis imposita est, Dāedalus ās temptāvit et similis avi in aurās volāvit. Tum ās āmis fili ādigāvit et docuit eum volāre et dīxit, "Te velō, mi fili, adpropinquāre aut sōlī aut mari. Si fluctibus adpropinquāveris, aqua ālis tuīs nocēbit, et sī sōlī adpropinquāveris, 4

1 Not accusative. 2 Adverb, see vocabulary. 3 manus ultima, the finishing touch. What literally? 4 Future perfect. Translate by the present.
THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN IPSE AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE IDEM

285. Ipse means -self (himself, herself, etc.) or is translated by even or very. It is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees like an adjective.

a. Ipse must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive sui. The latter is always used as a pronoun, while ipse is regularly adjective. Compare

Homō sē videt, the man sees himself (reflexive)
Homō ipse periculum videt, the man himself (intensive) sees the danger
Homō ipsum periculum videt, the man sees the danger itself (intensive)

286. Except for the one form ipse, the intensive pronoun is declined exactly like the nine irregular adjectives (cf. §§108, 109). Learn the declension (§ 481).

287. The demonstrative idem, meaning the same, is a compound of is. It is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MASC.</td>
<td>FEM.</td>
<td>NEUT.</td>
<td>MASC.</td>
<td>FEM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>e'adem</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>i'i'dem</td>
<td>eae'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eius'dem</td>
<td>eius'dem</td>
<td>eius'dem</td>
<td>eōrun'dem</td>
<td>eārun'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ei'dem</td>
<td>ei'dem</td>
<td>ei'dem</td>
<td>iis'dem</td>
<td>eis'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eun'dem</td>
<td>ean'dem</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>eōs'dem</td>
<td>eās'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eō'dem</td>
<td>eā'dem</td>
<td>eō'dem</td>
<td>iis'dem</td>
<td>eis'dem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. From forms like eundem (eum + -dem), eōrundem (eōrum + -dem), we learn the rule that m before d is changed to n.

b. The forms iidem, iisdem are often spelled and pronounced with one i.
288. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

1. Ego et tū in eādem urbe vivimus. 2. Iter ipsum nōn timēmus sed ferās saevās quae in silvā dēnsā esse dicuntur. 3. Ōlim nōs ipsi idem iter fēcimus. 4. Éō tempore multās ferās vidimus. 5. Sed nōbis nōn nocuerunt. 6. Caesar ipse scūtum dē manibus militēs eripuit et in ipsam aciem properāvit. 7. Itaque militēs summā virtūte tēla in hos-
tium corpora iēcērunt. 8. Rōmānī quoque graviā vulnera accēpērunt.
10. Eādem hōrā litterae Rōmam ab imperātōre ipsō missae sunt.

II. 1. At Pompeii there is a wonderful mountain. 2. When I was in that place, I myself saw that mountain. 3. On the same day many cities were destroyed by fire and stones from that very mountain. 4. You have not heard the true story of that calamity, have you? 5. On that day the very sun could not give light to men. 6. You yourself ought to tell (to) us that story.

289. HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE

Tarquinius Superbus, septimas et ultimas rēx Rōmānōrum, ubi in exsiliūm ab irātis Rōmānīs ējectus est, ā Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxiliōm petiit. Mox Porsena magnīs cum cōpiis Rōmam vēnit, et ipsa urbs summō in periculō erat. Omnībus in partībus exercitus Rōmānus victus erat. Iam rēx mortem Iāniculum occupāverat. 5 Numquam antēā Rōmānī tantō metū tenēbantur. Ex agrīs in urbem properābant et summō studiō urbem ipsam múniēbant.

1 Observe that in Latin we say I and you, not you and I. 2 Not parts, but directions. 3 Cf. § 210. 4 The story of Horatius has been made familiar by Macaulay's well-known poem "Horatius" in his Lays of Ancient Rome. Read the poem in connection with this selection. 5 The Janiculum is a high hill across the Tiber from Rome.
LESSON LI

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC, ISTE, ILLE*

290. We have already learned the declension of the demonstrative pronoun *is* and its use. (Cf. Lesson XVII.) That pronoun refers to persons or things either far or near, and makes no definite reference to place or time. If we wish to point out an object definitely in place or time, we must use *hic,* *iste,* or *ille.* These demonstratives, like *is,* are used both as pronouns and as adjectives, and their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Speaker</th>
<th>hic</th>
<th>iste</th>
<th>ille</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>this, he (near); that, he (remote); that, he (more remote)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

*a.* In dialogue *hic* refers to a person or thing near the speaker; *iste,* to a person or thing near the person addressed; *ille,* to a person or thing remote from both. These distinctions are illustrated in the model sentences, § 293, which should be carefully studied and imitated.

291. *Hic* is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* *Huius* is pronounced *hōō-yōōs,* and *huic* is pronounced *hōōic* (one syllable).

292. The demonstrative pronouns *iste,* *ista,* *istud,* and *ille,* *illa,* *illud,* except for the nominative and accusative singular neuter forms *istud* and *illud,* are declined exactly like *ipse,* *ipsa,* *ipsum.* (See § 481.)
293. MODEL SENTENCES

Is this horse (of mine) strong?

Estne hic equus validus?

That horse (of yours) is strong, but that one (yonder) is weak.

Iste equus est validus, sed ille est ìnfirmus

Are these (men by me) your friends?

Suntne ìi amìci tuì?

Those (men by you) are my friends, but those (men yonder) are enemies.

Istì sunt amìci meì, sed illì sunt inìmìci

294. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. A German Chieftain addresses his Followers. Ille fortis Germànorum dux suòs convocàvit et hoc modò animòs eòrum cònfìrmàvit. "Vòs, quì in hìs finibus vivìtis, in hunc locum convocàvit1 quìa mècum dèbètis èstòs agròs et èstàs domòs ab ènìèriìs Ròmànòrùm liberàre. Hoc nóbiis nòn difficile erìt, quod illì hostès hàs silvàs 5 dènsàs, fèràs sævàs quàrum vestìgia vìnent, montès altòs tìment. Si fortès èrimus, deì îpsi nòbiis viam salútis dèmònstràbunt. Ille sòl, istì ocùli calamitàtès nostràs vídèrunt.1 Itaque nòmen illìus rèi pùblicae Ròmànàe nòn sòlùm nóbiis, sed ètiam omnìbus homìnìbus qui libertàtem amànt, èst invìsùm. Ad arma vòs vocò. Exercète istàm rìc pròstìnam virtùtem èt vicètis."

II. 1. Does that bird (of yours)² sing? 2. This bird (of mine)² sings both³ in summer and in winter and has a beautiful voice. 3. Those birds (yonder)² in the country don’t sing in winter. 4. Snatch a spear from the hands of that soldier (near you)² and come home with me. 5. With those very eyes (of yours)² you will see the tracks of the hateful enemy who burned my dwelling and made an attack on my brother. 6. For (propter) these deeds (rèùs) we ought to inflict punishment on him without delay. 7. The enemies of the republic do not always suffer punishment.

1 The perfect definite. (Cf. § 190.) 2 English words in parentheses are not to be translated. They are inserted to show what demonstratives should be used. (Cf. § 290.) 3 both ... and, et ... et.
295. **How Horatius held the Bridge (Continued)**


**LESSON LII**

**THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS**

296. The indefinite pronouns are used to refer to *some person* or *some thing*, without indicating which particular one is meant. The pronouns *quis* and *qui*, which we have learned in their interrogative and relative uses, may also be indefinite; and nearly all the other indefinite pronouns are compounds of *quis* or *qui* and declined almost like them. Review the declension of these words, §§ 221, 227.
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

297. Learn the declension and meaning of the following indefinites:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quis</td>
<td>qua or quae</td>
<td>quid, some one, any one (substantive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quī</td>
<td></td>
<td>quod, some, any (adjective), § 483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquis</td>
<td>aliquā</td>
<td>aliquīd, some one, any one (substantive), § 487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīdī</td>
<td>aliquā</td>
<td>aliquīd, some, any (adjective), § 487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīdam</td>
<td>quāedam</td>
<td>quīdīdam, quīddīm, a certain, a certain one, § 485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīsquam</td>
<td></td>
<td>quīcquīm or quīdquīm (no plural), any one (at all) (substantive), § 486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque</td>
<td></td>
<td>quīdquī, each one, every one (substantive), § 484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque</td>
<td>quaeque</td>
<td>quōdquī, each, every (adjective), § 484</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. The meanings of the neuters, something, etc., are easily inferred from the masculine and feminine.

a. In the masculine and neuter singular of the indefinites, quis-forms and quid-forms are mostly used as substantives, quī-forms and quod-forms as adjectives.

b. The indefinites quis and quī never stand first in a clause, and are rare excepting after sī, nisi, nē, num (as, sī quis, if any one; sī quid, if anything; nisi quis, unless some one). Generally aliquīs and aliquī are used instead.

c. The forms qua and aliqua are both feminine nominative singular and neuter nominative plural of the indefinite adjectives quī and aliquī respectively. How do these differ from the corresponding forms of the relative quī?

d. Observe that quīdam (quī + -dam) is declined like quī, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural m of quī becomes n (cf. § 287. a): quendam, quandam, quōrundam, quārundam; also that the neuter has quīdam (substantive) and quōddam (adjective) in the nominative and accusative singular. Quīdam is the least indefinite of the indefinite pronouns, and implies that you could name the person or thing referred to if you cared to do so.

e. Quīsquam and quisque (substantive) are declined like quis.

f. Quīsquam, any one (quīcquīm or quīdquīm, anything), is always used substantively and chiefly in negative sentences. The corresponding adjective any is ullus, -a, -um (§ 108).
298. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.


II. 1. If you see a certain Cornelius at Corinth, send him to me. 2. Almost all the soldiers who fell down into the waves were unharmed. 3. Not even at Pompeii did I see so great a fire. 4. I myself was eager to tell something to some one. 5. Each one was praising his own work. 6. Did you see some one in the country? I did not see any one. 7. Unless some one will remain on the bridge with Horatius, the commonwealth will be in the greatest danger.

299. How Horatius held the Bridge (Concluded)

Mox, ubi parva pars pontis mānsit, Horātius iussit comitēs discēdere et sōlus mirā cōnstantiā impētum illius tōtīs exercītūs sustīnēbat. Dēnique magnō frāgōre pōns in flūmen dēcindit. Tum vērō Horātius tergum vertit et armātus in aquās dēsiluit. In eum hostēs multa tēla iēcērunt; incolumīs autem per fluctūs ad alteram ripam trānāvit. Ei propter tantās ēs gestās populus Rōmānus nōn sōlum alia magna praemia dedit sed etiam statuam Horātī in locō pūblicō posuit.

Sixth Review, Lessons XLV-LII, §§ 521-523

1 Observe that quidam and quidem are different words.
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

LESSON LIII

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

300. The quality denoted by an adjective may exist in either a higher or a lower degree, and this is expressed by a form of inflection called comparison. The mere presence of the quality is expressed by the positive degree, its presence in a higher or lower degree by the comparative, and in the highest or lowest of all by the superlative. In English the usual way of comparing an adjective is by using the suffix -er for the comparative and -est for the superlative; as, positive high, comparative higher, superlative highest. Less frequently we use the adverbs more and most; as, positive beautiful, comparative more beautiful, superlative most beautiful.

In Latin, as in English, adjectives are compared by adding suffixes or by using adverbs.

301. Adjectives are compared by using suffixes as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clārus, -a, -um</td>
<td>clārior, clārius</td>
<td>clārissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Base clār-)</td>
<td>(brighter)</td>
<td>(brightest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevis, breve</td>
<td>brevior, brevius</td>
<td>brevissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Base brev-)</td>
<td>(shorter)</td>
<td>(shortest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vēlōx, (swift)</td>
<td>vēlōcius, vēlōcius</td>
<td>vēlōcissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Base vēlōc-)</td>
<td>(swifter)</td>
<td>(swiftest)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The comparative is formed from the base of the positive by adding -ior masc. and fem., and -ius neut.; the superlative by adding -issimus, -issima, -issimum.

302. Less frequently adjectives are compared by using the adverbs magis, more; maximē, most; as, idōneus, suitable; magis idōneus, more suitable; maximē idōneus, most suitable.

303. Declension of the Comparative. Adjectives of the comparative degree are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc. and Fem.</td>
<td>Masc. and Fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEUT.</td>
<td>NEUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> clārior</td>
<td>clāriōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. clāriōris</td>
<td>clāriōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. clāriōri</td>
<td>clāriōri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. clāriōrem</td>
<td>clāriōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. clāriōre</td>
<td>clāriōre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clāriōres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clāriōrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clāriōrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clāriōrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clāriōrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clāriōrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clāriōrēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
a. Observe that the endings are those of the consonant stems of the third declension.

b. Compare longus, long; fortis, brave; recēns (base, recent-), recent; and decline the comparative of each.

304. Adjectives in -er form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by adding -rimus, -a, -um to the nominative masculine of the positive; as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ācer, ācris, ācre</td>
<td>ācrior, ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Base ācr-)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</td>
<td>pulchrior, pulchrius</td>
<td>pulcherrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Base pulch-)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber, libera, liberum</td>
<td>liberior, liberius</td>
<td>liberrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Base liber-)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. In a similar manner compare miser, aeger, crēber.

305. The comparative is often translated by quite, too, or somewhat, and the superlative by very; as, altior, quite (too, somewhat) high; altissimus, very high.

306. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.


II. 1. Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest. 2. Certain animals are swifter than the swiftest horse. 3. The Roman name was most

1 Why is this word used instead of hostēs?
hateful to the enemies of the commonwealth. 4. The Romans always inflicted the severest\(^1\) punishment on faithless allies. 5. I was quite ill, and so I hastened from the city to the country. 6. Marcus had some friends dearer than Cæsar.\(^2\) 7. Did you not seek a more recent report concerning the battle? 8. Not even after a victory so opportune did he seek the general’s friendship.

N.B. Beginning at this point, the selections for reading will be found near the end of the volume. (See p. 197.)

LESSON LIV

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES - THE ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES WITHOUT QUAM

307. The following six adjectives in -lis form the comparative regularly; but the superlative is formed by adding -limus to the base of the positive. Learn the meanings and comparison.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>facilis, -e, easy</td>
<td>facilior, -ius</td>
<td>facillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis, -e, hard</td>
<td>difficilior, -ius</td>
<td>difficillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similis, -e, like</td>
<td>similior, -ius</td>
<td>simillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissimilis, -e, unlike</td>
<td>dissimilior, -ius</td>
<td>dissimillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracilis, -e, slender</td>
<td>gracilior, -ius</td>
<td>gracillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humilis, -e, low</td>
<td>humilior, -ius</td>
<td>humillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

308. From the knowledge gained in the preceding lesson we should translate the sentence *Nothing is brighter than the sun*

Nihil est clārius quam sōl

But the Romans, especially in negative sentences, often expressed the comparison in this way,

Nihil est clārius sōle

which, literally translated, is *Nothing is brighter away from the sun*; that is, *starting from the sun as a standard, nothing is brighter*. This relation is expressed by the separative ablative sōle. Hence the rule

\(^1\) Use the superlative of gravis.  \(^2\) Accusative. In a comparison the noun after quam is in the same case as the one before it.
309. **Rule.** Ablative with Comparatives. *The comparative degree, if quas is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative.*

310. **EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.


II. 1. What city have you seen more beautiful than Rome? 2. The Gauls were not more eager than the Germans. 3. The eagle is not slower than the horse. 4. The spirited woman did not fear to make the journey by night. 5. The mind of the multitude was quite gentle and friendly. 6. But the king’s mind was very different. 7. The king was not like (similar to) his noble father. 8. These hills are lower than the huge mountains of our territory.
LESSON LV.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

311. Some adjectives in English have irregular comparison, as _good, better, best; many, more, most_. So Latin comparison presents some irregularities. Among the adjectives that are compared irregularly are

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um, <em>good</em></td>
<td>melior, melius</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um, <em>great</em></td>
<td>major, maius</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um, <em>bad</em></td>
<td>peior, peius</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um, <em>much</em></td>
<td>——, plūs</td>
<td>plūrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi, -ae, -a, <em>many</em></td>
<td>plūrēs, plūra</td>
<td>plūrimi, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um, <em>small</em></td>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

312. The following four adjectives have two superlatives. Unusual forms are placed in parentheses.

- _exterus, -a, -um, outward_  
  (exterior, -ius, outer)  
  \{ extrēmus, -a, -um \} outermost, last  
  \{ extrim, -a, -um \} last

- _inferus, -a, -um, low_  
  (inferior, -ius, lower)  
  \{ infimīs, -a, -um \} lowest  
  \{ imus, -a, -um \} lowest

- _posterus, -a, -um, next_  
  (posterior, -ius, later)  
  \{ postrēmus, -a, -um \} last  
  \{ postumus, -a, -um \} last

- _superus, -a, -um, above_  
  (superior, -ius, higher)  
  \{ suprēmus, -a, -um \} highest  
  \{ summus, -a, -um \} highest

313. _Plūs, more_ (plural _more, many, several_), is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masc. and Fem.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>plūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>plūris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>plūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abi.</td>
<td>plūre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. In the singular plūs is used only as a neuter substantive.*
EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.


II. 1. The remaining women fled from their dwellings and hid themselves. 2. They were terrified and did not wish to be captured and given over into slavery. 3. Nothing can be worse than slavery. 4. Slavery is worse than death. 5. In the Roman empire a great many were killed because they refused to be slaves. 6. To surrender the fatherland is the worst crime.

LESSON LVI

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Concluded) · ABLATIVE OF THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

315. The following adjectives are irregular in the formation of the superlative and have no positive. Forms rarely used are in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>citerior, hither</td>
<td>(citimus, utmost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interior, inner</td>
<td>(intimus, inmost)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prior, former</td>
<td>primus, first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propior, nearer</td>
<td>proximus, next, nearest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ulterior, further</td>
<td>ultimus, furthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

316. In the sentence Galba is a head taller than Sextus, the phrase a head taller expresses the measure of difference in height between
Galba and Sextus. The Latin form of expression would be Galba is taller than Sextus by a head. This is clearly an ablative relation, and the construction is called the ablative of the measure of difference.

Examples:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Galba est altior capite quam Sextus} \\
\text{Galba is a head taller (taller by a head) than Sextus.} \\
\text{Illud iter ad Italiam est multō brevius} \\
\text{That route to Italy is much shorter (shorter by much)}
\end{align*}
\]

317. Rule. Ablative of the Measure of Difference. With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference.

a. Especially common in this construction are the neuter ablatives

- eō, by this, by that
- nihilō,\(^1\) by nothing
- hoc, by this
- paulō, by a little
- multō, by much

318. Exercises

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.


II. 1. Another way much more difficult (more difficult by much) was left through hither Gaul. 2. In ancient times no state was stronger than the Roman empire. 3. The states of further Gaul did not wish to give hostages to Cæsar. 4. Slavery is no better (better by nothing) than death. 5. The best citizens are not loved by the worst. 6. The active enemy immediately withdrew into the nearest forest, for they were terrified by Cæsar’s recent victories.

\(^1\) nihil was originally nihilum and declined like pilum. There is no plural.
FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

LESSON LVII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

319. Adverbs are generally derived from adjectives, as in English (e.g. adj. *sweet*, adv. *sweetly*). Like adjectives, they can be compared; but they have no declension.

320. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions are formed and compared as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Adj.</em> cărus, dear</td>
<td>cărior</td>
<td>cărissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Adv.</em> cărē, dearly</td>
<td>cărius</td>
<td>cărissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Adj.</em> pulcher, beautiful</td>
<td>pulchrior</td>
<td>pulchērērīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Adv.</em> pulchērē, beautifully</td>
<td>pulchērius</td>
<td>pulchērērīmē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Adj.</em> liber, free</td>
<td>liberior</td>
<td>libērīrīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Adv.</em> liberē, freely</td>
<td>liberius</td>
<td>libērīrīmē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* The positive of the adverb is formed by adding *-ē* to the base of the positive of the adjective. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective in the same way.

*b.* The comparative of any adverb is the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective.

321. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are formed like those described above in the comparative and superlative. The positive is usually formed by adding *-iter* to the base of adjectives of three endings or of two endings, and *-ter* to the base of those of one ending;¹ as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Adj.</em> fortis, brave</td>
<td>fortior</td>
<td>fortissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Adv.</em> fortiter, bravely</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Adj.</em> audāx, bold</td>
<td>audācior</td>
<td>audācissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Adv.</em> audācter, boldly</td>
<td>audācius</td>
<td>audācissimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ This is a good working rule, though there are some exceptions to it.
322. Case Forms as Adverbs. As we learned above, the neuter
accusative of comparatives is used adverbially. So in the positive or
superlative some adjectives, instead of following the usual formation,
use the accusative or the ablative singular neuter adverbially; as,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Adj.} & \quad \text{facilis, easy} & \quad \text{primus, first} \\
\text{Adv.} & \quad \text{facile (acc.), easily} & \quad \text{primum (acc.), first} \\
\text{Adj.} & \quad \text{multus, many} & \quad \text{primō (abl.), at first} \\
\text{Adv.} & \quad \text{multum (acc.), much} & \quad \text{plurimus, most} \\
& \quad \text{multō (abl.), by much} & \quad \text{plurimum (acc.), most}
\end{align*}
\]

323. Learn the following irregular comparisons:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{bene, wel’} & \quad \text{melius, better} & \quad \text{optimē, best} \\
\text{diē, long (time)} & \quad \text{diūtius, longer} & \quad \text{diūtissimē, longest} \\
\text{magnopere, greatly} & \quad \text{magis, more} & \quad \text{maximē, most} \\
\text{parum, little} & \quad \text{minus, less} & \quad \text{minimē, least} \\
\text{prope, nearly, near} & \quad \text{propius, nearer} & \quad \text{proximē, nearest} \\
\text{saepe, often} & \quad \text{saepius, often} & \quad \text{saepissimē, oftenest}
\end{align*}
\]

324. Form adverbs from the following adjectives, using the regular
rules, and compare them: laetus, superbus, molestus, amicus, ācer,
brevis, gravis, recēns.

325. Rule. Adverbs. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and
other adverbs.

326. Exercises

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.

1. Nūlla rēs melius gesta est quam proelium illud 1 ubi Marius
multō minōre exercitu multō maiōrēs cōpiās Germanōrum in fugam
dedit. 2. Audācter in Rōmānōrum cohortis hostēs impētūs fēcērunt.
3. Marius autem omnēs hōs fortissimē sustinuit. 4. Barbarī nihilō
fortīrēs erant quam Rōmānī. 5. Primō barbarī esse superiōrēs
vidēbantur, tum Rōmānī ācrius contendērunt. 6. Dēnique, ubi iam
diūtissimē paene aequō proelīō pugnātum est, barbarī fugam petiērunt.
7. Quaedam Germanōrum gentēs, simul atque rūnōrem illīus calami-
tātis audīvērunt, sēsē in ultīmis regiōnibus finium suōrum abdīdērunt.

1 Ille standing after its noun means that well-known, that famous.
8. Rōmāni saepius quam hostēs vicērunt, quod meliōra arma habēbant. 9. Inter omnīs gentīs Rōmānī plūrimum valēbant. 10. Hae cohortēs simul atque in aequōrem regiōnem sē recēpērunt, castra sine ùlla difficultāte posuērunt.

II. 1. Some nations are easily overcome by their enemies. 2. Germany is much larger than Gaul. 3. Were not the Romans the most powerful among the tribes of Italy? 4. On account of (his) wounds the soldier dragged his body from the ditch with the greatest difficulty. 5. He was able neither to run nor to fight. 6. Who saved him? A certain horseman boldly undertook the matter. 7. The rumors concerning the soldier’s death were not true.

LESSON LVIII

NUMERALS · THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

327. The Latin numeral adjectives may be classified as follows:

1. Cardinal Numerals, answering the question how many? as, ūnus, one; duo, two; etc.

2. Ordinal Numerals, derived in most cases from the cardinals and answering the question in what order? as, primus, first; secundus, second; etc.

3. Distributive Numerals, answering the question how many at a time? as, singuli, one at a time.

328. The Cardinal Numerals. The first twenty of the cardinals are as follows:

1, ūnus 6, sex 11, undecim 16, sēdecim
2, duo 7, septem 12, duodecim 17, septendecim
3, trēs 8, octō 13, tredecim 18, duodevigintī
4, quattuor 9, novem 14, quattuordecim 19, undēvigintī
5, quīnque 10, decem 15, quīndecim 20, vigintī

a. Learn also centum = 100, ducentī = 200, mille = 1000.

329. Declension of the Cardinals. Of the cardinals only ūnus, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mille used as a noun, are declinable.
THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

a. õnus is one of the nine irregular adjectives, and is declined like nûllus (cf. §§ 109, 470). The plural of õnus is used to agree with a plural noun of a singular meaning, as, õna castra, one camp; and with other nouns in the sense of only, as, Galli õnî, only the Gauls.

b. Learn the declension of duo, two; trēs, three; and mîlle, a thousand. (§ 479.)

c. The hundreds above one hundred are declined like the plural of bonus; as,

ducentî, -ae, -a
ducentôrum, -ârum, -ôrum
e tc. etc. etc.

330. We have already become familiar with sentences like the following:

Omnium avium aquila est vēlôcissima
Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest
Hoc õrāculum erat omnium clârissimum
This oracle was the most famous of all

In such sentences the genitive denotes the whole, and the word it modifies denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, denoting the whole of which a part is taken, is called a partitive genitive.

331. Rule. Partitive Genitive. Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the partitive genitive.

a. Words denoting a part are especially pronouns, numerals, and other adjectives. But cardinal numbers excepting mîlle regularly take the ablative with ex or dē instead of the partitive genitive.

b. Mîlle, a thousand, in the singular is usually an indeclinable adjective (as, mîlle mîlitēs, a thousand soldiers), but in the plural it is a declinable noun and takes the partitive genitive (as, decem mîlia mîlitum, ten thousand soldiers).

Examples:

Fortissimī hōrum sunt Germānī
The bravest of these are the Germans
Decem mîlia hostium interfecta sunt
Ten thousand (lit. thousands) of the enemy were slain
Úna ex captīvis erat soror rēgis
One of the captives was the king’s sister
EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.


II. 1. I have two brothers, and one of them lives at Rome. 2. Cæsar stormed that very town with three legions. 3. In one hour he destroyed a great part of the fortification. 4. When the enemy could no longer 2 defend the gates, they retreated to a hill which was not far distant. 3 5. There three thousand of them bravely resisted the Romans. 4

LESSON LIX

NUMERALS (Continued) · THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

333. Learn the first twenty of the ordinal numerals (§ 478). The ordinals are all declined like bonus.

334. The distributive numerals are declined like the plural of bonus. The first three are

singulī, -ae, -a, one each, one by one
binī, -ae, -a, two each, two by two
ternī, -ae, -a, three each, three by three

335. We have learned that, besides its use as object, the accusative is used to express space relations not covered by the ablative. We have had such expressions as per plurīmōs annōs, for a great many

1 Ablative of the measure of difference. 2 Not longius. Why? 3 Latin, was distant by a small space. 4 Not the accusative.
years; per tōtum diem, for a whole day. Here the space relation is one of extent of time. We could also say per decem pedēs, for ten feet, where the space relation is one of extent of space. While this is correct Latin, the usual form is to use the accusative with no preposition, as,

Vir tōtum diem cecurrit, the man ran for a whole day
Caesar mūrum decem pedēs mōvit, Cæsar moved the wall ten feet

336. Rule. Accusative of Extent. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

a. This accusative answers the questions how long? how far?
b. Distinguish carefully between the accusative of time how long and the ablative of time when, or within which.

Select the accusatives of time and space and the ablatives of time in the following:

When did the general arrive? He arrived at two o'clock. How long had he been marching? For four days. How far did he march? He marched sixty-five miles. Where has he pitched his camp? Three miles from the river, and he will remain there several days. The wall around the camp is ten feet high. When did the war begin? In the first year after the king's death.

337. Exercises

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.

I. Caesar in Gaul. Caesar bellum in Galliā septem annōs gessit. Primō annō Helvētiōs vicit, et eōdem annō multae Germānōrum gentēs eī sēsē dēdīderunt. Multōs iam annōs Germānī Gallōs vexā-

bant 1 et ducēs Germānī cōpiās suās trāns Rhēnum saepe trādūcēbant.

Nōn singuli veniēbant, sed multa milia hominum in Galliam contendē-

bant. Quā dē causā principēs Galliae concilium convocāvērunt atque

statuērunt lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere. Caesar, simul atque hunc

rūmōrem audīvit, cōpiās suās sīne morā coēgit. Primā lūce fortiter

cum Germānīs proelium commīsit. Tōtum diem ācrīter pugnātum

est. Caesar ipse ā dextrō cornū aciem dūxit. Magna pars exercitūs 10

Germānī ceclidit. Post magnam caedem paucī multa milia passuum

ad flūmen fūgērunt.

1 Translate as if pluperfect.
II. 1. Caesar pitched camp two miles from the river. 2. He fortified the camp with a ditch fifteen feet wide and a rampart nine feet high. 3. The camp of the enemy was a great way off (was distant by a great space). 4. On the next day he hastened ten miles in three hours. 5. Suddenly the enemy with all their forces made an attack upon (in with acc.) the rear. 6. For two hours the Romans were hard pressed by the barbarians. 7. In three hours the barbarians were fleeing.

LESSON LX

DEponent VERBS

338. A number of verbs are passive in form but active in meaning; as, *hortor*, I encourage; *vereor*, I fear. Such verbs are called *deponent* because they have laid aside (*de-pōnere*, to lay aside) the active forms.

a. Besides having all the forms of the passive, deponent verbs have also the future active infinitive and a few other active forms which will be noted later. (See §§ 375, 403. b.)

339. The principal parts of deponents are of course passive in form, as,

*Conj. I*  
hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, encourage

*Conj. II*  
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear

*Conj. III* *(a)* sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow  
*(b)* patior, patī, passus sum, suffer, allow

*Conj. IV*  
partior, partīrī, partitus sum, share, divide

Learn the synopses of these verbs. (See § 493.) *Patior* is conjugated like the passive of *capiō* (§ 492).

340. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

The prepositions with the accusative that occur most frequently are

ante, before
apud, among
circum, around
contrā, against, contrary to
extrā, outside of
in, into, in, against, upon
inter, between, among
intrā, within
ob, on account of (quam ob rem, wherefore, therefore)
per, through, by means of
post, after, behind
propter, on account of, because of
trāns, across, over

a. Most of these you have had before. Review the old ones and learn the new ones. Review the list of prepositions governing the ablative, § 209.
First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.


II. 1. Contrary to our expectation, the enemy fled and the cavalry followed close after them. 2. From all parts of the multitude the shouts arose of those who were being wounded. 3. Cæsar did not allow the cavalry to pursue too far. 4. The cavalry set out at the first hour and was returning to camp at the fourth hour. 5. Around the Roman camp was a rampart twelve feet high. 6. Cæsar will delay three days because of the grain supply. 7. Nearly all the lieutenants feared the enemy and attempted to delay the march.

1 Comparative of longē.  2 Will this be a deponent or an active form?
PART III

CONSTRUCTIONS

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

The preceding part of this book has been concerned chiefly with forms and vocabulary. Thereremain still to be learned the forms of the Subjunctive Mood, the Participles, and the Gerund of the regular verb, and the conjugation of the commoner irregular verbs. These will be taken up in connection with the study of constructions, which will be the chief subject of our future work. The special vocabularies of the preceding lessons contain, exclusive of proper names, about six hundred words. As these are among the commonest words in the language, they must be mastered. They properly form the basis of the study of words, and will be reviewed and used with but few additions in the remaining lessons.

For practice in reading and to illustrate the constructions presented, a continued story has been prepared and may be begun at this point (see p. 204). It has been divided into chapters of convenient length to accompany progress through the lessons, but may be read with equal profit after the lessons are finished. The story gives an account of the life and adventures of Publius Cornelius Lentulus, a Roman boy, who fought in Caesar’s campaigns and shared in his triumph. The colored plates illustrating the story are faithful representations of ancient life and are deserving of careful study.

148
LESSON LXI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

342. In addition to the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, which you have learned, Latin has a fourth mood called the subjunctive. The tenses of the subjunctive are

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Active and Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

343. The tenses of the subjunctive have the same time values as the corresponding tenses of the indicative, and, in addition, each of them may refer to future time. No meanings of the tenses will be given in the paradigms, as the translation varies with the construction used.

344. The present subjunctive is inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active Voice</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. a'mem</td>
<td>mo'neam</td>
<td>re'gam</td>
<td>ca'piam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. a'mes</td>
<td>mo'neas</td>
<td>re'gas</td>
<td>ca'pias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. a'met</td>
<td>mo'neat</td>
<td>re'gat</td>
<td>ca'piat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. am'emus</td>
<td>mone'amus</td>
<td>reg'amus</td>
<td>capiamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. am'etis</td>
<td>mone'attis</td>
<td>reg'attis</td>
<td>capiattis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. a'ment</td>
<td>mo'neant</td>
<td>re'gant</td>
<td>ca'piant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Passive Voice</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. a'mer</td>
<td>mo'near</td>
<td>re'gar</td>
<td>ca'piar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. am'eris (-re)</td>
<td>mone'aris (-re)</td>
<td>reg'aris (-re)</td>
<td>capi'aris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. am'etur</td>
<td>mone'atur</td>
<td>reg'atur</td>
<td>capi'atur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PLURAL

1. amē'mur  moneā'mur  regā'mur  capiā'mur  audīā'mur
2. amē'mini moneā'mini regā'mini capiā'mini audīā'mini
3. amen'tur monean'tur regan'tur capian'tur audian'tur

a. The present subjunctive is formed from the present stem.

b. The mood sign of the present subjunctive is -ē- in the first conjugation and -ā- in the others. It is shortened in the usual places (cf. § 12), and takes the place of the final vowel of the stem in the first and third conjugations, but not in the second and fourth.

c. The personal endings are the same as in the indicative.

d. In a similar way inflect the present subjunctive of cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.'

345. The present subjunctive of the irregular verb sum is inflected as follows:

Sing.  Plur.
1. sim   1. sīmus
2. sis   2. sītis
3. sit   3. sīnt

346. The Indicative and Subjunctive Compared. 1. The two most important of the finite moods are the indicative and the subjunctive. The indicative deals with facts either real or assumed. If, then, we wish to assert something as a fact or to inquire after a fact, we use the indicative.

2. On the other hand, if we wish to express a desire or wish, a purpose, a possibility, an expectation, or some such notion, we must use the subjunctive. The following sentences illustrate the difference between the indicative and the subjunctive ideas.

INDICATIVE IDEAS

1. He is brave
   Fortis est

2. We set out at once
   Statim proficiscimur

3. You hear him every day
   Cotidiē eum audīs

SUBJUNCTIVE IDEAS

1. May he be brave
   Fortis sit (idea of wishing)

2. Let us set out at once
   Statim proficiscāmur (idea of willing)

3. You can hear him every day
   Cotidiē eum audiās (idea of possibility)
INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE COMPARED

4. He remained until the ship arrived
Mānsit dum nāvis pervēnit

5. Caesar sends men who find the bridge
Caesar mittit hominēs qui pontem reperiant

NOTE. From the sentences above we observe that the subjunctive may be used in either independent or dependent clauses; but it is far more common in the latter than in the former.

347.

EXERCISE

Which verbs in the following paragraph would be in the indicative and which in the subjunctive in a Latin translation?

There have been times in the history of our country when you might be proud of being an American citizen. Do you remember the day when Dewey sailed into Manila Bay to capture or destroy the enemy’s fleet? You might have seen the admiral standing on the bridge calmly giving his orders. He did not even wait until the mines should be removed from the harbor’s mouth, but sailed in at once. Let us not despair of our country while such valor exists, and may the future add new glories to the past.

LESSON LXII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE

348. Observe the sentence
Caesar hominēs mittit qui pontem reperiant, Caesar sends men to find the bridge

The verb reperiant in the dependent clause is in the subjunctive because it tells us what Cæsar wants the men to do; in other words, it expresses his will and the purpose in his mind. Such a use of the subjunctive is called the subjunctive of purpose.

1 pervēret, imperfect subjunctive.
349. Rule. Subjunctive of Purpose. The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action in the principal clause.

350. A clause of purpose is introduced as follows:

I. If something is wanted, by
   quî, the relative pronoun (as above)
   ut, conj., in order that, that
   quō (abl. of quî, by which), in order that, that, used when
   the purpose clause contains a comparative. The ablative
   quō expresses the measure of difference. (Cf. § 317.)

II. If something is not wanted, by
    nē, conj., in order that not, that not, lest

351. EXAMPLES

1. Caesar cŏpiās cŏgit quibus hostīs ĭnsequātūr
   Caesar collects troops with which to pursue the foe
2. Pācem petunt ut domum revertantūr
   They ask for peace in order that they may return home
3. Pontem faciunt quō facilius oppidum capiant
   They build a bridge that they may take the town more
   easily (lit. by which the more easily)
4. Fugiunt nē vulnerentūr
   They flee that they may not (or lest they) be wounded

352. Expression of Purpose in English. In English, purpose clauses are sometimes introduced by that or in order that, but much more frequently purpose is expressed in English by the infinitive, as We eat to live, She stoops to conquer. In Latin prose, on the other hand, purpose is never expressed by the infinitive. Be on your guard and do not let the English idiom betray you into this error.

353. EXERCISES

I.
1. Veniunt ut { dūcant, mittant, videant, audiant,
   dūcantur, mittantur, videantur, audiantur.
2. Fugiunt nē { capiāmur, trādāmur, videāmus,
   necēmur, rapiāmur, resistāmus.
THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

3. Mittit nūntiōs dicant, audiant, veniant, qui nārrent, audiantur, in concīliō sedeant.

II. 1. The Helvetii send ambassadors to seek¹ peace. 2. They are setting out at daybreak in order that they may make a longer march before night. 3. They will hide the women in the forest (acc. with in) that they may not be captured.¹ 4. The Gauls wage many wars to free¹ their fatherland from slavery. 5. They will resist the Romans² bravely lest they be destroyed.

LESSON LXIII

INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

354. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJ. I</th>
<th>CONJ. II</th>
<th>CONJ. III</th>
<th>CONJ. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AMĀREM</td>
<td>MONĒREM</td>
<td>REGEREM</td>
<td>CAPEREM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMĀRĒS</td>
<td>MONĒRĒS</td>
<td>REGERĒS</td>
<td>CAPERĒS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMĀRET</td>
<td>MONĒRET</td>
<td>REGERET</td>
<td>CAPERET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMĀREMUS</td>
<td>MONĒREMUS</td>
<td>REGEREMUS</td>
<td>CAPEREMUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMĀRĒTIS</td>
<td>MONĒRĒTIS</td>
<td>REGERĒTIS</td>
<td>CAPERĒTIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMĀRENT</td>
<td>MONĒRENT</td>
<td>REGERENT</td>
<td>CAPERENT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PASSIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. AMĀRER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. AMĀRĒRIS(-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. AMĀRĒRUR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. AMĀREMUR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. AMĀREMUM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. AMĀREMUR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. In a similar way inflect the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of cūrō, iūbeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.

¹ Not infinitive. ² Not accusative.
355. The imperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb sum is inflected as follows:

Sing. \[
\begin{align*}
1. & \text{ es’sem} \\
2. & \text{ es’ses} \\
3. & \text{ es’set}
\end{align*}
\]

Plur. \[
\begin{align*}
1. & \text{ essē’mus} \\
2. & \text{ essē’tis} \\
3. & \text{ es’sent}
\end{align*}
\]

356. The three great distinctions of time are present, past, and future. All tenses referring to present or future time are called primary tenses, and those referring to past time are called secondary tenses. Now it is a very common law of language that in a complex sentence the tense in the dependent clause should be of the same kind as the tense in the principal clause. In the sentence He says that he is coming, the principal verb, says, is present, that is, is in a primary tense; and is coming, in the dependent clause, is naturally also primary. If I change he says to he said,—in other words, if I make the principal verb secondary in character,—I feel it natural to change the verb in the dependent clause also, and I say, He said that he was coming. This following of a tense by another of the same kind is called tense sequence, from sequī, "to follow."

In Latin the law of tense sequence is obeyed with considerable regularity, especially when an indicative in the principal clause is followed by a subjunctive in the dependent clause. Then a primary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive, and a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a secondary tense of the subjunctive. Learn the following table:

357. **Table for Sequence of Tenses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal Verb in the Indicative</th>
<th>Dependent Verbs in the Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incomplete or Continuing Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Future</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Future perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SEQUENCE OF TENSES

358. RULE. Sequence of Tenses. Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses and secondary by secondary.

359. EXAMPLES

I. Primary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

\[
\text{Mittit} \quad \text{Mittet} \quad \text{Miserit} \\
\text{hominës ut agrös vástent} \\
\text{that they may} \\
\text{lay waste the fields}
\]

\[
\text{He \ sends} \quad \text{men \ in order to \ to} \\
\text{will send} \quad \text{will have sent}
\]

II. Secondary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

\[
\text{Mittëbat} \quad \text{Misit} \quad \text{Miserat} \\
\text{hominës ut agrös vástären} \\
\text{that they might} \\
\text{lay waste the fields}
\]

\[
\text{He \ was sending} \quad \text{men \ in order to \ to} \\
\text{sent or has sent} \quad \text{had sent}
\]

360. EXERCISES

I.

1. Vënerant ut \{\text{dùcerent, mitterent, vidùrent, audìrent, dùcerentur, mitterentur, vidùrentur, audìrentur.}\}

2. Fugiëbat ne \{\text{caperùtur, tràderëtur, vidùrëtur, necàrëtur, raperùtur, resisteret.}\}

3. Misit nùntiös qui \{\text{dùcerent, audìrent, venìrent, nàrrìrent, audìrentur, in concìliì sedìrent.}\}

4. Castra mûnivërunt \{\text{sësë dëfenderent, impetum sustinìrent, hostìs vìncenter, saltëtem pëterent.}\}

II. 1. Cæsar encouraged the soldiers in order that they might fight more bravely. 2. The Helvetii left their homes to wage war. 3. The scouts set out at once lest they should be captured by the Germans. 4. Cæsar inflicted punishment on them in order that the others might be more terrified. 5. He sent messengers to Rome to announce the victory.
LESSON LXIV

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

361. The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive active are inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>amā'verim</td>
<td>monu'érim</td>
<td>rē'xērim</td>
<td>cē'perim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>amā'veris</td>
<td>monu'éris</td>
<td>rē'xēris</td>
<td>cē'peris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>amā'verit</td>
<td>monu'érit</td>
<td>rē'xērit</td>
<td>cē'perit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>amāve'rīmus</td>
<td>monue'rīmus</td>
<td>rēxe'rīmus</td>
<td>cēpe'rīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>amāve'rītis</td>
<td>monue'rītis</td>
<td>rēxe'rītis</td>
<td>cēpe'rītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>amā'verint</td>
<td>monu'érint</td>
<td>rē'xērint</td>
<td>cē'perint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>amāvis'sem</td>
<td>monuis'sem</td>
<td>rēxis'sem</td>
<td>cēpis'sem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>amāvis'sēs</td>
<td>monuis'sēs</td>
<td>rēxis'sēs</td>
<td>cēpis'sēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>amāvis'sēt</td>
<td>monuis'sēt</td>
<td>rēxis'sēt</td>
<td>cēpis'sēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>amāvisse'mus</td>
<td>monuissė'mus</td>
<td>rēxissė'mus</td>
<td>cēpissė'mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>amāvisse'tis</td>
<td>monuissė'tis</td>
<td>rēxissė'tis</td>
<td>cēpissė'tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>amāvissė'sent</td>
<td>monuissė'sent</td>
<td>rēxissė'sent</td>
<td>cēpissė'sent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Observe that these two tenses, like the corresponding ones in the indicative, are formed from the perfect stem.

b. Observe that the perfect subjunctive active is like the future perfect indicative active, excepting that the first person singular ends in -m and not in -ō.

c. Observe that the pluperfect subjunctive active may be formed by adding -issem, -issēs, etc. to the perfect stem.

d. In a similar way inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, muniō.
362. The passive of the perfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with sim, the present subjunctive of sum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Con. I</td>
<td>amā'tus sim</td>
<td>mo'nitus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Con. II</td>
<td>amā'tus sis</td>
<td>mo'nitus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Con. III</td>
<td>amā'tus sit</td>
<td>mo'nitus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Con. IV</td>
<td>amā'tus simus</td>
<td>mo'nitus simus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

363. The passive of the pluperfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with essem, the imperfect subjunctive of sum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Con. I</td>
<td>amā'tus essem</td>
<td>monitus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Con. II</td>
<td>amā'tus essēs</td>
<td>monitus essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Con. III</td>
<td>amā'tus essēt</td>
<td>monitus essēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Con. IV</td>
<td>amā'tus essēmus</td>
<td>monitus essēmus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. In a similar way inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive of ērō, iūdeo, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.

364. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb sum are inflected as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fu'ērim</td>
<td>fui's'erum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu'eris</td>
<td>fui's'eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fu'erit</td>
<td>fui's'erint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
365. A substantive clause is a clause used like a noun, as,

That the men are afraid is clear enough (clause as subject)
He ordered them to call on him (clause as object)

We have already had many instances of infinitive clauses used in this way (cf. § 213), and have noted the similarity between Latin and English usage in this respect. But the Latin often uses the subjunctive in substantive clauses, and this marks an important difference between the two languages.

366. Rule. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. A substantive clause of purpose with the subjunctive is used as the object of verbs of commanding, urging, asking, persuading, or advising, where in English we should usually have the infinitive.

**EXAMPLES**

1. The general ordered the soldiers to run
   Imperātor militibus imperāvit ut current
2. He urged them to resist bravely
   Hortātus est ut fortiter resisterent
3. He asked them to give the children food
   Petīvit ut īberīs cībum darent
4. He will persuade us not to set out
   Nōbis persuādēbit nē proficiscāmur
5. He advises us to remain at home
   Monet ut domī maneāmus

   a. The object clauses following these verbs all express the purpose or will of the principal subject that something be done or not done. (Cf. § 348.)

367. The following verbs are used with object clauses of purpose. Learn the list and the principal parts of the new ones.

hortor, urge
imperō, order (with the dative of the person ordered and a subjunctive clause of the thing ordered done)
moneō, advise

petō, quaerō, rogō, ask, seek
persuādeo, persuade (with the same construction as imperō)
postulō, demand, require
suādeo, advise (cf. persuādeo)

N.B. Remember that iubeō, order, takes the infinitive as in English. (Cf. § 213.1.) Compare the sentences

Iubeō eum venire, I order him to come
Imperō eī ut veniat, I give orders to him that he is to come
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

We ordinarily translate both of these sentences like the first, but the difference in meaning between iubeo and impero in the Latin requires the infinitive in the one case and the subjunctive in the other.

368. EXERCISES


II. 1. Who ordered Caesar to make the march? (Write this sentence both with imperō and with iubeō.) 2. The faithless scouts persuaded him to set out at daybreak. 3. They will ask him not to inflict punishment. 4. He demanded that they come to the camp. 5. He advised them to tell everything (omnia).

Note. Do not forget that the English infinitive expressing purpose must be rendered by a Latin subjunctive. Review § 352.
LESSON LXV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF POSSUM • VERBS OF FEARING

369. Learn the subjunctive of possum (§ 495), and note especially the position of the accent.

370. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing. We have learned that what we want done or not done is expressed in Latin by a subjunctive clause of purpose. In this class belong also clauses after verbs of fearing, for we fear either that something will happen or that it will not, and we either want it to happen or we do not. If we want a thing to happen and fear that it will not, the purpose clause is introduced by ut. If we do not want it to happen and fear that it will, nē is used. Owing to a difference between the English and Latin idiom we translate ut after a verb of fearing by that not, and nē by that or lest.

371. EXAMPLES

\[
\begin{align*}
timeō & \quad \text{veniat} \\
timēbō & \quad \text{ut} \\
timuerō & \quad \text{vēnerit}
\end{align*}
\]

I fear, shall fear, shall have feared, that he will not come, has not come

\[
\begin{align*}
timēbam & \quad \text{venīret} \\
timuī & \quad \text{ut} \\
timueram & \quad \text{vēnisset}
\end{align*}
\]

I was fearing, feared, had feared, that he would not come, had not come

The same examples with nē instead of ut would be translated I fear that or lest he will come, has come, etc.

372. RULE. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing. Verbs of fearing are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by ut (that not) or nē (that or lest).
**THE PARTICIPLES**

**373. EXERCISES**

I. 1. Caesar verēbātur ut supplicium captivōrum Gallis placēret. 2. Rōmāni īpsi magnopere verēbantur nē Helvētīi iter per prōvin-
ciam facerent. 3. Timēbant ut satis rei īrūmentāriae mitti posset. 4. Vereor ut hostium impetus sustinēre possim. 5. Timuit nē impe-
dimenta ab hostibus capta essent. 6. Caesar numquam timuit nē legiōnēs vincerentur. 7. Legiōnēs pugnāre nōn timuērunt.¹

II. 1. We fear that they are not coming. 2. We fear lest they are coming. 3. We feared that they had come. 4. We feared that they had not come. 5. They feared greatly that the camp could not be defended. 6. Almost all feared¹ to leave the camp.

---

**LESSON LXVI**

**THE PARTICIPLES**

**374. The Latin verb has the following Participles:**²

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conj. I</th>
<th>Conj. II</th>
<th>Conj. III</th>
<th>Conj. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>monēns</td>
<td>regēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>loving</td>
<td>advising</td>
<td>ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātūrus</td>
<td>monitūrus</td>
<td>rēctūrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>about to</td>
<td>about to</td>
<td>about to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>love</td>
<td>advise</td>
<td>rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td>amātus</td>
<td>monitus</td>
<td>rēctus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>loved, hav-</td>
<td>advised, hav-</td>
<td>ruled, hav-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ing been</td>
<td>ing been</td>
<td>ing been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>loved</td>
<td>advised</td>
<td>ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future³</strong></td>
<td>to be</td>
<td>to be</td>
<td>to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>loved</td>
<td>advised</td>
<td>ruled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Distinguish between what one is afraid to do (complementary infinitive as here) and what one is afraid will take place or has taken place (substantive clause with the subjunctive). ² Review § 203. ³ The future passive participle is often called the gerundive.
THE PARTICIPLES

a. The present active and future passive participles are formed from the present stem, and the future active and perfect passive participles are formed from the participial stem.

b. The present active participle is formed by adding -ns to the present stem. In -iō verbs of the third conjugation, and in the fourth conjugation, the stem is modified by the addition of -ē-, as capiēns, audiēns. It is declined like an adjective of one ending of the third declension. (Cf. § 256.)

amāns, loving

**Base** amant-  
**Stem** amanti-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Singular</strong></th>
<th><strong>Plural</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Masc. and Fem.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amantīs</td>
<td>amantīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>amantī</td>
<td>amantī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>amantem</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>amantī or -ē</td>
<td>amantī or -ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) When used as an adjective the ablative singular ends in -ī; when used as a participle or as a substantive, in -e.

(2) In a similar way decline monēns, regēns, capiēns, audiēns.

c. The future active participle is formed by adding -ūrus to the base of the participial stem. We have already met this form combined with esse to produce the future active infinitive. (Cf. § 206.)

d. For the perfect passive participle see § 201. The future passive participle or gerundive is formed by adding -udus to the present stem.

e. All participles in -us are declined like bonus.

f. Participles agree with nouns or pronouns like adjectives.

g. Give all the participles of the following verbs: cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō.

375. Participles of Deponent Verbs. Deponent verbs have the participles of the active voice as well as of the passive; consequently every deponent verb has four participles, as,

| **Pres. Act.** | hortāns, urging |
| **Fut. Act.** | hortātūrus, about to urge |
| **Perf. Pass. (in form)** | hortātus, having urged |
| **Fut. Pass. (Gerundive)** | hortandus, to be urged |
a. Observe that the perfect participle of deponent verbs is passive in form but active in meaning. No other verbs have a perfect active participle. On the other hand, the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning as in other verbs.

b. Give the participles of cōnor, vereor, sequor, patior, partior.

376. Tenses of the Participle. The tenses express time as follows:

1. The present active participle corresponds to the English present active participle in -ing, but can be used only of an action occurring at the same time as the action of the main verb; as, militēs insequēntēs cēpērunt multōs, the soldiers, while pursuing, captured many. Here the pursuing and the capturing are going on together.

2. The perfect participle (excepting of deponents) is regularly passive and corresponds to the English past participle with or without the auxiliary having been; as, audītus, heard or having been heard.

3. The future active participle, translated about to, etc., denotes time after the action of the main verb.

377. Review §§ 203, 204, and note the following model sentences:

1. Militēs currentēs erant dēfessī, the soldiers who were running (lit. running) were weary.

2. Caesar profectūrus Rōmam nōn exspectāvit, Ĉaesar, when about to set out (lit. about to set out) for Rome, did not wait.

3. Oppidum captum vidēimus, we saw the town which had been captured (lit. captured town).

4. Imperātor trīduum morātus profectus est, the general, since (when, or after) he had delayed (lit. the general, having delayed) three days, set out.

5. Militēs victī terga nōn vertērunt, the soldiers, though they were conquered (lit. the soldiers conquered), did not retreat.

In each of these sentences the literal translation of the participle is given in parentheses. We note, however, that its proper translation usually requires a clause beginning with some conjunction (when, since, after, though, etc.), or a relative clause. Consider, in each case, what translation will best bring out the thought, and do not, as a rule, translate the participle literally.
EXERCISES


II. The army was in very great danger while marching through the enemy’s country. 2. Frightened by the length of the way, they longed for home. 3. When the scouts were about to set out, they heard the shouts of victory. 4. When we had delayed many days, we set fire to the buildings and departed. 5. While living at Rome I heard orators much better than these. 6. The soldiers who are fighting across the river are no braver than we.

LESSON LXVII

THE IRREGULAR VERBS VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ • THE ABLATIVE WITH A PARTICIPLE, OR ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

379. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of volō, wish; nōlō (ne + volō), be unwilling; mālō (magis + volō), be more willing, prefer (§ 497). Note the irregularities in the present indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, and in the imperfect subjunctive. (Cf. § 354.)

a. These verbs are usually followed by the infinitive with or without a subject accusative; as, volunt venīre, they wish to come; volunt amīcōs venīre, they wish their friends to come. The English usage is the same.2

380. Observe the following sentences:

1. Magistrō laudante omnēs puerī diligenter labōrant, with the teacher praising, or since the teacher praises, or the teacher praising, all the boys labor diligently.

1 In this exercise use participles for the subordinate clauses. 2 Sometimes the subjunctive of purpose is used after these verbs. (See § 366.)
2. Caesare dūcente nēmā prōgreḍī timet, with Caesar leading, or when Caesar leads, or if Caesar leads, or Caesar leading, no one fears to advance.

3. Hīs rēbus cognitis mīlitēs fūgērunt, when this was known, or since this was known, or these things having been learned, the soldiers fled.

4. Proelīō commissō mūltī vulnerāti sunt, after the battle had begun, or when the battle had begun, or the battle having been joined, many were wounded.

   a. One of the fundamental ablative relations is expressed in English by the preposition with (cf. § 50). In each of the sentences above we have a noun and a participle in agreement in the ablative, and the translation shows that in each instance the ablative expresses attendant circumstance. For example, in the first sentence the circumstance attending or accompanying the diligent labor of the boys is the praise of the teacher. This is clearly a with relation, and the ablative is the case to use.

   b. We observe, further, that the ablative and its participle are absolutely independent grammatically of the rest of the sentence. If we were to express the thought in English in a similar way, we should use the nominative independent or absolute. In Latin the construction is called the Ablative Absolute, or the Ablative with a Participle. This form of expression is exceedingly common in Latin, but rather rare in English, so we must not, as a rule, employ the English absolute construction to translate the ablative absolute. The attendant circumstance may be one of time (when or after), or one of cause (since), or one of concession (though), or one of condition (if). In each case try to discover the precise relation, and translate the ablative and its participle by a clause which will best express the thought.

381. Rule. Ablative Absolute. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance.

   NOTE 1. The verb sum has no present participle. In consequence we often find two nouns or a noun and an adjective in the ablative absolute with no participle expressed; as, tē ducē, you (being) leader; with you as leader; patre iūnīmō, my father (being) weak.

   NOTE 2. Be very careful not to put in the ablative absolute a noun and participle that form the subject or object of a sentence. Compare

   a. The Gauls, having been conquered by Caesar, returned home
   b. The Gauls having been conquered by Caesar, the army returned home

In a the subject is The Gauls having been conquered by Caesar, and we translate,

Galli ā Caesare victī domum revertērunt
In b the subject is the army. *The Gauls having been conquered by Caesar* is nominative absolute in English, which requires the ablative absolute in Latin, and we translate,

**Gallis à Caesare victis exercitus domum revertit**

**Note 3.** The fact that only deponent verbs have a perfect active participle (cf. §375. a) often compels a change of voice when translating from one language to the other. For example, we can translate Caesar having encouraged the legions just as it stands, because horātio is a deponent verb. But if we wish to say Caesar having conquered the Gauls, we have to change the voice of the participle to the passive because vincō is not deponent, and say, the Gauls having been conquered by Caesar (see translation above).

**382. EXERCISES**


II. 1. He was unwilling, lest they prefer, they have wished. 2. You prefer, that they might be unwilling, they wish. 3. We wish, they had preferred, that he may prefer. 4. Cæsar, when he heard the rumor (*the rumor having been heard*), commanded (**imperāre**) the legions to advance more quickly. 5. Since Cæsar was leader, the men were willing to make the journey. 6. A few, terrified by the reports which they had heard, preferred to remain at home. 7. After these had been left behind, the rest hastened as quickly as possible. 8. After Cæsar had undertaken the business (*Cæsar, the business having been undertaken*), he was unwilling to delay longer.

1 Would the ablative absolute be correct here?  
2 Not longius. Why?
LESSON LXVIII

THE IRREGULAR VERB FĪŌ · THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

383. The verb fīō, be made, happen, serves as the passive of faciō, make, in the present system. The rest of the verb is formed regularly from faciō. Learn the principal parts and conjugation (§ 500). Observe that the i is long except before -er and in fit.

a. The compounds of faciō with prepositions usually form the passive regularly, as,

Active conficiō, conficere, confēcī, confectus
Passive conficior, confūcī, confectus sum

384. Observe the following sentences:

1. Terror erat tantus ut omnēs fugerent, the terror was so great that all fled.

2. Terror erat tantus ut non facile militēs sēsē recipèrent, the terror was so great that the soldiers did not easily recover themselves.

3. Terror fēcit ut omnēs fugerent, terror caused all to flee (lit. made that all fled).

a. Each of these sentences is complex, containing a principal clause and a subordinate clause.

b. The principal clause names a cause and the subordinate clause states the consequence or result of this cause.

c. The subordinate clause has its verb in the subjunctive, though it is translated like an indicative. The construction is called the subjunctive of consequence or result, and the clause is called a consecutive or result clause.

d. In the last example the clause of result is the object of the verb fēcit.

e. The conjunction introducing the consecutive or result clause is ut = so that; negative, ut non = so that not.

385. RULE. Subjunctive of Result. Consecutive clauses of result are introduced by ut or ut non and have the verb in the subjunctive.

386. RULE. Object clauses of result with ut or ut non are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about.

387. Purpose and Result Clauses Compared. There is great similarity in the expression of purpose and of result in Latin. If
the sentence is affirmative, both purpose and result clauses may be introduced by **ut**; but if the sentence is negative, the purpose clause has **né** and the result clause **ut non**. Result clauses are often preceded in the main clause by such words as **tam**, **ita**, **sic** (so), and these serve to point them out. Compare

*a. Tam graviter vulneratus est ut caperetur*  
*He was so severely wounded that he was captured*

*b. Graviter vulneratus est ut caperetur*  
*He was severely wounded in order that he might be captured*

Which sentence contains a result clause, and how is it pointed out?

### EXERCISES

I. 1. **Fiat, fier, ut fiat, fiēbāmus.**  
2. **Fiō, fiēs, ut fierent, fieri, fiunt.**  
3. **Fiētis, ut fiāmus, fis, fiēmus.**  
4. **Militēs erant tam tardi ut ante noctem in castra nōn perveniērent.**  
5. **Sōl facit ut omnia sint pulchra.**  
6. **Eius modi pericula erant ut nēmō proficiscī vellet.**  
7. **Equitēs hostium cum equitātū nostrō in itinere contendorunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus in partibus superiōrēs essent.**  
8. **Virtūs militum nostrōrum fēcit ut hostēs nē ūnum quidem impetum sustinērent.**  
9. **Hominēs erant tam audācēs ut nūllō modō continēri possent.**  
10. **Spatium erat tam parvum ut militēs tēla iacere nōn facile possent.**  
11. **Hōc proelīō factō barbarī ita perterrītī sunt ut ab ultimīs gentibus lēgātī ad Řaesonem mitterentur.**  
12. **Hōc proelium factum est nē lēgātī ad Řaesonem mitterentur.**

II. 1. It will happen, they were being made, that it may happen.  
2. It happens, he will be made, to happen.  
3. They are made, we were being made, lest it happen.  
4. The soldiers are so brave that they conquer.  
5. The soldiers are brave in order that they may conquer.  
6. The fortification was made so strong that it could not be taken.  
7. The fortification was made strong in order that it might not be taken.  
8. After the town was taken, the townsmen feared that they would be made slaves.  
9. What state is so weak that it is unwilling to defend itself?

1 **ita tamen**, with such a result however.  
2 **né ... quidem**, not even. The emphatic word is placed between.  
3 Ablative absolute.
LESSON LXIX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC OR DESCRIPTION
THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

389. Akin to the subjunctive of consequence or result is the use of the subjunctive in clauses of characteristic or description.

This construction is illustrated in the following sentences:

1. Quis est qui suam domum non amat? who is there who does not love his own home?

2. Erant qui hoc facere nollet, there were (some) who were unwilling to do this.

3. Tu non es qui amicos tradas, you are not such a one as to, or you are not the man to, betray your friends.

4. Nihil video quod timeam, I see nothing to fear (nothing of such a character as to fear it).

a. Each of these examples contains a descriptive relative clause which tells what kind of a person or thing the antecedent is. To express this thought the subjunctive is used. A relative clause that merely states a fact and does not describe the antecedent uses the indicative. Compare the sentences

Caesar is the man who is leading us, Caesar est qui nos ducit
(mere statement of fact, no description, with the indicative)
Caesar is the man to lead us, Caesar est qui nos ducat (descriptive relative clause with the subjunctive)

b. Observe that in this construction a demonstrative pronoun and a relative, as is qui, are translated such a one as to, the man to.

c. In which of the following sentences would you use the indicative and in which the subjunctive?

These are not the men who did this
These are not the men to do this

390. RULE. Subjunctive of Characteristic. A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the subjunctive of characteristic or description.
THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

391. Observe the sentences

1. Rōmānī Caesarem cōnsulem fēcērunt, the Romans made Cæsar consul.
2. Cæsar cōnsul ā Rōmānīs factus est, Cæsar was made consul by the Romans.

a. Observe in 1 that the transitive verb fēcērunt, made, has two objects: (1) the direct object, Caesarem; (2) a second object, cōnsulem, referring to the same person as the direct object and completing the predicate. The second accusative is called a Predicate Accusative.

b. Observe in 2 that when the verb is changed to the passive both of the accusatives become nominatives, the direct object becoming the subject and the predicate accusative the predicate nominative.

392. Rule. Two Accusatives. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, showing, and the like, may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives.

393. The verbs commonly found with two accusatives are

creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus, choose
appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus, call
nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvī, nōminātus
vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
facio, facere, feci, factus, make

394. EXERCISES

1. 1. In Germāniae silvis sunt multa genera ferārum quae reliquis in locis nōn visa sint. 2. Erant itinera duo quibus Helvētū domō discēdere possent. 3. Erat manus nūlla, nūllum oppidum, nūllum prae-sidium quod sē armis dēfenderet. 4. Tōtō frūmentō raptō, domī nihil erat quō mortem prohibēre possent. 5. Rōmāni Galbam ducem creāvērunt et summā celeritāte profectī sunt. 6. Neque erat tantae multitūdinis quisquam qui morāri vellet. 7. Germānī nōn īi sunt qui adventum Cæsaris vereantur. 8. Cōnsulibus occisis erant qui vel lent

1 Remember that when the verb sum precedes its subject it is translated there is, there are, there were, etc. 2 erant qui, there were (some) who. A wholly indefinite antecedent of qui does not need to be expressed.
CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE CONJUNCTION *CUM* 171
eum régem creáre. 9. Páce factà erat némô qui arma tràdere nóllet. 10. Inter Helvétios quis erat qui nóbilior ills esset?

II. 1. The Romans called the city Rome. 2. The city was called Rome by the Romans. 3. The better citizens wished to choose him king. 4. The brave soldier was not the man to run. 5. There was no one to call me friend. 6. These are not the men to betray their friends. 7. There were (some) who called him the bravest of all.

Eighth Review, Lessons LXI-LXIX, §§ 527-528

LESSON LXX

THE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE CONJUNCTION *CUM*

THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

395. The conjunction *cum* has the following meanings and constructions:

*cum* TEMPORAL = *when*, followed by the indicative or the subjunctive
*cum* CAUSAL = *since*, followed by the subjunctive
*cum* CONCESSIVE = *although*, followed by the subjunctive

As you observe, the mood after *cum* is sometimes indicative and sometimes subjunctive. The reason for this will be made clear by a study of the following sentences:

1. Caesarem vídī tum *cum* in Galliā eram, *I saw Cæsar at the time when I was in Gaul.*
2. Caesar in eós impetum fécit *cum* pácem pereat, *Cæsar made an attack upon them when they were seeking peace.*
3. Hoc erat difficile *cum* pauci sine vulneribus essent, *this was difficult, since only a few were without wounds.*
4. *Cum* prími órdines fügisserunt, tamen reliquí fortiter cónsistébant, *though the front ranks had fled, yet the rest bravely stood their ground.*

*a.* The underlying principle is one already familiar to you (cf. § 389. *a*). When the *cum* clause states a fact and simply *fixes the time* at which the main action took place, the indicative mood is used. So, in the first example, *cum in Galliā eram* fixes the time when *I saw Cæsar.*

1 A relative clause of characteristic or description.  2 See § 389. *b.*
THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

b. On the other hand, when the *cum* clause *describes the circumstances* under which the main act took place, the subjunctive mood is used. So, in the second example, the principal clause states that Caesar made an attack, and the *cum* clause describes the circumstances under which this act occurred. The idea of *time* is also present, but it is subordinate to the idea of *description*. Sometimes the descriptive clause is one of *cause* and we translate *cum* by *since*; sometimes it denotes *concession* and *cum* is translated *although*.

396. **Rule. Constructions with Cum.** The conjunction *cum* means *when, since, or although*. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means *when* and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place.

**Note.** *Cum* in clauses of description with the subjunctive is much more common than its use with the indicative.

397. Note the following sentences:

1. Oppidum erat parvum magnitūdine sed magnum multitūdine hominum, the town was small in size but great in population.
2. Homō erat corpore infirmus sed validus animō, the man was weak in body but strong in courage.

*a. Observe that* magnitūdine, multitūdine, corpore, and animō *tell in what respect something is true*. The relation is one covered by the ablative case, and the construction is called the *ablative of specification*.

398. **Rule. Ablative of Specification.** The ablative is used to denote *in what respect something is true*.

399. **Idioms**

*aliquem certīorem facere*, to inform some one (lit. to make some one more certain)

certior fieri, to be informed (lit. to be made more certain)

*iter dare*, to give a right of way, allow to pass

*obśides inter sē dare*, to give hostages to each other

400. **Exercises**

1. Helvētīi cum patrum nostrōrum tempore domō profecti essent, cōnsulis exercitum in fugam dederant. 2. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, Helvētīi aliōs agrōs petēbant. 3. Caesar cum in citeriōre Galliā esset, tamen dē Helvētiōrum cōnsiliis certior fīebat.

Observe in each case what mood follows cum, and try to give the reasons for its use. In the third sentence the cum clause is concessive, in the fourth and sixth causal.

II. 1. That battle was fought at the time when (tum cum) I was at Rome. 2. Though the horsemen were few in number, nevertheless they did not retreat. 3. When the camp had been sufficiently fortified, the enemy returned home. 4. Since the tribes are giving hostages to each other, we shall inform Caesar. 5. The Gauls and the Germans are very unlike in language and laws.

LESSON LXXI

VOCABULARY REVIEW • THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

THE PREDICATE GENITIVE

401. Review the word lists in §§ 510, 511.

402. The Gerund. Suppose we had to translate the sentence

By overcoming the Gauls Caesar won great glory

We can see that overcoming here is a verbal noun corresponding to the English infinitive in -ing, and that the thought calls for the ablative of means. To translate this by the Latin infinitive would be impossible, because the infinitive is indeclinable and therefore has no ablative case form. Latin, however, has another verbal noun of corresponding meaning, called the gerund, declined as a neuter of the second declension in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular, and thus supplying the cases that the infinitive lacks.¹ Hence, to

¹ Sometimes, however, the infinitive is used as an accusative.
The gerund is used in Latin to express actions, states, or conditions. It is formed by adding the suffixes -ndi, -ndo, -ndum, -ndo, to the present stem of a verb. For example, the gerund of "overcome" is "superandī", meaning the state of being overcome. The gerund is used like a noun in Latin, and it governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived.

403. The gerund is formed by adding -ndi, -ndo, -ndum, -ndo, to the present stem, which is shortened or otherwise changed, as shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJ. I</th>
<th>CONJ. II</th>
<th>CONJ. III</th>
<th>CONJ. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. amandī</td>
<td>monendī</td>
<td>regendī</td>
<td>capiendī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. amandō</td>
<td>monendō</td>
<td>regendō</td>
<td>capiendō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. amandum</td>
<td>monendum</td>
<td>regendum</td>
<td>capiendum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. amandō</td>
<td>monendō</td>
<td>regendō</td>
<td>capiendō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Give the gerund of cărō, dēleō, sūmō, iaciō, veniō.
b. Deponent verbs have the gerund of the active voice (see § 493). Give the gerund of cōnor, vereor, sequor, patior, partior.

404. The gerundive. The gerundive is the name given to the future passive participle (§ 374. d) when the participle approaches the meaning of a verbal noun and is translated like a gerund. It is the adjective corresponding to the gerund. For example, to translate the plan of waging war, we may use the gerund with its direct object and say consilium gerendi bellum; or we may use the gerundive and say consilium belli gerendi, which means, literally, the plan of the war to be waged, but which came to have the same force as the gerund with its object, and was even preferred to it.

1 The gerund is the neuter singular of the future passive participle used as a noun, and has the same formation. (Cf. § 374. d.)
405. Compare the following parallel uses of the gerund and gerundive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GERUND</th>
<th>GERUNDIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Spēs faciendi pācem</td>
<td>Spēs faciendae pācis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The hope of making peace</td>
<td>The hope of making peace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Locus idōneus pugnandō</td>
<td>Locus idōneus castris pōnendīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A place suitable for fighting</td>
<td>A place suitable for pitching camp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Mīsit equītēs ad īnsequeundum</td>
<td>Mīsit equītēs ad īnsequeundōs hostīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He sent horsemen to pursue</td>
<td>He sent horsemen to pursue the enemy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Nārrandō fābulās magister</td>
<td>Nārrandīs fābulīs magister puerīs placuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerīs placuit</td>
<td>The teacher pleased the boys by telling stories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The teacher pleased the boys</td>
<td>The teacher pleased the boys by telling stories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by telling stories</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. We observe

(1) That the gerund is a noun and the gerundive an adjective.
(2) That the gerund, being a noun, may stand alone or with an object.
(3) That the gerundive, being an adjective, is used only in agreement with a noun.

406. Rule. Gerund and Gerundive. 1. The Gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns.

2. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual.

407. Rule. Gerund or Gerundive of Purpose. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with ad, or the genitive with causā¹ (= for the sake of), is used to express purpose.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GERUND</th>
<th>GERUNDIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ad audiendum vēnērunt or</td>
<td>Ad urbem vidēndam vēnērunt or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audiendi causā vēnērunt</td>
<td>Urbis videndae causā vēnērunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They came to hear</td>
<td>They came to see the city</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ causā always follows the genitive.
THE PREDICATE GENITIVE

Note. These sentences might, of course, be written with the subjunctive of purpose,—vēnērunt ut aŭdiērent; vēnērunt ut urbem vidērent. In short expressions, however, the gerund and gerundive of purpose are rather more common.

408. We have learned that the word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive, as, equus Galbae, Galba’s horse. If, now, we wish to express the idea the horse is Galba’s, Galba remains the possessor, and hence in the genitive as before, but now stands in the predicate, as, equus est Galbae. Hence this is called the predicate genitive.

409. Rule. Predicate Genitive. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of sum, and is then called the predicate genitive.

410. IDIOMS

alicui negōtium dare, to employ some one (lit. to give business to some one)

novis rēbus studēre, to be eager for a revolution (lit. to be eager for new things)

reī mīlitāris perītissimus, very skillful in the art of war

sē suaque omnīa, themselves and all their possessions

411. EXERCISES


1 Predicate genitive. 2 Which of these expressions is gerund and which gerundive?
II. 1. These ornaments 1 belong to Cornelia. 2. Men very skilful in the art of war were sent 3 to capture the town. 4. The scouts found a hill suitable for fortifying very near to the river. 5. Soon the cavalry will come 3 to seek supplies. 5. The mind of the Gauls is eager for revolution and for undertaking wars. 6. To lead the line of battle 4 belongs to the general. 7. 5 Whom shall we employ to look after the grain supply?

LESSON LXXII

THE IRREGULAR VERB Eō. INDIRECT STATEMENTS

412. Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of eō, go (§ 499).

a. Notice that ĕ-, the root of eō, is changed to e- before a vowel, excepting in iēns, the nominative of the present participle. In the perfect system -v- is regularly dropped.

413. Learn the meaning and principal parts of the following compounds of eō with prepositions:

ad’eō, adī’re, adī’ii, adī’tus, go to, visit, with the accusative
ex’eō, exī’re, exī’ii, exī’tus, go forth, with ex or dē and the ablative of the place from which
in’eō, inī’re, inī’ii, inī’tus, begin, enter upon, with the accusative
red’eō, redī’re, redī’ii, redī’tus, return, with ad or in and the accusative of the place to which
trans’eō, transī’re, transī’ii, transī’tus, cross, with the accusative

414. Indirect Statements in English. Direct statements are those which the speaker or writer makes himself or which are quoted in his exact language. Indirect statements are those reported in a different form of words from that used by the speaker or writer. Compare the following direct and indirect statements:

Direct statements

1. The Gauls are brave
2. The Gauls were brave
3. The Gauls will be brave

1 belong to = are of. 2 Use the gerundive with ad. 3 Use the genitive with causā. Where should causā stand? 4 Compare the first sentence. 5 Compare the second sentence in the Latin above.
INDIRECT STATEMENTS

Indirect statements

1. He says that the Gauls are brave
2. He says that the Gauls were brave
3. He says that the Gauls will be brave

Indirect statements

1. He said that the Gauls were brave
2. He said that the Gauls had been brave
3. He said that the Gauls would be brave

We see that in English

a. The indirect statement forms a clause introduced by the conjunction that.

b. The verb is finite (cf. § 173) and its subject is in the nominative.

c. The tenses of the verbs originally used are changed after the past tense, He said.

415. Indirect Statements in Latin. In Latin the direct and indirect statements above would be as follows:

**Direct Statements**

1. Galli sunt fortés
2. Galli erant fortés
3. Galli erunt fortés

**Indirect Statements**

1. Dicit or Dixit Gallós esse fortís (He says or He said the Gauls to be brave)¹
2. Dicit or Dixit Gallós fuisse fortís (He says or He said the Gauls to have been brave)¹
3. Dicit or Dixit Gallós futūrōs esse fortís (He says or He said the Gauls to be about to be brave)¹

Comparing these Latin indirect statements with the English in the preceding section, we observe three marked differences:

a. There is no conjunction corresponding to that.

b. The verb is in the infinitive and its subject is in the accusative.

c. The tenses of the infinitive are not changed after a past tense of the principal verb.

416. Rule. Indirect Statements. When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive.

¹ These parenthetical renderings are not inserted as translations, but merely to show the literal meaning of the Latin.
417. Tenses of the Infinitive. When the sentences in § 415 were changed from the direct to the indirect form of statement, sunt became esse, erant became fuisse, and erunt became futūrōs esse.

418. Rule. Infinitive Tenses in Indirect Statements. A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive.

Note. When translating into Latin an English indirect statement, first decide what tense of the indicative would have been used in the direct form. That will show you what tense of the infinitive to use in the indirect.

419. Rule. Verbs followed by Indirect Statements. The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving.

420. Verbs regularly followed by indirect statements are:

a. Verbs of saying and telling:
   dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus, say
   negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus, deny, say not
   nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus, announce
   respondeō, respondēre, respondi, responsus, reply

b. Verbs of knowing:
   cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn, (in the perf.) know
   scio, scire, scivī, scitus, know

c. Verbs of thinking:
   arbitror, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum, think, consider
   exīstimō, exīstimāre, exīstimāvī, exīstimātus, think, believe
   iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus, judge, decide
   putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, reckon, think
   spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus, hope

d. Verbs of perceiving:
   audīō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, hear
   sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, perceive
   videō, vidēre, vidi, visus, see
   intellegō, intellegere, intellexī, intellectus, understand, perceive

Learn such of these verbs as are new to you.
EXERCISES

IDIOMS

postrídiē eius diēī, on the next day (lit. on the next day of that day)
initā aestāte, at the beginning of summer
memoriā tenēre, to remember (lit. to hold by memory)
per explōrātōrēs cognōscere, to learn through scouts

EXERCISES


II. 1. The boy is slow. He says that the boy is, was, (and) will be slow. 2. The horse is, has been, (and) will be strong. He judged that the horse was, had been, (and) would be strong. 3. We think that the army will go forth from the camp at the beginning of summer. 4. The next day we learned through scouts that the enemy’s town was ten miles off. 5. The king replied that the ornaments belonged to the queen.

1 to be off, to be distant, abesse. 2 Latin, were of (§ 409).
LESSON LXXIII

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE IRREGULAR VERB FERŌ
THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

423. Review the word lists in §§ 513, 514.

424. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of the verb ferō, bear (§ 498).
   1. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of ferō, bear:

   ad'ferō, adfer're, at'tulī, adlā'itus, bring to; report
   cōn'ferō, cōnfer're, con'tulī, conlā'itus, bring together, collect
   dē'ferō, défer're, dē'tulī, dēlā'itus, bring to; report; grant, confer
   in'ferō, infer're, in'tulī, inlā'itus, bring in, bring against
   re'ferō, refer're, ret'tulī, relā'itus, bear back; report

425. The dative is the case of the indirect object. Many intransitive verbs take an indirect object and are therefore used with the dative (cf. § 153). Transitive verbs take a direct object in the accusative; but sometimes they have an indirect object or dative as well. The whole question, then, as to whether or not a verb takes the dative, depends upon its capacity for governing an indirect object. A number of verbs, some transitive and some intransitive, which in their simple form would not take an indirect object, when compounded with certain prepositions, have a meaning which calls for an indirect object. Observe the following sentences:

1. Haec rēs exercituī magnam calamitātem attulit, this circumstance brought great disaster to the army.
2. Germānī Gallīs bellum īnferunt, the Germans make war upon the Gauls.
3. Hae cōpiāe proeliō nōn īntererant, these troops did not take part in the battle.
4. Equītēs fugientibus hostibus occurrunt, the horsemen meet the fleeing enemy.
5. Galba cōpiūs filium praefēcit, Galba put his son in command of the troops.
THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

In each sentence there is a dative, and in each a verb combined with a preposition. In no case would the simple verb take the dative.

426. Rule. Dative with Compounds. Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.

Note 1. Among such verbs are

adferō, adfer're, at'uli, adlā'tus, bring to; report
ad'sum, ades'se, ad'fui, adfutū'rus, assist; be present
dēferō, dēfer're, dē'tuli, dēlā'tus, report; grant, confer
dē'sum, dees'se, dē'fui, ——, be wanting, be lacking
inferō, infer're, in'tuli, inlā'tus, bring against, bring upon
inter'sum, interes'se, inter'fui, interfutū'rus, take part in
occurrō, occurr'e, occurr'i, occur'sus, run against, meet
praefic'iō, praefi'cere, praefē'cī, praefec'tus, appoint over, place
in command of
praes'um, praees'se, praef'fui, ——, be over, be in command

427. Idioms

graviter or molestē ferre, to be annoyed at, to be indignant
at, followed by the accusative and infinitive
sē conferre ad or in, with the accusative, to betake one's self to
alicui bellum inferre, to make war upon some one
pedem referre, to retreat (lit. to bear back the foot)

428. Exercises


1 But the accusative with ad or in is used with some of these, when the idea of motion to or against is strong.

II. 1. The Gauls will make war upon Cāser’s allies. 2. We heard that the Gauls would make war upon Cāser’s allies. 3. Publius did not take part in that battle. 4. We have been informed that Publius did not take part in that battle. 5. The man who was in command of the cavalry was wounded and began to retreat. 6. Cāser did not place you in command of the cohort to bring disaster upon the army.

LESSON: LXXIV

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

429. Review the word lists in §§ 517, 518.

430. When we report a statement instead of giving it directly, we have an indirect statement. (Cf. § 414.) So, if we report a question instead of asking it directly, we have an indirect question.

DIRECT QUESTION

Who conquered the Gauls?

Indirect Question

He asked who conquered the Gauls

a. An indirect question depends, usually as object, upon a verb of asking (as petō, postulō, quaeerō, rogō) or upon some verb or expression of saying or mental action. (Cf. § 420.)

431. Compare the following direct and indirect questions:

DIRECT

Quis Gallōs vincit?

Who is conquering the Gauls?

INDIRECT

\{a. Rogat quis Gallōs vincat

\quad He asks who is conquering the Gauls

\quad He asks who was conquering the Gauls

b. Rogāvit quis Gallōs vinceret

\quad He asked who was conquering the Gauls

1 Observe that when adferō denotes motion to, it is not followed by the dative; cf. footnote, p. 182. 2 Not the infinitive. (Cf. § 352.)
Ubi est Rōma?
Where is Rome?

Caesārne Gallōs vīcit?
Did Cæsar conquer the Gauls?

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{a. Rogat ubi sit Rōma} \quad \text{He asks where Rome is} \\
&\text{b. Rogāvit ubi esset Rōma} \quad \text{He asked where Rome was}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{a. Rogat num Caesar Gallōs vīcerit} \quad \text{He asks whether Cæsar conquered} \\
&\text{the Gauls} \\
&\text{b. Rogāvit num Caesar Gallōs vīcisset} \quad \text{He asked whether Cæsar had con-} \\
&\text{quered the Gauls}
\end{align*}
\]

\( a. \) The verb in a direct question is in the indicative mood, but the mood is subjunctive in an indirect question.

\( b. \) The tense of the subjunctive follows the rules for tense sequence.

\( c. \) Indirect questions are introduced by the same interrogative words as introduce direct questions, excepting that yes-or-no direct questions (cf. § 210) on becoming indirect are usually introduced by num, whether.

432. Rule. Indirect Questions. In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence.

433. Idioms

dē tertiā vigiliā, about the third watch
inīuriās alicui īnferre, to inflict injuries upon some one
facere verba prō, with the ablative, to speak in behalf of
in reliquum tempūs, for the future

434. Exercises

1. Rēx rogāvit quid lēgātī postulārent et cūr ad sē vēnissent.
2. Quaesivit quoque num nec recentīs inīuriās nec dubiam Rōmānō-
rum amīcitiam memoriā tenērent. 3. Vidētisne quae oppida hostēs
oppugnāverint? 4. Nōnne scītis cūr Gallī sub montem sēsē contu-
lerint? 5. Audīvimus quās inīuriās tībi Germānī īntulissent. 6. Dē
tertiā vigiliā imperātor mīsit hominēs qui cognōscerent quae esset
nātūra montis. 7. Prō his ōrātor verba fēcit et rogāvit cūr cōnsulēs
nāvis ad plēnum summī perīculī locum mittēre vellent. 8. Lēgātīs
convocātīs dēmōnstrāvīt quid fieri vēllet. 9. Nūntius referēbat quid
in Gallōrum conciliō dē armīs trādendīs dictum esset. 10. Moneō nē in reliquam tempus pedītēs et equītēs trāns flūmen dūcās.

II. 1. What hill did they seize? I see what hill they seized. 2. Who has inflicted these injuries upon our dependents? 3. They asked who had inflicted those injuries upon their dependents. 4. Whither did you go about the third watch? You know whither I went. 5. At what time did the boys return home? I will ask at what time the boys returned home.

LESSON LXXV

VOCABULARY REVIEW . THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE, OR END FOR WHICH

435. Review the word lists in §§ 521, 522.

436. Observe the following sentences:

1. Explōrātōrēs locum castrīs dēlēgerunt, the scouts chose a place for a camp.

2. Hoc erat magnō impedīmentō Gallis, this was (for) a great hindrance to the Gauls.

3. Duās legiōnēs praesidiō castrīs reliquit, he left two legions as (lit. for) a guard to the camp.

In each of these sentences we find a dative expressing the purpose or end for which something is intended or for which it serves. These datives are castrīs, impedīmentō, and praesidiō. In the second and third sentences we find a second dative expressing the person or thing affected (Gallis and castrīs). As you notice, these are true datives, covering the relations of for which and to which. (Cf. § 43.)

437. Rule. Dative of Purpose or End. The dative is used to denote the purpose or end for which, often with another dative denoting the person or thing affected.

438. IDIOMS

cōnsilium ommittere, to give up a plan
locum castrīs dēligere, to choose a place for a camp
alicui magnō ūsui esse, to be of great advantage to some one (lit. for great advantage to some one)
EXERCISES


II. 1. I advise you ¹ to give up the plan ² of making war upon the brave Gauls. 2. Do you know ³ where the cavalry has chosen a place for a camp? 3. The fear of the enemy will be of great advantage to you. 4. Cæsar left three cohorts as (for) a guard to the baggage. 5. In winter the waves of the lake are so great ⁴ that they are (for) a great hindrance to ships. 6. Cæsar inflicted severe ⁵ punishment on those who burned the public buildings.

LESSON LXXVI

VOCABULARY REVIEW • THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR DESCRIPTION

440. Review the word lists in §§ 524, 525.

441. Observe the English sentences

(1) A man of great courage, or (2) A man with great courage
(3) A forest of tall trees, or (4) A forest with tall trees

Each of these sentences contains a phrase of quality or description. In the first two a man is described; in the last two a forest. The descriptive phrases are introduced by the prepositions of and with.

¹ Subjunctive of purpose. (Cf. § 366.) ² Express by the genitive of the gerundive. ³ Indirect question. ⁴ A clause of result. ⁵ Gravis, -e.
In Latin the expression of quality or description is very similar. The prepositions of and with suggest the genitive and the ablative respectively, and we translate the sentences above

(1) Vir magnae virtūtis, or (2) Vir magnā virtūte
(3) Silva altārum arborum, or (4) Silva altīs arboribus

There is, however, one important difference between the Latin and the English. In English we may say, for example, a man of courage, using the descriptive phrase without an adjective modifier. In Latin, however, an adjective modifier must always be used, as above.

a. Latin makes a distinction between the use of the two cases in that numerical descriptions of measure are in the genitive and descriptions of physical characteristics are in the ablative. Other descriptive phrases may be in either case.

442. **EXAMPLES**

1. Fossa duodecim pedum, a ditch of twelve feet.
2. Homō magnīs pedibus et parvō capite, a man with big feet and a small head.
3. Rēx erat vir summā audāciā or rēx erat vir summae audāciae, the king was a man of the greatest boldness.

443. **Rule.** Genitive of Description. *Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective.*

444. **Rule.** Ablative of Description. *Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective.*

445. **Rule.** Genitive or Ablative of Description. *Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective.*

446. **Idioms**

Helvētiīs in animō est, the Helvetii intend (āt. it is in mind to the Helvetians)
in mātrimōniūm dare, to give in marriage
nihil posse, to have no power
fossam perdūcere, to construct a ditch (āt. to lead a ditch through)

II. 1. Caesār was a general of much wisdom and great boldness, and very skillful in the art of war. 2. The Germans were of great size, and thought that the Romans had no power. 3. Men of the highest courage were left in the camp as (for) a guard to the baggage. 4. The king’s daughter, who was given in marriage to the chief of a neighboring state, was a woman of very beautiful appearance. 5. The soldiers will construct a ditch of nine feet around the camp. 6. A river of great width was between us and the enemy.

1 From vis. (Cf. § 468.) 2 Genitives and ablatives of description are adjectīve phrases. When we use an adverbial phrase to tell how long or how high or how deep anything is, we must use the accusative of extent. (Cf. § 336.) For example, in the sentence above multa milia passuum is an adverbial phrase (accusative of extent) modifying longam. If we should omit longam and say a fortification of many miles, the genitive of description (an adjective phrase) modifying mūnitionem would be used, as mūnitionem multōrum milium passuum.
LESSON LXXVII

REVIEW OF AGREEMENT, AND OF THE GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ACCUSATIVE

448. There are four agreements:

1. That of the predicate noun or of the appositive with the noun to which it belongs (§§ 76, 81).
2. That of the adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle with its noun (§ 65).
3. That of a verb with its subject (§ 28).
4. That of a relative pronoun with its antecedent (§ 224).

449. The relation expressed by the genitive is, in general, denoted in English by the preposition of. It is used to express

1. Possession
   a. As attributive (§ 38).
   b. In the predicate (§ 409).

2. The whole of which a part is taken (partitive genitive) (§ 331).
3. Quality or description (§§ 443, 445).

450. The relation expressed by the dative is, in general, denoted in English by the prepositions to or for when they do not imply motion through space. It is used to express

   a. With intransitive verbs and with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object in the accusative (§ 45).

1. The indirect object
   b. With special intransitive verbs (§ 154).
   c. With verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super (§ 426).

2. The object to which the quality of an adjective is directed (§ 143).
3. The purpose, or end for which, often with a second dative denoting the person or thing affected (§ 437).
451. The **accusative** case corresponds, in general, to the English objective. It is used to express

1. The direct object of a transitive verb (§ 37).
2. The predicate accusative together with the direct object after verbs of *making, choosing, calling, showing*, and the like (§ 392).
3. The subject of the infinitive (§ 214).
4. The object of prepositions that do not govern the ablative (§ 340).
5. The duration of time and the extent of space (§ 336).
6. The place to which (§§ 263, 266).

452. **EXERCISES**


II. 1. One of the king’s sons and many of his men were captured. 2. There was no one who wished to appoint her queen. 3. The grain supply was always a care (for a care) to Caesar, the general. 4. I think that the camp is ten miles distant. 5. We marched for three hours through a very dense forest. 6. The plan of making war upon the allies was not pleasing to the king. 7. When he came to the hill he fortified it by a twelve-foot wall.

---

1 What is the force of quam with superlatives? 2 *urban* or *oppidum*, appositive to a name of a town, takes a preposition. 3 What construction is used with numerals in preference to the partitive genitive? 4 What mood? (Cf. § 350.) 5 Use the gerund or gerundive. 6 Latin, by a wall of twelve feet.
LESSON LXXVIII

REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE

453. The relations of the ablative are, in general, expressed in English by the prepositions with (or by), from (or by), and in (or at). The constructions growing out of these meanings are

I. Ablative rendered with (or by):
   1. Cause (§ 102).
   2. Means (§ 103)
   3. Accompaniment (§ 104)
   4. Manner (§ 105)
   5. Measure of difference (§ 317)
   6. With a participle (ablative absolute) (§ 381)
   7. Description or quality (§§ 444, 445)
   8. Specification (§ 398)

II. Ablative rendered from (or by):
   1. Place from which (§§ 179, 264)
   2. Ablative of separation (§ 180)
   3. Personal agent with a passive verb (§ 181)
   4. Comparison without quam (§ 309)

III. Ablative rendered in (or at):
   1. Place at or in which (§§ 265, 266)
   2. Time when or within which (§ 275)

454. EXERCISES

I. 1. Galli locis superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. 2. Omnēs oppidānī ex oppidō ēgressī salūtem fugā petēre incēpērunt. 3. Caesar docet sē mīlitum vitam suā salūte habēre multō cāriōrem. 4. Ĉum celerius omnium opiniōne pervēnisset, hostēs ad eum obsidēs misērunt. 5. Vicus in valle positus montibus altissimīs undique continētur. 6. Plūrimum inter Gallōs haec gēns et virtūte et hominum numerō valēbat. 7. Secundā vigiliā nūlō certō ōrdine neque imperiō ē castrīs ēgressī sunt. 8. Duābus legiōnibus Genāvae relictīs,

II. 1. The lieutenant after having seized the mountain restrained his (men) from battle. 2. All the Gauls differ from each other in laws. 3. This tribe is much braver than the rest. 4. This road is ten miles shorter than that. 5. In summer Cāesār carried on war in Gaul, in winter he returned to Italy. 6. At midnight the general set out from the camp with three legions. 7. I fear that you cannot protect yourself from these enemies. 8. After this battle was finished peace was made by all the Gauls.

LESSON LXXIX

REVIEW OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE, THE INFINITIVE, AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE

455. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns (§§ 402, 406.1).

456. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual (§ 406.2).

457. The infinitive is used:

I. As in English.

a. As subject or predicate nominative (§ 216).
b. To complete the predicate with verbs of incomplete predication (complementary infinitive) (§ 215).
c. As object with subject accusative after verbs of wishing, commending, forbidding, and the like (§ 213).

1 longius, too far. (Cf. § 305.) 2 Latin, by ten thousands of paces.
3 dēfendere. 4 Ablative absolute.
II. In the principal sentence of an indirect statement after verbs of *saying* and *mental action*. The subject is in the accusative (§§ 416, 418, 419).

458. The subjunctive is used:
1. To denote purpose (§§ 349, 366, 372).
2. To denote consequence or result (§§ 385, 386).
3. In relative clauses of characteristic or description (§ 390).
4. In *cum* clauses of time, cause, and concession (§ 396).
5. In indirect questions (§ 432).

459.

**EXERCISES**


II. 1. Do you not see who is standing on the wall? 2. We hear that the plan of taking the town has been given up. 3. Since the Germans thought that the Romans could not cross the Rhine, Cæsar ordered a bridge to be made. 4. When the bridge was finished, the savages were so terrified that they hid themselves. 5. They feared that Cæsar would pursue them. 6. Cæsar 1 asked the traders what the size of the island was. 7. The traders advised him not 2 to cross the sea. 8. He sent scouts 3 to choose a place for a camp.

1 *quaerere* ab.  2 *Not infinitive*.  3 *Use the gerundive with ad.*
READING MATTER

INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS

How to Translate. You have already had considerable practice in translating simple Latin, and have learned that the guide to the meaning lies in the endings of the words. If these are neglected, no skill can make sense of the Latin. If they are carefully noted and accurately translated, not many difficulties remain. Observe the following suggestions:

1. Read the Latin sentence through to the end, noting endings of nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc.
2. Read it again and see if any of the words you know are nominatives or accusatives. This will often give you what may be called the backbone of the sentence; that is, subject, verb, and object.
3. Look up the words you do not know, and determine their use in the sentence from their endings.
4. If you cannot yet translate the sentence, put down the English meanings of all the words in the same order as the Latin words. You will then generally see through the meaning of the sentence.
5. Be careful to
   a. Translate adjectives with the nouns to which they belong.
   b. Translate together prepositions and the nouns which they govern.
   c. Translate adverbs with the words that they modify.
   d. Make sense. If you do not make sense, you have made a mistake. One mistake will spoil a whole sentence.
6. When the sentence is correctly translated, read the Latin over again, and try to understand it as Latin, without thinking of the English translation.
The Parts of a Sentence. You will now meet somewhat longer sentences than you have had before. To assist in translating them, remember, first of all, that every sentence conveys a meaning and either tells us something, asks a question, or gives a command. Every sentence must have a subject and a verb, and the verb may always have an adverb, and, if transitive, will have a direct object.

However long a sentence is, you will usually be able to recognize its subject, verb, and object or predicate complement without any difficulty. These will give you the leading thought, and they must never be lost sight of while making out the rest of the sentence. The chief difficulty in translating arises from the fact that instead of a single adjective, adverb, or noun, we often have a phrase or a clause taking the place of one of these; for Latin, like English, has adjective, adverbial, and substantive clauses and phrases. For example, in the sentence *The idle boy does not study*, the word *idle* is an adjective. In *The boy wasting his time does not study*, the words *wasting his time* form an adjective phrase modifying *boy*. In the sentence *The boy who wastes his time does not study*, the words *who wastes his time* form an adjective clause modifying *boy*, and the sentence is complex. These sentences would show the same structure in Latin.

In translating, it is important to keep the parts of a phrase and the parts of a clause together and not let them become confused with the principal sentence. To distinguish between the subordinate clauses and the principal sentence is of the first importance, and is not difficult if you remember that a clause regularly contains a word that marks it as a clause and that this word usually stands first. These words join clauses to the words they depend on, and are called subordinate conjunctions. They are not very numerous, and you will soon learn to recognize them. In Latin they are the equivalents for such words as *when, while, since, because, if, before, after, though, in order that, that*, etc. Form the habit of memorizing the Latin subordinate conjunctions as you meet them, and of noting carefully the mood of the verb in the clauses which they introduce.
HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS

THE LABORS OF HERCULES

Hercules, a Greek hero celebrated for his great strength, was pursued throughout his life by the hatred of Juno. While yet an infant he strangled some serpents sent by the goddess to destroy him. During his boyhood and youth he performed various marvelous feats of strength, and on reaching manhood he succeeded in delivering the Thebans from the oppression of the Minyae. In a fit of madness, sent upon him by Juno, he slew his own children; and, on consulting the Delphic oracle as to how he should cleanse himself from this crime, he was ordered to submit himself for twelve years to Eurytheus, king of Tiryns, and to perform whatever tasks were appointed him. Hercules obeyed the oracle, and during the twelve years of his servitude accomplished twelve extraordinary feats known as the Labors of Hercules. His death was caused, unintentionally, by his wife Deianira. Hercules had shot with his poisoned arrows a centaur named Nessus, who had insulted Deianira. Nessus, before he died, gave some of his blood to Deianira, and told her it would act as a charm to secure her husband’s love. Some time after, Deianira, wishing to try the charm, soaked one of her husband’s garments in the blood, not knowing that it was poisoned. Hercules put on the robe, and, after suffering terrible torments, died, or was carried off by his father Jupiter.

LI.1 THE INFANT HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS

Dr² grave supplicium sumunt de malis, sed ii qui legibus³ deorum parent, etiam post mortem curantur. Illa vita dis² erat gratissima quae hominibus miseris utilissima fuerat. Omnium autem praemiorum summum erat immortalitas. Illud praemium Herculi datum est.

Herculis pater fuit Iuppiter, mater Alcmena, et omnium hominum validissimus suisse dicitur. Sed Iuno, regina deorum, eum, adhuc

1 This number refers to the lesson after which the selection may be read.
2 Dī and dis are from deus. Cf. § 468.
Infantem, interficere studēbat; nam ei\(^1\) et\(^2\) Herculēs et Alcmena erant invisī. Itaque misit duas serpentis, utramque saevissimam, quae mediam noctem domum\(^3\) Alcmenae vēnērunt. Ibi Herculēs, cum frātre suō, nōn in lectulō sed in scūtō ingenti dormīēbat. Iam audācēs serpentēs adpropinquāverant, iam scūtum movēbant. Tum frāter, terrōre comōtus, magnā voce mātre vocāvit, sed Herculēs ipse, fortior quam frāter, statim ingenti serpentīs manibus suis rapuit et interfēcit.

**LIV. HERCULES CONQUERS THE MINYÆ**


**HE COMMITS A CRIME AND GOES TO THE DELPHIAN ORACLE TO SEEK EXPIATION**

Post hoc proelium Creōn rēx, tantā victoriā laetus, filiam suam Herculī in mātrimōnium dedit. Thēbis Herculēs cum uxōre suā diū vivēbat et ab omnibus magnopere amābātur; sed post multōs annōs subitō\(^8\) in furōrem incidit et ipse suā manū liberōs suōs interfēcit. Post breve tempus\(^9\) ad sānitātem reductus tantum scelus expiāre cupiēbat et cōstituit ad ōrāculum Delphicūm iter facere. Hoc autem ōrāculum erat omnium clārissimum. Ibi sedēbat fémina quaedam quae Pỳthia appellābātur. Ea cōnsilium dabat īs qui ad ōrāculum veniēbant.

\(^{1}\) *ei*, to her, referring to Juno.  
\(^{2}\) *et . . . et, both . . . and.*  
\(^{3}\) *domum,* § 501. 20.  
\(^{4}\) *ā puerō,* from boyhood.  
\(^{5}\) *vīrēs,* from vis. Cf. § 468.  
\(^{6}\) *Thēbis,* § 501. 36. 1.  
\(^{7}\) *coegīt,* from cōgō.  
\(^{8}\) *in furōrem incidit,* went mad.  
\(^{9}\) *ad sānitātem reductus,* lit. *led back to sanity.* What in good English?
LV. HERCULES BECOMES SUBJECT TO EURYSTHEUS

HE STRANGLES THE NEME'AN LION

Itaque Herculês Pythiae tōtam rem dēmōnstrāvit nec scelus suum abdidit. Ubi iam Herculês finem fēcit, Pythia iussit eum ad urbem Tirynthā discēdere et ibi rēgī Eurystheō sēsē committere. Quae ubi audīvit, Herculês ad illam urbem statim contendit et Eurystheō sē in servītūtem trādidit et dīxit, "Quid prīnum, Ō rēx, mē facere iūbēs?"

HERCULES LEONEM SUPERAT

SLAYING THE LERNÉAN HYDRA

"et pārēbō imperiō tuō." Tum in silvās in quibus leō habitābat statim iter fecit. Mox feram vidit et plūris impetus fecit; fruṣtrā tamen, quod neque sagittis neque ūlō aliō tēlō mōnstrum vulnerāre potuit. Dēnique Herculēs saevum leōnem sui ingressus bracchiis rapuit et faucis eius omnibus viribus compressit. Hóc modō brevi tempore eum interfecit. Tum corpus leōnis ad oppidum in umeris reportāvit et pellem postea prō veste gerēbat. Omnēs autem qui eam regionem incolvēbant, ubi fāmam dē morte leōnis ingressis accēpērunt, erant laetissimi et Herculēm laudābant verbis amplissimis.

LV. SLAYING THE LERNÉAN HYDRA


LVI. THE ARCADIAN STAG AND THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR

Postquam Eurystheō mors Hydrae nūntiāta est, summus terror animīm eius occupāvit. Itaque iussit Herculēm capere et ad sē reportāre cervum quendam; nam minimē culpīvit tantum virum in regnō suo tenēre. Hic autem cervus dicēbātur aurea cornua et pedēs multō celeriōrēs ventō habēre. Primum Herculēs vestigia animālis petivit, deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vidit, omnibus viribus currere incēpit. Per plūrīmos dies contendit nec noctū cessāvit. Dēnique postquam per

---

1 imperiō, § 501. 14. 2 prō, for, instead of. 3 Iolāō, abl. of I-o-lē'us, the hero's best friend. 4 Note the emphatic position of this adjective. 5 Quod ubi, when he saw this, another instance of the connecting relative. Cf. p. 199, l. 3. 6 multō, § 501. 27. 7 ventō, § 501. 34.
Cleansing the Augean Stables

Totum annum cucurrerat — ita dicitur — cervum iam defessum cepit et ad Eurystheum portavit.

Tum vero iussus est Herculès aprum quendam capere qui illō tempore agrōs Erymanthiōs vastābat et hominēs illius loci magnopere perterrēbat. Herculēs laetē negōtium suscepit et in Arcadiam celeriter se recēpit. Ibi mox aprum repperit. Ille autem, simul atque Herculēs vidit, statim quam célerrimē fugit et metū perterritus in fossam altam sēsē abdīdit. Herculēs tamen summa cum difficultāte eum extrāxit, nec aper ullō modō sēsē liberāre potuit, et vivus ad Eurystheum portātus est.

LVIII. HERCULES CLEANS THE AUGEAN STABLES AND KILLS THE STYMPHALIAN BIRDS


Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphalēum iter fēcit; nam Eurystheus iussērat eum avis Stymphālion occiderē. Hae avēs rostra ferrea habēbant et hominēs miserōs devorābant. Ille, postquam ad locum pervēnit, lacum vidit in quo avēs incolēbant. Nullo tamen modō Herculēs avibus adpropinquāre potuit; lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed e limo cōnstitit. Dēnique autem avēs dē aliqua causā perterritae in aurās volāvērunt et magna pars eārum sagittās Herculī occīsa est.

1 quam. What is the force of quam with a superlative? 2 Augēās, pronounced in English Au-je‘as. 3 Elidis, gen. case of Elis, a district of Greece. 4 bōum, gen. plur. of bōs. For construction see § 501. 11. 5 ingenti stabulō, abl. of means, but in our idiom we should say in a huge stable. 6 cōnstitit, from cōnstitō. 7 dē aliqua causā perterritae, frightened for some reason.
LIX. HERCULES CAPTURES THE CRETAN BULL AND CARRIES HIM LIVING TO EURYSTHEUS

Tum Eurystheus iussit Herculem portare vivum ex insula Crētā taurum quendam saevissimum. Ille igitur nāvem cōnscendit—nam ventus erat idōneus—atque statim solvit. Postquam triduum nāvigāvit, incolumis insulae ad propinquāvit. Deinde, postquam omnia parāta sunt, contendit ad eam regionem quam taurus vexābat. Mox taurum vidit ac sine ūllo metū cornua eius corripuit. Tum ingenti labōre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxit atque cum hāc prādā ex insulā discersit.

THE FLESH-EATING HORSES OF DIOME'DES

IX. THE BELT OF HIPPOLYTE, QUEEN OF THE AMAZONS


THE DESCENT TO HADES AND THE DOG CERBERUS

Iamque unus modo è duodecin labōribus reliquēbātūr sed inter omnis hic erat difficillimus. Iussus est enim canem Cerberum⁴ ex Orcō in lūcem trahere. Ex Orcō autem nēmō anteā reverterat. Praeterea Cerberus erat mónstrum maxime horribile et tria capita habēbat. Herculēs postquam imperia Eurystheī accepit, statim profectus est et in Orcum dēscendit. Ibi vērō nōn sine summō periculō Cerberum manibus rapuit et ingenti cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et ad urbem Eurystheī trāxit.

Sic duodecin labōrēs illī⁵ intrā duodecin annōs cōnfecti sunt. Dēnum post longam vitam Herculeī à deīs receptus est et Iuppiter filiō suō dedit immortālētām.

¹ A fabled tribe of warlike women living in Asia Minor. ² omniō, etc., to have consisted entirely of women. ³ Amāzonibus, § 501. 14. ⁴ The dog Cerberus guarded the gate of Orcus, the abode of the dead. ⁵ illī, these famous.
P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY

LXI. PUBLIUS IS BORN NEAR POMPEII

P. Cornelius Lentulus,² adulēscēns Rōmānus, amplissimā familiā³ nātus est; nam pater eius, Mārcus, erat dux perfectissimus, cuīus virtūte⁴ et consiliō multae victoriae reportātae erant; atque māter eius, Iūlia, ā clāriissimis maiōribus orta est. Nōn vērō in urbe sed rūri⁵ Pūbius nātus est, et cum mātre habitābat in villā quae in maris litore et sub rādīcibus magnī montis sita erat. Mōns autem erat Vesuvius et parva urbs Pompēii octō mīlia⁶ passuum⁷ aberat. In Italīā antiquā erant plurimae quidem villae et pulchrae, sed inter hās omnis nūlla erat pulchrior quam villa Mārci Iūliaeque. Frōns villae mūrō ā maris fluctibus māniēbātur. Hinc mare et litora et īnsulae longē lātēque conspici⁸ ac saepe nāvēs longae et onerāriae poterant. Ā tergō et ab utrōque latere agri ferācissimi patēbant. Undique erat magna variōrum flōrum copia et multa ingentiūm arborum genera quae aestāte⁹ umbram

¹ This story is fiction with certain historical facts in Cæsar’s career as a setting. However, the events chronicled might have happened, and no doubt did happen to many a Roman youth. ² A Roman had three names, as, Pūbius (given name), Cornēlius (name of the gēns or clan), Lentulus (family name). ³ Abl. of source, which is akin to the abl. of separation (§ 501. 32). ⁴ virtūte, § 501. 24. ⁵ rūri, § 501. 36. ¹. ⁶ mīlia, § 501. 21. ⁷ passuum, § 501. 11. ⁸ conspici, infin. with poterant, § 215. Consult the map of Italy for the approximate location of the villa. ⁹ aestāte, § 501. 35.
HIS LIFE ON THE FARM

LXII. HIS LIFE ON THE FARM

Huius villae Dāvus, servus Mārci, est vilicus² et cum Lesbiā uxōre 5 omnia cūrat. Vilicus et uxor in casā humili, medius in agrīs sitā, habi- taet. Ā primā lūce usque ad vesperum sē³ gravibus labōribus exercent ut omnis rēs bene gerant.⁴ Plūrima enim sunt officia Dāvi et Lesbiae. Vilicus servōs regit nē tardi sint⁵; mittit aliōs qui agrōs arent,⁶ aliōs qui hortōs inrigent,⁷ et opera in⁸ tōtum diem impōnit. Lesbia autem omnibus vestimenta parat, cibum coquit, pānem facit.


---

¹ How are the forms of sum translated when they precede the subject? 
² The vilicus was a slave who acted as overseer of a farm. He directed the farming operations and the sale of the produce. 
³ sē, reflexive pron., object of exercent. 
⁴ For the construction, see § 501. 40. 
⁵ in, for. 
⁶ annōs, § 501. 21. 
⁷ domum, § 501. 20. 
⁸ rūrī, § 501. 36. 1. 
⁹ hōrās, cf. annōs, line 17. 
¹⁰ quō... spectet, §§ 349, 350.
discēdēbat. Itaquesub clārō Italiæ sōle Públius et Lýdia, amīci fidē-
lissimī, per campōs collisque cotidiē vagābantur. Modo in silvā finitimā
lūdēbant ubi Públius sagittīs1 celeribus avis dēiciēbat et Lýdia corōnis
variōrum flōrum comās suās ōrnābat; modo aquam et cibum portābant
ad Dāvum servōsque dēfessōs qui agrōs colēbant; modo in casā parvā
aut hōrās laetās in lūdō consūmēbant aut auxiliīm dabant Lesbiae,
quae cibum virō et servīs parābant vel aliās rēs domesticās agebāt.

LXIII. MARCUS LENTULUS, THE FATHER OF PUBLIUS,
IS SHIPWRECKED • JULIA RECEIVES A
LETTER FROM HIM

Iam Públius2 decem annōs hābēbat cum M. Cornēlius Lentulus, pater
eius, qui quīnque annōs3 grave bellum in Asiā gerēbat, nōn sine glōriā
dōnum4 revertēbātur. Namque multa secunda proelia fēcerat, maximās
hostium cōpiās dēlēverat, multās urbīs populō5 Rōmānō inimīcās cēperat.
Primum nūntius pervēnit qui ā Lentulō6 missus erat7 ut profectionēm
suam nūntiāret. Deinde plūris diēs8 rēditum virī optimi māter filiūsque
exspectābant et animīs9 sollicitīs deōs immortālis frustrā colēbant. Tum
dēnum hās litterās summō cūm gaudiō accēpērunt:

10 "Marcus Iūliae suae salūtem dicit. Si valēs, bene est; ego valeō.
Ex Graecīa, quō11 præter spem et opinionēm hodiē pervēni, hās litterās
ad tē scribō. Namque nāvīs nostrā frāctā est; nōs autem—12 dis est
grātia—incolūmēs sumus. Ex Asiā13 portū nāvem lēnī ventō solvi-
mus. Postquam14 altum mare tenuimus15 nec iam ùllae terrae appāru-
ērunt, caelum undique et undique fluctūs, subitō magna tempestās
coorta est et nāvem vehementissimē adflīxit. Ventīs fluctibusque

---

1 sagittīs, § 501. 24. 2 was ten years old. 3 annōs, § 501. 21. 4 dōnum,
§ 501. 20. 5 populō, dat. with inimīcās, cf. § 501. 16. 6 Lentulō, § 501. 33.
7 ut ... nūntiāret, § 501. 40. 8 diēs, cf. annōs, § 9. 9 animīs, abl. of manner.
Do you see one in line 15? 10 This is the usual form for the beginning of a
Latin letter. First we have the greeting, and then the expression Si valēs, etc.
The date of the letter is usually given at the end, and also the place of writing,
if not previously mentioned in the letter. 11 quō, where. 12 dis est grātia,
thank God, in our idiom. 13 Asia refers to the Roman province of that name
in Asia Minor. 14 altum mare tenuimus, we were well out to sea. 15 nec
iam, and no longer.
adfectatī¹ nec sōlem discernere nec currsum tenēre poterāmus et omnia praesentem mortem intentābant. Trīs diēs² et trīs noctēs³ sine rēmis vēlisque agimur. Quartō diē⁴ primum terra visa est et violenter in saxa, quae nōn longē à litore aberant, dēiecti sumus. Tum vērō majōra pericula timēbāmus; sed nauta quīdam, vir fortissimus, ex nāve in fluctūs irātōs dēsīluit⁴ ut fūnem ad litus portāret; quam rem summō labōre vix effecit. Ita omnēs servāti sumus. Grātias igitur et honōrem Neptūnō dēbēmus, quī deus nōs ē periculō ēripuit. Nunc Athēnīs⁵ sum, quō cōnsūgī ut mihi paucās hōrās ad quiētem darem.⁶ Quam primum autem nāvem conducām ut iter ad Italian reliquum cōnficiam et domum⁷ ad meōs cārōs revertar. Salūtā nostrum Públium amicissimē et valētūdinem tuam cūra diligenter. Kalendis Mārtiis.⁸

LXIV. LENTULUS REACHES HOME · PUBLIUS VISITS POMPEII WITH HIS FATHER

Post paucōs diēs nāvis M. Cornēli Lentuli portum Mīsenī⁹ petīt, qui portus nōn longē à Pompēiiis situs est; quō in portū classis Rōmāna 15 pōnēbātur et ad pugnās nāvālis ornābātur. Ibi nāvēs omnium generum cōnspeci poterant. Iamque incrēdibilē celeritāte nāvis longa quā Lentulus vehēbātur litori adpropinquāvit; nam nōn sōlum ventō sed etiam rēmis impellēbātur. In altā puppe stābat gubernātor et nōn procul aliqui miliētēs Rōmāni cum armīs splendidiūs, inter quōs clārissimus erat 20 Lentulus. Deinde servi rēmis contendere cessāvērunt; nautae vēlum contrāxērunt et ancorās iēcerunt. Lentulus statim ē nāvī egressus est et 11 ad villam suam properāvit. Eum Iūlia, Públius, tōtaque familia excēpērunt. Qui complexūs, quanta gaudia fuerunt!

Postridē dieī diēi Lentulus filiō suō dixit, "Venī, mi Públi, mēcum. 25

¹ adfectatī, perf. passive part. tossed about. ² What construction? ³ diē, § 501. 35. ⁴ ut ... portāret, § 501. 40. ⁵ Athēnīs, § 501. 36. 1. ⁶ darem, cf. portēret, l. 6. ⁷ Why not ad domum? ⁸ Kalendis Mārtiis, the Calends or first of March; abl. of time, giving the date of the letter. ⁹ Misenum had an excellent harbor, and under the emperor Augustus became the chief naval station of the Roman fleet. See map of Italy. ¹⁰ Why is the infinitive used with cessāvērunt? ¹¹ See Plate I, Frontispiece. ¹² Observe that these words are exclamatory.

LXV. A DAY AT POMPEII


Brevi tempore\(^5\) omnia erant parata, iamque\(^6\) quinta hora erat. Deinde Lentulus et filius ad cauponam proximam properavereunt, quod fama\(^7\) et

---

1. What construction follows suadeo? § 501. 41. 2. rebus, § 501. 32. 3. This is the abl. of the way by which motion takes place, sometimes called the abl. of route. The construction comes under the general head of the abl. of means. For the scene here described, see Plate II, p. 53, and notice especially the stepping-stones for crossing the street (saxa quae in medio dispositae erant). 4. The forum of Pompeii was surrounded by temples, public halls, and markets of various sorts. Locate Pompeii on the map. 5. We say, this kind of shop; Latin, this kind of shops. 6. ut... pararem, § 501. 41. 7. How is ut translated after a verb of fearing? How ne? Cf. § 501. 42. 8. tempore, § 501. 35. 9. quinta hora. The Romans numbered the hours of the day consecutively from sunrise to sunset, dividing the day, whether long or short, into twelve equal parts. 10. fama shows a slight irregularity in that the abl. ending -e is long.
siti¹ urgebantur. Ibi sub arboris umbra sedérunt et puerō imperā-
vērunt ut sibi² cibum et vinum daret. Huic imperiō³ puer celeriter
pāruit. Tum laetì sē⁴ ex labōre refēcērunt.

Post prandium profecti sunt ut alia urbis spectācula vidērent. Illō
tempore fuērunt Pompeiīs⁵ multa tempa, duo theatra, thermae mag-
numque amphitheatrum, quae omnia post paucōs annōs flammās atque
incendiis Vēsuvī et terrae mōtum dēlēta sunt. Ante hanc calamitātem
autem hominēs⁶ nihil de monte verītī sunt. In amphitheatrō quidem
Pūblius morārī cupīvit ut spectācula gladiātōria vidēret, quae in⁷ illum
ipsum diem prōscripta erant et iam⁸ rē vērā incēperant. Sed Lentu-
lus dīxit, "Morāri, Pūblī, ⁹vereor ut possīnus. Iam decima hōra est
et via est longa. Tempus suādet ut quam primum domum revertā-
mur." Itaque servō imperāvit ut equōs iungeret, et sōlis occāsū¹⁰
ad villam pervēnērunt.

LXVI. LENTULUS ENGAGES A TUTOR FOR HIS SON

Ā prīmīs annīs quidem Iūlia ipsa filium suum docuerat, et Pūblius ¹⁵
nōn sōlum ¹¹ pūrē et Latīnē loquī poterat sed etiam commodē legēbat
et scribēbat. Iam Ennium¹² aliōsque poētās lēgerat. Nunc vērō
Pūblius ¹³ duodecim annōs habēbat; itaque ei pater bonum magistrum,
¹⁴ virum omni doctrīnā et virtūte ornātissimum, parāvit, ¹⁵ quī Graeca,
mūsicam, aliōsque artēs docēret. ¹⁶ Namque illis temporibus omnēs ferē
20 gentēs Graecē loquēbantur. Cum Pūblīo alīi puerī, Lentūli amīcōrum

¹ sitis, thirst, has -im in the acc. sing., -i in the abl. sing., and no plural.
² Observe that the reflexive pronoun sibi does not here refer to the subject of
the subordinate clause in which it stands, but to the subject of the main clause.
This so-called indirect use of the reflexive is often found in object clauses
⁵ Pompeiīs, § 501. 36. 1. ⁶ nihil . . . verītī suat, had no fears of the mountain.
⁷ in, for. ⁸ rē vērā, in fact. ⁹ vereor ut, § 501. 42. ¹⁰ occāsū, § 501. 35.
¹¹ pūrē . . . poterat, freely, could speak Latin well. What is the literal trans-
lation? ¹² Ennium, the father of Latin poetry. ¹³ duodecim . . . habēbat,
cf. p. 206, l. 8, and note. ¹⁴ virum, etc., a very well-educated and worthy
man. Observe the Latin equivalent. ¹⁵ quī . . . docēret, a relative clause of
purpose. Cf. §§ 349, 350. ¹⁶ In Caesar's time Greek was spoken more widely
in the Roman world than any other language.
fili,\textsuperscript{1} discēbant. Nam saepe apud Rōmānōs mōs erat\textsuperscript{2} nōn in lūci
filēs mittere sed domī per magistrum docēre. Cōtidiē discipuli cum
magistrō in peristylō\textsuperscript{3} Mārci domūs sedēbant. Omnēs pueri bullam
auream, originis honestae signum, in collō gerēbant, et omnēs togā
praetextā amīctī erant,\textsuperscript{4} quod nōndum sēdecim annōs\textsuperscript{5} nāti sunt.

SCENE IN SCHOOL \cdot AN EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION

DISCIPULĪ. Salvē, magister.

MAGISTER. Vōs quoque omniēs,
salvēte. \textsuperscript{6} Tabulāsne portāvistis et
sūlōs?

10 D. Portāvimus.

M. Iam fābium Aesōpī\textsuperscript{1} dis-
cēmus. Ego legam, vōs in tabu-
līs scribite. Et tū, Pūbū, dā mihi
e capsā\textsuperscript{8} Aesōpi volūmen.\textsuperscript{9} Iam

15 audite omniēs: Vulpēs et Ûva.

Vulpēs olim famē coācta ūvam
dependentem vidit. Ad ūvam salē-
bat, sūmere cōnāns. Frūstrā diū cōnāta, tandem irrāta erat et salēre
cessāns dixit: "Illa ūva est acerba; acerbam ūvam \textsuperscript{10} nīhil moror."

Omnia'ne scripsistis, pueri?

D. Omnia, magister.

\textsuperscript{1} filēi, in apposītū with pueri. \textsuperscript{2} nōn ... mittere. This infinitive clause
is the subject of erat. Cf. § 216. The same construction is repeated in the
next clause, domī ... docēre. The object of docēre is filēs understood.

\textsuperscript{3} The peristyle was an open court surrounded by a colonnade. \textsuperscript{4} At the
age of sixteen a boy laid aside the bulla and the toga praetexta and assumed the
toga virīlis or manly gown. \textsuperscript{5} annōs, § 501. 21. The expression nōndum
sēdecim annōs nāti sunt means literally, they were born not yet sixteen years.
This is the usual expression for age. What is the English equivalent?

\textsuperscript{6} Tablets were thin boards of wood smeared with wax. The writing was done
with a styliūs, a pointed instrument like a pencil, made of bone or metal, with
a knob at the other end. The knob was used to smooth over the wax in
making erasures and corrections. \textsuperscript{7} Aesōpī, the famous Greek to whom are
ascribed most of the fables current in the ancient world. \textsuperscript{8} A cylindrical
box for holding books and papers, shaped like a hatbox. \textsuperscript{9} Ancient books
were written on rolls made of papyrōs. \textsuperscript{10} nīhil moror, I care nothing for.
IAMQUE PUBLIUS, 1 QUINDECIM ANNOS NATUS, 2 PRIMIS LITTERARUM ELEMENTIS CONFECTIS, ROMAM PETERE VOLUIT UT SCHOLAS GRAMMATICOGRAMMATICOS ET PHILOSOPHORUM FREQUENTARET. ET FACILLIME PATRI 6 SUO, QUI IPSE PHILOSOPHIAE STUDIÓ TECUBÁTUR, PERSUÁSIT. ITAQUE 4 OMNIBUS RÉBUS AD PROFECTIONEM COMPARATÍS, PATER FILIUSQUE EQUIS ANIMOSÍS VECTÍS 5 MAGNAM URBEM PROFECTI SUNT. EÓS PROFICISCENTIS IULIA TÓTAQUE FAMILIA VÖTIS PRECIBUSQUE PRÓSECÚTAE SUNT. TUM PER LOCA 6 PŁANÆ ET COLLIS SILVIS VESTITÓS VIAM INGRESSI SUNT AD NOLAM, QUOD OPPIDUM EO S HOSPITIO MODICO EXCEPIT. NOLAE 7 DUÁS HÓRÁS MORÁTI SUNT, QUOD SÓL MÉRIDIÁNUS ÁRDEBAT. TUM RÉCTA VIÁ 8 CIRCITER VIGNITI MILIA 9 PASSUUM 9 IN CAPUAM, AD INSIGNEM CAMPÁNIÁE URBEM, CONTENDÉRUNT. EO 10 MULTÁ NOCTE DÉFESSI PERVERNÉRUNT. 11 POSTRIDÉI EİUS DİEİ, SOMNÖ ET CIBÖ RECREÁTI, CAPUÁ DISCESSÉRUNT ET 12 VIAM APPIAM INGRESSI, QUAE CAPUAM TANGIT ET ÚSQUE AD URBEM ROMAM DÜCIT, ANTE MERIDIEM SINUSSÆM PERVERNÉRUNT, QUOD OPPIDUM TANGIT MARE. INDE PRIMA LÚCE PROFICISCENTES 15 FORMIÁS 13 PROPERAVÉRUNT, UBI CICERÓ, ÔRATÓ CLARÍSSIMUS, QUI FORTE APUD VILLAM SUAM ERAI, EOS BENIGNÆ EXCÉPIT. HINC 14 ITINERE VIGNITI QUINTÆ MILIUM PASSUUM FACTÖ, TARRAĈINAM, OPPIDUM IN SAXIS ALTÍSSÍMIS SITUM, VIDERUNT. IAMQUE NÓN LONGÆ ABERANT PALÚDÆ MAGNAE, QUAE MULTÀ MILIA PASSUUM UNIQUE PATENT. PER EÁS PEDESTRIS VIA EST GRAVIS ET IN NÁVE 20 VIÁTORÆS VEHUNTUR. ITAQUE 15 EQUIS RELICITIS LENTULUS ET PUBLIUS NÁVEM CONSCENDÉRUNT, ET, ÜNÀ NOCTE IN TRÁNSITÚ CONSÚMPTÀ, FORUM APPÍ VÉNÉRUNT. TUM BREVI TEMPORE ARICIA EOS EXCÉPIT. HOC OPPIDUM, IN COLLE

1 QUINDECIM, ETC., CF. P. 210, L. 5, AND NOTE. 2 PRIMIS . . . CONFECTIS, ABL. ABS. CF. § 501. 28. 3 PATRI, DAT. WITH PERSUASIT. 4 OMNIBUS . . . COMPARATIS, CF. NOTE 2. 5 VECTI, PERF. PASS. PART. OF VEHÔ. 6 WHAT IS THERE PECULIAR ABOUT THE GENDER OF THIS WORD? 7 NOLAE, LOCATIVE CASE, § 501. 36. 2. 8 VIÁ, CF. PORTA, P. 208, L. 7, AND NOTE. 9 WHAT CONSTRUCTION? 10 EO, ADV. THERE. 11 POSTRIDÉI EİUS DİEİ, ON THE NEXT DAY. 12 VIAM APPIAM, THE MOST FAMOUS OF ALL ROMAN ROADS, THE GREAT HIGHWAY FROM ROME TO TARRENTUM AND BRUNDISIUM, WITH NUMEROUS BRANCHES. LOCATE ON THE MAP THE VARIOUS TOWNS THAT ARE MENTIONED IN THE LINES THAT FOLLOW. 13 FORMIÁS, FORMIAE, ONE OF THE MOST BEAUTIFUL SPOTS ON THIS COAST, AND A FAVORITE SITE FOR THE VILLAGES OF RICH ROMANS. 14 ITINERE . . . FACTÖ, ABL. ABS. THE GEN. MILIUM MODIFIES ITINERE. 15 EQUIS RELICTIS. WHAT CONSTRUCTION? POINT OUT A SIMILAR ONE IN THE NEXT LINE.

LXVIII. PUBLIUS PUTS ON THE TOGA VIRILIS


His rēbus gestīs Lentulus ad uxōrem suam hās litterās scripsit:

Mārcus Iūliae suae salūtem dīcit. Si valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Accēpi tuās litterās. Hās nunc Rōmā per servum fīdelissimum mittō ut dē Pūblīo nostrō quam celerrimē sciās. Nam hodiē ei togam virīlem dedi. Ante lūcem sūrēxi et prīnum bullam auream dē collō eius

1 morābātur, translate as if pluperfect. 2 sibi, for himself. 3 Ei, why dat. 4 dē... poterant, in English, all regarded him as a very promising youth; but what does the Latin say? 5 ut... praebēret, § 501. 43. 6 cūriā, a famous building near the Roman Forum. 7 ut... audīret et vidīret, § 501. 44. 8 sēdecim, etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note. 9 bullam, cf. p. 210, l. 3, and note 4. 10 These infinitive clauses are the subject of erat. Cf. § 216. 11 His rēbus gestīs, i.e. the assumption of the toga virīlis and attendant ceremonies. 12 Compare the beginning of this letter with the one on page 206. 13 sūrēxi, from surgō.
remōvī. Hāc Laribus¹ cōnsecrātā et sacrīs factīs, eum togā virīli vestīvī. Intérim plūres amīcī cum multitūdine optimōrum civīrum et honestōrum clientium pervēnerant ²quī Públium domō in forum dē-
dūcerent. Ibi in civitātem receptus est et nōmen, Públius Cornēlius Lentulus, apud civis Rōmānōs ascriptum est. Omnēs ei amicissimī ⁵fuērunt et magna ⁸de eō praedicunt. Sapientior enim aequālibus⁴est et magnum ingenium habet. ⁶Cūrā ut valeās.”

LXIX. PUBLIUS JOINS CÆSAR’S ARMY IN GAUL


¹ The Lares were the spirits of the ancestors, and were worshiped as household gods. All that the house contained was confided to their care, and sacrifices were made to them daily. ² quī . . . dēdūcerent, § 350. ³ magnā, great things, a neuter adj. used as a noun. ⁴ aequālibus, § 501. 34. ⁵ Cūrā ut valeās, take good care of your health. How does the Latin express this idea? ⁶ Abl. cf means. ⁷ sē, reflexive object of exercuit. ⁸ quī . . . praedicerent, § 501. 45. ⁹ ita multum trahēbat, had a great influence in that direction. ¹⁰ Paucīs ante annīs, a few years before; in Latin, before by a few years, ante being an adverb and annīs abl. of degree of difference. ¹¹ ut . . . fāceret, § 501. 41. ¹² ut, how translated here? See § 501. 42.
pervenire potuit. Intrā müniṭiōnēs acceptus, ā Caesare benignē exceptus est. Imperātor fortēm adulēscentem amplissimīs verbīs laudāvit et eum 1tribūnum militum creāvit.

HOW THE ROMANS MARCHED AND CAMPED

Exercitus qui in hostium finibus bellum gerit multīs periculis circūm datūs est. 2Quae pericula ut vitārent, Rōmāni summam cūram adhibēre solēbant. Adpropīquantēs cōpiīs hostium agmen ita dispōnēbant 3ut imperātor ipse cum pluribus légionibus expeditīs 4primūm agmen dūceret. Post eās cōpiās impedimenta 5tōitus exercītūs

1 The military tribune was a commissioned officer nearly corresponding to our rank of colonel. The tribunes were often inexperienced men, so Cæsar did not allow them much responsibility. 2Quae pericula, object of vitārent. It is placed first to make a proper connection with the preceding sentence. 3ut . . . dūceret, § 501. 4expeditīs, i.e. without baggage and ready for action. 5impedimenta. Much of the baggage was carried in carts and on beasts of burden, as is shown above; but, besides this, each soldier (unless expeditus) carried a heavy pack. See also picture, p. 159.
THE RIVAL CENTURIONS

conlocábant. 1 Tum legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant. Equītēs quoque in omnēs partēs dimittēbantur qui loca explōrārent; et centurīōnēs praemittēbantur ut locum castraēdēneum dēligerent. Locus habēbatur idōneus castraēquī facile dēfendi posset et prope aquam esset. Quā dē causā castra9 in colle 5 ab utrāque parte arduō, a fronte lēniter dēcliēvi saepe pōnēbantur; vel locus palūdibus cinctus vel in flūminis rīpis situs dēligēbātur. Ad locum postquam exercitus pervēnit, aliī militum 4 in armēs erant, aliī castra mūniōre incipiēbant. Nam 6 quō tūtiōres ab hostibus militēs essent, nēve incauti et imparātī opprimerentur, castra fossā lātā et 10 vallō altō mūniēbant. In castrēs portae quattuor erant ut ēruptī militum omnēs in partēs fierē posset. In angulis castrōrum erant turrēs dē quibus tēla in hostīs coniciēbantur. 6 Tālibus in castrīs quālia dēscripsimus Pūblius ā Caesare exceptus est.

LXX. THE RIVAL CENTURIONS

Illis in castraēs erant duo centurīōnēs,7 fortissimī virī, T. Pullō et 15 L. Vorēnus, quōrum neuter alterī virtūte 8 cēdere volēbat. Inter eōs iam multōs annōs infēnsum certāmen gerēbātur. Tum demum finis contrōversiae hōc modō9 factus est. Diē tertiō postquam Pūblius pervēnit, hostēs, maiōribus cōpiēs coācticis, ācerrimum impetum in castra fecērunt. Tum Pullō, 10 cum Rōmānī tardīōres11 vidērēntur, 20 "Cūr dubītās," inquit, "Vorēne? Quam commodiōrem occasiōnem exspectās? Hic diēs dē virtūte nostrā iūdicābit." Haec12 cum dixisset,

1 The newest legions were placed in the rear, because they were the least reliable. 2 qui . . . possēt . . . esset, § 501. 45. 3 castra, subject of pōnē-

bantur. 4 in armīs erant, stood under arms. 5 quō . . . essent. When is

quō used to introduce a purpose clause? See § 350. l. 6 Tālibus in castrīs

quālia, in such a camp as. It is important to remember the correlatives tālis . . .

quālis, such . . . as. 7 A centurion commanded a company of about sixty

men. He was a common soldier who had been promoted from the ranks for

his courage and fighting qualities. The centurions were the real leaders of the

men in battle. There were sixty of them in a legion. The centurion in the

picture (p. 216) has in his hand a staff with a crook at one end, the symbol of his

authority. 8 virtūte, § 501. 30. 9 Abl. of manner. 10 cum . . . vidērēntur,

§ 501. 46. 11 tardīōres, too slow, a not infrequent translation of the compara-
tive degree. 12 Haec, obj. of dixisset. It is placed before cum to make a close

connection with the preceding sentence. What is the construction of dixisset?


Huic rūrsus circumventō auxilium dat Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, plūribus interfectīs, summā cum laude intrā munitionēs sē recipiunt. Sic inimicōrum alter alteri auxilium dedit nec dē eōrum virtūte quisquam iūdicāre potuit.

LXXI. THE ENEMY BESIEGING THE CAMP ARE REPULSED

Cum iam sex hōrās pugnātum esset ac nōn sōlum virēs sed etiam tēla Rōmānōs déficērent, atque hostēs acrius instārent, et vāllum scindere fossamque cómplevere incēpissent, Caesar, vir reī militāris perītissimus,
suis imperavit ut proelium paulisper intermitterent,\textsuperscript{1} et, signō datō, ex castris ērumpent.\textsuperscript{1} \textsuperscript{2} Quod iussi sunt, faciunt, et subito ex omnibus portas ērumpunt. Atque tam celeriter milites concurrerunt et tam pro-

pinqui erant hostēs\textsuperscript{8} ut spatium pila coniciendi\textsuperscript{4} non daretur. Itaque reiectis pilis\textsuperscript{6} comminus gladiis pugnātum est. Diēt et audacter hostēs\textsuperscript{5} restiterunt et in extraēmō spē salātis tantam virtūtem praestiterunt ut a dextrō cornū vehementer\textsuperscript{6} multitūdine suōrum aciem Rōmānum pre-

merent. \textsuperscript{7} Id imperātor cum animadvertisset, Püblius adulēscens cum equitātū misit qui labōrantibus\textsuperscript{8} auxilium daret. Eius impetum sustinère nōn potuērunt hostēs\textsuperscript{9} et omnēs terga vertērunt. Eōs in ro fugam datōs Püblius subsecūtus est usque ad flūmen Rhēnum, quod ab eō locō quinque milia passuumaberat. Ibi pauci salūtem sibi repperērunt. Omnibus reliquis interfectis, Püblius et equitēs in castra sēsē recēpērunt. Dē hac calamitāte finitimae gentēs cum certiorēs factae essent, ad Caesarem lēgātōs misērunt et sē suaque omnia dēdīderunt.\textsuperscript{15}

LXXII. PUBLIUS GOES TO GERMANY

AND STRANGE ANIMALS

Initā aestāte Caesar litteris certior fiēbat et per explōrātorēs cognōs-

cēbat plurēs civitātēs Galliae novis rēbus studēre,\textsuperscript{10} et contrā populum Rōmānum consūrēre\textsuperscript{16} obsidēsque\textsuperscript{2} inter sē dare,\textsuperscript{10} atque cum hīs Germānōs quōsdam quoque sēsē consūrērēs esse.\textsuperscript{10} Hīs litteris nūn-

tiisque commōtus Caesar consūtīt quam celerrīmē in Gallōs proficisci,\textsuperscript{12} 20 ut eōs inopinantis opprimeret, et Labiēnum légātum cum duābus legēniibus pedītum et duōbus milibus equītum in Germānōs mittere.\textsuperscript{12}

\textsuperscript{1} intermitterent, ērumpent. What use of the subjunctive? \textsuperscript{2} Quod, etc., they do as ordered. The antecedent of quod is id understood, which would be the object of faciunt. \textsuperscript{3} ut . . . daretur. Is this a clause of purpose or of result? \textsuperscript{4} coniciendi, § 402. \textsuperscript{5} comminus gladiis pugnātum est, a hand-to-hand conflict was waged with swords. \textsuperscript{6} multitūdine suōrum, by their numbers. suōrum is used as a noun. What is the literal translation of this expression? \textsuperscript{7} Id imperātor. Id is the obj. and imperātor the subj. of animadvertisset. \textsuperscript{8} labō-

rantibus. This participle agrees with ēs understood, the indir. obj. of daret; qui . . . daret is a purpose clause, § 501. 40. \textsuperscript{9} hostēs, subj. of potuērunt.\textsuperscript{10} Observe that all these infinitives are in indirect statements after certior fiēbat, he was informed, and cognōscēbat, he learned. Cf. § 501. 48, 49. \textsuperscript{11} inter sē, to each other. \textsuperscript{12} proficiscī, mittere. These infinitives depend upon consūtīt.
THE STORMING OF A CITY

1 Itaque rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra mōvit. Ab utrōque rēs bene gesta est; nam Caesar tam celeriter in hostium finīs pervēnit ut spatium cōpiās cōgendī nōn darētur; et Labiēnus dē Germāniōs tam grave supplicium sūmpsit ut nēmō ex ea gente in reliquum tempus Gallōs auxilium dare audēret.


LXXIII. THE STORMING OF A CITY

Pūbliō plurīs diēs ā Germāniā morātus ēn Galliām redūit, et ad Caesareīs castra sē contuit. Ille quīa molestē ferēbat Gallōs eīus regionēs obsidēs dare recūsāvisse et exercitū frūmentum praebēre

1 Before beginning a campaign, food had to be provided. Every fifteen days grain was distributed. Each soldier received about two pecks. This he carried in his pack, and this constituted his food, varied occasionally by what he could find by foraging. 2 Abl. of personal agent, § 501. 33. 3 cōpiās cōgendī, § 501. 37. 1. 4 darētur, audēret, § 501. 43. audēret is not from audīō. 5 cum morāretur, § 501. 46. 6 ut... possēt, scīret, § 501. 43. 7 Ille, subj. of inquit. 8 huius Germāniāe, of this part of Germany. 9 quī... sciat... adierit, § 501. 45. 10 ōnum, only one. 11 crūrum, from crūs. 12 prō, for, in place of. 13 elephantīs, § 501. 34. 14 parcunt. What case is used with this verb? 15 morātus. Is this part active or passive in meaning? 16 Gallōs, subj. acc. of the inffns. recūsāvisse and nōluisse. The indirect statement depends upon molestē ferēbat.
nōluisse, cōnstituit eis bellum īnferre. Agris vāstātīs, vicīs incēnsis, pervēnīt ad oppidum validissimum quod et nāturā et arte mūnītum erat. Cingēbātur mūrō viginti quinque pedēs altō. Ā lateribus duóbus mari mūniēbātur; ā tertiō latere collis, in quō oppidum erat situm, praeeruptō fastīgiō ad plānitiem vergēbat; ā quartō tantum latere aditus erat facilis. Hoc oppidum oppugnāre, cum opus esset difficillimum, tamen cōnstituit Caesar. Et castrīs mūnitūs Públiō negotiūm dedit ut rēs ad oppugnandum necessāriās parāret.

Rōmānōrum autem oppugnātiō est haec. Prīnum turres aedificantur quibus militēs in summum mūrum ēvādere possint; vineae fiunt quibus tēcti militēs ad mūrum succēdant; pluteī paran·tur post quōs militēs tormenta administret; sunt quoque arietēs qui mūrum et portās discutiant. His omnibus rēbus comparātīs, deinde agger ab ea parte ubi aditus est facillimus exstruitur et cum

1 eis, § 501. 15. 2 pedēs, § 501. 21. 3 tantum, adv. only. 4 cum . . . esset, a clause of concession, § 501. 46. 5 ad oppugnandum, a gerund expressing purpose. 6 haec, as follows. 7 possint, subj. of purpose. Three similar constructions follow. 8 vineae. These vineae were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were working to fortify. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers. 9 plutei, large screens or shields with small wheels attached to them. These were used to protect besiegers while moving up to a city or while serving the engines of war. 10 tormenta. The engines of war were chiefly the catapult for shooting great arrows, and the ballista, for hurling large stones. They had a range of about two thousand feet and were very effective. 11 The agger, or mound, was of chief importance in a siege. It was begun just out of reach of the missiles of the enemy, and then gradually extended towards the point to be attacked. At the same time its height gradually increased until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. It was made of earth and timber, and had covered galleries running through it for the use of the besiegers. Over or beside the agger a tower was moved up to the wall, often with a battering-ram (arīes) in the lowest story. (See picture, p. 221.)
vineís ad ipsum oppidum agitur. Tum turris in aggere prōmovētur; arietibus qui sub vineis conlocāti erant mūrus et portae discutiuntur; ballistīs, catapультīs, reliquisque tormentis lapidēs et tēla in oppidum coniciuntur. Postrēmō cum iam turris et agger altitūdinem mūri 5 adaequant et ariēs moenia perfrēgērunt,1 signō datō milītēs inruunt et oppidum expugnant.

LXXIV. THE CITY IS TAKEN - THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED


1 perfrēgērunt, from perfringō. 2 oppidi expugnandi. Is this a gerund or a gerundive construction? Cf. § 501. 37. 3 ineant, § 501. 50. 4 ūnus, subj. of inquit. 5 sit. This is a so-called subjunctive by attraction, which means that the clause beginning with uti stands in such close connection with the subjv. clause beginning with ut, that its verb is attracted into the same mood. 6 All these verbs are in the same construction. 7 Hoc cōnsilium, subj. of placēret. For the order cf. Haec cum, etc., p. 215, l. 22, and note; Id imperātor cum, p. 217, l. 8. 8 memoriā, abl. of means. 9 oppidānīs, § 501. 15.
pugnātum est. Nē vulnerātī quidem pedem rettulērunt. Tandem, 1 dē tertīā vigiliā, Pūblius, quem Caesar illī operī 2 praefererat, nūntiāvit partem 3 mūrī ictibus arietis labefactam con-
cidisse. Quā rē au-
ditā Caesar signum dat; militēs inruunt et magnā cum caede hos-
tium oppidum capiunt.

Postridē diei, hoc oppidō expugnātō, captivōrum qui nō-
ibilissimi sunt ad imperātorem ante praec-
tōrium 5 adducuntur.
Ipse, lūricā aurātā et paludāmentō purpureō insignis, captivōs per interpres in hunc 
modum interrogat. 6 Vōs qui estis 7?

INTERPRES. Rogat imperātōr qui sitis.
CAPTIVĪ. Filii rēgis sumus.
INTERPRES. Dicunt sē filiōs esse rēgis.
IMPERĀTOR. Cūr nihi tantās iniūriās intulistis?
INTERPRES. Rogat cūr sibi tantās iniūriās intuleritis.
CAPTIVĪ. Iniūriās eī nōn intulimus sed prō patriā bellum gessimus.
Semper voluimus Rōmānīs esse amīcī, sed Rōmānī sine causā nōs 25 
domō patriāque expellere cōnāti sunt.

INTERPRES. 8 Negant sē iniūriās tibi intulisse, sed prō patriā bellum 
gessisse. 9 Semper sē voluisset amīcōs Rōmānīs esse, sed Rōmānōs 
sine causā sē domō patriāque expellere cōnātōs esse.

1 Between twelve and three o'clock in the morning. The night was divided 
into four watches. 2 operī, § 501. 15. 3 partem, subj. acc. of concidisse.
4 captivōrum . . . sunt, the noblest of the captives. 5 The general's headquarters.
6 Study carefully these direct questions, indirect questions, and indirect state-
ments. 7 See Plate III, p. 148. 8 Negant, etc., they say that they have not, etc.
Negant is equivalent to dicunt nōn, and the negative modifies intulisse, but not the 
remainder of the indirect statement. 9 Semper, etc., that they have always, etc.
Manēbitisne in reliquum tempus in fidē, hāc rebellione condōnātā?
Tum vērō captivi multīs cum lacrimis iūrāvērant sē in fidē mānsūrōs esse, et Caesar eōs incolumis domum dimisit.

LXXV. CIVIL WAR BREAKS OUT BETWEEN CAESAR AND POMPEY - THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA


Italiē urbēs quidem omnēs fērē 6 rēbus Caesaris favēbant et eum benignē excēpērant. Quā rē commōtus Pompēius ante Caesaris adven-
tum Rōmā excessit et Brundisium 7 pervēnit, inde 8 paucīs post diēbus cum omnibus cōpiis ad Æpirum mare trànsīt. Eum Caesar cum septem legiōnibus et quīngentīs equītibus secūtus est, et insīgnis inter Caesāris comitārum erat Pūblius.

Plūribus levīōribus proelīs factis, tandem cōpiae adversae ad Pha-
salūm 9 in Thessaliā, sitam castra posuērunt. Cum Pompēi exercitus

1 Manēbitisne in fidē, will you remain loyal? 2 With nē ... quidem the emphatic word stands between the two. 3 The Civil War was caused by the jealousy and rivalry between Caesar and Pompey. It resulted in the defeat and subsequent death of Pompey and the elevation of Caesar to the lordship of the Roman world. 4 hostem, predicate accusative, § 501. 22. 5 The Rubicon was a small stream in northern Italy that marked the boundary of Caesar's province. By crossing it with an armed force Caesar declared war upon Pompey and the existing government. Caesar crossed the Rubicon early in the year 49 B.C. 6 rēbus Caesaris favēbant, favored Caesar's side. In what case is rēbus? 7 Brundisium, a famous port in southern Italy whence ships sailed for Greece and the East. See map. 8 paucīs post diēbus, a few days later; literally, afterwards by a few days. Cf. paucīs ante annis, p. 213, l. 12, and note. 9 The battle of Pharsalia was fought on August 9, 48 B.C. In importance it ranks as one of the great battles of the world.
esse bis tantus quantus Caesaris, tamen erant multi qui veterānās legiōnēs quae Gallōs et Germānōs superāverant vehementer timēbant. Quōs\textsuperscript{1} ante proelium commissum Labiēnus\textsuperscript{3} légātus, qui ab Caesarē nūper dēfēcerat, ita adlocūtus est: "\textquoteleft\textquoteright Nōlīte existimāre hunc esse exercitum veterānōrum militum. Omnibus interfūli proelīs\textsuperscript{5} neque temerē incognitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua pars illius exercitūs qui Gallōs superāvit adhuc superest. Magna pars occisa est, multi domum discēserunt, multi sunt relictī in Itāliā. Hae cópiae quās vidētis in citerīōre Galliā nūper conscriptae sunt." Haec\textsuperscript{7} cum dixissent, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum esse. Hoc\textsuperscript{10} idem Pompēius et omnēs reliqui iūrāvērunt, et magnā spē et laetītiā, sicut certam ad victōriam, cópiae e castrīs exierunt.

Item Caesar, animō\textsuperscript{9} ad dimicandum parātus, exercitum suum edūxit et septem cohortibus praesidiō castris relictis cópiās triplīcī aciē instruxit. Tum, militibus studiō pugnēae ārdentibus, tubā signum dedit. Mīliēs prōcurrērunt et pīlis missis gladiōs strīnxērunt. Neque vērō virtūs hostibus dēfuit. Nam et tēla missa sustinuērunt et impetum gladiōrum excēpērunt et ordinēs cōnservāvērunt. Utrāque diū et acriēte pugnātum est nec quīquam pedem rēttulit. Tum equitēs Pompēi aciēm Caesaris circumvēre cōnātī sunt. Quod\textsuperscript{11} ubi Caesar animaadvertit, tertiam aciēm,\textsuperscript{12} quae ad id tempus quīēta fuerat, prōcurrēre iussit. Tum vērō integrōrum impetum\textsuperscript{13} dēfessī hostēs sustinērē nōn potuērunt et omnēs terga vertērunt. Sed Pompēius dē fortūnis suis dēspērāns sē in castra equō contulit, inde mox cum paucis equestibus effugīt.

\textsuperscript{1} Quōs, obj. of adlocūtus est. \textsuperscript{2} ante proelium commissum, before the beginning of the battle. \textsuperscript{3} Labiēnus, Caesar's most faithful and skilled lieutenant in the Gallic War. On the outbreak of the Civil War, in 49 B.C., he deserted Cæsar and joined Pompey. His defection caused the greatest joy among the Pompeian party; but he disappointed the expectations of his new friends, and never accomplished anything of importance. He fought against his old commander in several battles and was slain at the battle of Munda in Spain, 45 B.C. \textsuperscript{4} Nōlīte existimāre, don't think. \textsuperscript{5} proelīs, § 501. 15. \textsuperscript{6} citerīōre Galliā. This name is applied to Cisalpine Gaul, or Gaul south of the Alps. \textsuperscript{7} Haec, obj. of dīxisset. \textsuperscript{8} Hoc idem, obj. of iūrāvērunt. \textsuperscript{9} animō, § 501. 30. \textsuperscript{10} praesidiō castrīs, § 501. 17. \textsuperscript{11} Quod, obj. of animaadvertit. \textsuperscript{12} aciēm, subj. of prōcurrēre. \textsuperscript{13} impetum, obj. of sustinērē.
LXXVI. THE TRIUMPH OF CAESAR


Imperātor ipse cum urbem intrāret, undique laetō clāmōre multi tūdinis salūtātus est. Stābat in currū aureō quem quattuor alī equī vehēbant. Indūtus togā pictā, alterā manū habēnās et lauream

1 A victorious general with his army was not allowed to enter the city until the day of his triumph. A triumph was the greatest of all military honors.
2 Quō die, on the day that, abl. of time.
3 ut... essent, § 501.43.
4 Cum...
5 intrāret, § 501.46.
6 qui... immolārentur, § 501.40.
7 The Sacred Way was a noted street running along one side of the Forum to the base of the Capitoline Hill, on whose summit stood the magnificent temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. This route was always followed by triumphal processions.
8 The toga picta worn by a general in his triumph was a splendid robe of Tyrian purple covered with golden stars. See Plate IV, p. 213.
tenēbat, altera eburneum scēptrum. Post eum servus in currū stāns auream corōnam super caput eius tenēbat. Ante currum miserrimi captīvī, rēgēs principēsque superātārum gentium, catēnīs vincīt, prōgrediēbantur; et vigintī quattuor lictōrēs Laureātās fascīs ferentēs et signiferī currum Caesaris comitābantur. Concludit agmen multitūdō captīvōrum, qui, in servitūtem redactī, dēmissī vultū, vincīs bracchiis, sequuntur; quibus cum veniunt longissimō ordine militēs, etiam hi prædām vel insignia militāria ferentēs.

Caesar cum Capitōlium ascendisset, in templō Iovī Capitōlinō sacra fēcit. Simul captivōrum qui nōbilissimī erant, abductī in carcerem, interfectī sunt. Sacris factīs Caesar dē Capitōliō descendit et in forō militibus suis honōrēs militāris dedit eisque pecūniam ex bellī prædā distribuit.

Hīs omnibus rēbus cōnfectīs, Públius Caesarem valēre iussit et quam celerimē ad villam contendit ut patrem mātremque salūtaret. 7 Dē rēbus gestīs P. Cornēlī Lentūlī hāc tenūs.

1 The lictors were a guard of honor that attended the higher magistrates and made a way for them through the streets. On their shoulders they carried the fasces, a bundle of rods with an ax in the middle, symbolizing the power of the law. 2 dēmissī vultū, with downcast countenance. 3 vincīs, from vincō. 4 Simul, etc., At the same time those of the captives who were the noblest. 5 The prison was a gloomy dungeon on the lower slopes of the Capitoline Hill. 6 valēre iussit, bade farewell to. 7 This sentence marks the end of the story.
APPENDIX I

DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC.

NOUNS

460. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION — Ā-stems, Gen. Sing. -ae
SECOND DECLENSION — O-stems, Gen. Sing. -ī
THIRD DECLENSION — Consonant stems and I-stems, Gen. Sing. -īs
FOURTH DECLENSION — U-stems, Gen. Sing. -ūs
FIFTH DECLENSION — Ė-stems, Gen. Sing. -ē

461. FIRST DECLENSION. Ā-STEMS

\[ \text{domina, lady} \quad \text{STEM dominā-} \quad \text{BASE domin-} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TERMINATIONS</td>
<td></td>
<td>TERMINATIONS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domina</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>dominae</td>
<td>-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominae</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>dominārum</td>
<td>-ārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominae</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominam</td>
<td>-am</td>
<td>dominās</td>
<td>-ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominā</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ a. \text{Dea and filia have the termination -ābus in the dative and ablative plural.} \]
SECOND DECLENSION. 0-STEMS

a. Masculines in -us

dominus, master  stem domino-  base domin-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>dominus</td>
<td>-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nouns in -us of the second declension have the termination -ē in the vocative singular, as domine.

2. Proper names in -ius, and filius, end in -ī in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as Vergī'ī, filī.

b. Neuters in -um

pīlum, spear  stem pilo-  base pil-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pīlum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pīlī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pīlō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pīlum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pīlō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Masculines in -ius and neuters in -ium end in -ī in the genitive singular, not in -īi, and the accent rests on the penult.

c. Masculines in -er and -ir

puer, boy  ager, field  vir, man

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>STEMS</th>
<th>BASES</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>puer</td>
<td>puer-</td>
<td>ager</td>
<td>vir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>puer-</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agr-</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agr-</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agr-</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-ī
463. THIRD DECENSION

CLASSIFICATION

I. Consonant Stems

1. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only.

2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular: a. masculines and feminines; b. neuters.

II. I-Stems

Masculines, feminines, and neuters.

464. I. CONSONANT STEMS

1. Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only

princeps, m., chief  miles, m., soldier  lapis, m., stone

Bases or Stems

princip-  milit-  lapid-

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Datitive</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>princeps</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>lapis</td>
<td>-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>principis</td>
<td>militis</td>
<td>lapidis</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>principi</td>
<td>militi</td>
<td>lapidi</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>principem</td>
<td>militem</td>
<td>lapidem</td>
<td>-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>principe</td>
<td>milite</td>
<td>lapide</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Datitive</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>principês</td>
<td>militês</td>
<td>lapidês</td>
<td>-ês</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>principum</td>
<td>militum</td>
<td>lapidum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>principibus</td>
<td>militibus</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>principês</td>
<td>militês</td>
<td>lapidês</td>
<td>-ês</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>principibus</td>
<td>militibus</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Third Declension**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Termination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| rex, m., 
king | iūdex, m., judge | virtūs, f., virtue |
| Bases | rēg- | iūdic- | virtūt- | Stems |
| Nom. | rēx | iūdex | virtūs | -s |
| Gen. | rēgis | iūdicis | virtūtis | -is |
| Dat. | rēgī | iūdicī | virtūtī | -ī |
| Acc. | rēgem | iūdicem | virtūtem | -em |
| Abl. | rēge | iūdice | virtūte | -e |

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Termination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
<td>iūdicēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>rēgum</td>
<td>iūdicum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>rēgibus</td>
<td>iūdicibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
<td>iūdicēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>rēgibus</td>
<td>iūdicibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** For consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 233. 3.

2. **Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular**

**a. Masculines and Feminines**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Termination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnsul, m., consul</td>
<td>legiō, f., legion</td>
<td>ńōdō, m., pater, m., father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bases</td>
<td>cōnsul-</td>
<td>legiōn-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>cōnsul</td>
<td>legiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cōnsulis</td>
<td>legiōnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cōnsulī</td>
<td>legiōnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cōnsulem</td>
<td>legiōnem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cōnsule</td>
<td>legiōne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Termination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
<td>legiōnēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cōnsulum</td>
<td>legiōnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cōnsulibus</td>
<td>legiōnibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
<td>legiōnēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cōnsulibus</td>
<td>legiōnibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 236. 1–3.
APPENDIX I

b. Neuters

flūmen, n., river tempus, n., time opus, n., work caput, n., head

Bases or Stems

Singular

Terminations

Nom. flūmen tempus opus caput —
Gen. flūminis temporis operis capitis -is
Dat. flūmini temporī operī capitī -ē
Acc. flūmen tempus opus caput —
Abl. flūmine tempore operēe capitē -e

Plural

Nom. flūmina tempora opera capita -a
Gen. flūminum temporum operum capitum -um
Dat. flūminibus temporibus operibus capitis -ibus
Acc. flūmina tempora opera capita -a
Abl. flūminibus temporibus operibus capitis -ibus

Note. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. §238, 2, 3.

II. I-STEMS

a. Masculines and Feminines

cædēs, f., slaughter hostis, m., enemy urbs, f., city cliēns, m., retainer

Stems caedi-

Bases caed-

Singular

Terminations

Nom. cædēs hostis urbs cliēns -s, -is, or -ēs
Gen. cædis hostis urbis clientis -is
Dat. cædī hostī urbī clientī -ī
Acc. cædem hostem urbem clientem -em (-im)
Abl. cæde hoste urbe cliente -e (-ē)

Plural

Nom. cædēs hostēs urbēs clientēs -ēs
Gen. cædēnum hostium urbium clientium -ium
Dat. cædēbus hostibus urbibus clientibus -ibus
Acc. cædēs, -ēs hostīs, -ēs urbīs, -ēs clientīs, -ēs -is, -ēs
Abl. cædēbus hostibus urbibus clientibus -ibus

1. Avis, cīvis, finis, ignis, nāvis, have the abl. sing. in -ī or -ē.
2. Turris has accusative turrim and ablative turri or turre.
### FOURTH DECLENSION

#### b. NEUTERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ïnsigne, n., decoration</th>
<th>animal, n., animal</th>
<th>calcar, n., spur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stems</strong></td>
<td><strong>Stems</strong></td>
<td><strong>Stems</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ïnsigni-</td>
<td>animáli-</td>
<td>calcári-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ïnsign-</td>
<td>animál-</td>
<td>calcár-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ïnsigne</td>
<td>animális</td>
<td>animáli</td>
<td>ïnsigne</td>
<td>animálí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>calcáris</td>
<td>calcári</td>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>calcár</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-e or —</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-í</td>
<td>-e or —</td>
<td>-í</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ïnsignia</td>
<td>animália</td>
<td>animálibus</td>
<td>ïnsignia</td>
<td>animália</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcária</td>
<td>calcárium</td>
<td>calcáribus</td>
<td>calcária</td>
<td>calcáribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ia</td>
<td>-ium</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>-ia</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

#### 466. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. U-STEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adventus, m., arrival</th>
<th>cornü, n., horn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stem</strong></td>
<td><strong>Base</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adventu-</td>
<td>advent-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adventus</td>
<td>cornü</td>
<td>cornü</td>
<td>adventum</td>
<td>cornü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-us</td>
<td>-üs</td>
<td>-ui (ü)</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-í</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adventüs</td>
<td>cornua</td>
<td>adventibus</td>
<td>cornua</td>
<td>adventibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-üs</td>
<td>-uuum</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>-üs</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 467. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. Ř-STEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>diēs, m., day</th>
<th>rēs, f., thing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>diē-</td>
<td>rē-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base</td>
<td>di-</td>
<td>rē-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular Terminations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>diēs</th>
<th>rēs</th>
<th>-ēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diēī</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>-ēī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēī</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>-ēī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diēm</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>-ēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diē</td>
<td>rē</td>
<td>-ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>diēs</th>
<th>rēs</th>
<th>-ēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>rērum</td>
<td>-ērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 468. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>deus, m., god</th>
<th>domus, f., house</th>
<th>vis, f., strength</th>
<th>iter, n., way</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stems</td>
<td>deo-</td>
<td>domu-</td>
<td>vī- and vīri-</td>
<td>iter- and itiner-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bases</td>
<td>de-</td>
<td>dom-</td>
<td>v- and vīr-</td>
<td>iter- and itiner-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>deus</th>
<th>domus</th>
<th>vis</th>
<th>iter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dei</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>vīs (rare)</td>
<td>itineris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>domūi, -ō</td>
<td>vī (rare)</td>
<td>itinerī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>deum</td>
<td>domum</td>
<td>vīm</td>
<td>iter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>domō, -ū</td>
<td>vī</td>
<td>itinere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>deī, dī</th>
<th>domūs</th>
<th>vīrēs</th>
<th>itinerā</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>deōrum, deum</td>
<td>domuum, -ōrum</td>
<td>vīrium</td>
<td>itinerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>deīs, dīs</td>
<td>domībus</td>
<td>vīribus</td>
<td>itinerībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>deīs</td>
<td>domōs, -ūs</td>
<td>vīrīs, -ēs</td>
<td>itinerā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>deīs, dīs</td>
<td>domībus</td>
<td>vīribus</td>
<td>itinerībus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. The vocative singular of deus is like the nominative.*

*b. The locative of domus is domī.*
DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVES

469. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. O- AND Ā-STEMS

a. Adjectives in -us

*bonus, good* Stems *bono-* m. and n., *bonā- f.* Base *bon-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Adjectives in -er

*liber, free* Stems *libero-* m. and n., *liberā- f.* Base *liber-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>liberum</td>
<td>liberam</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberā</td>
<td>liberō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>liberōrum</td>
<td>liberārum</td>
<td>liberōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>liberōs</td>
<td>liberās</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDIX I

**puicher, pretty** Stems *pulchro-* m. and n., *puichrā-* f. Base *pulchr-*

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>puicher</td>
<td>puichra</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>puichrī</td>
<td>puichrae</td>
<td>pulchri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>puichrō</td>
<td>puichrae</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>puichrum</td>
<td>puichram</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>puichrō</td>
<td>puichrā</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>puichrī</td>
<td>puichrae</td>
<td>pulchraa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>puichrōrum</td>
<td>puichrārum</td>
<td>pulchrorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>puichrīs</td>
<td>puichrīs</td>
<td>pulchris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>puichrōs</td>
<td>puichrās</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>puichrīs</td>
<td>puichrīs</td>
<td>pulchris</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 470.

**THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES**

**alius, another** Stems *alio-* m. and n., *aliā-* f. Base *ali-*

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliūd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliū</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>aliūd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliiae</td>
<td>alia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>alia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>alia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliās</td>
<td>aliās</td>
<td>aliās</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ūnus, one, only** Stems *ūno-* m. and n., *ūnā-* f. Base *ūn-*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ūnus</td>
<td>ūna</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ūnius</td>
<td>ūnius</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ūni</td>
<td>ūni</td>
<td>ūni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
<td>ūnam</td>
<td>ūnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ūnō</td>
<td>ūnā</td>
<td>ūnō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### a.
For the complete list see § 108.
### DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

#### 471. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

**I. THREE ENDINGS**

|        | äcer, äcris, äcre, keen, eager | Stem äcri- | Base äcri-
|--------|---------------------------------|-------------|-------------
| **Singular** |                                |             |             |
| Masc.  | masc.                           |             |             |
| Fem.   | fem.                           |             |             |
| Neut.  | neut.                          |             |             |
| Nom.   | äcer                           | äcrēs       | äcria       |
| Gen.   | äcris                          | äcrium      | äcrium      |
| Dat.   | äcri                          | äcribus     | äcribus     |
| Acc.   | äcrem                          | äcris, -ēs  | àcria       |
| Abl.   | äcri                          | äcribus     | àcribus     |
|        |                                 |             |             |
| **Plural** |                                |             |             |
| Masc.  | masc.                           |             |             |
| Fem.   | fem.                           |             |             |
| Neut.  | neut.                          |             |             |
|        |                                 |             |             |

**II. TWO ENDINGS**

omnis, omne, every, all  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Stem omni-</th>
<th>Base omn-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masc. and Fem.</td>
<td>neut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td>omnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>omnem</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td>omnī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Plural** |            |           |
| Masc. and Fem. | neut. |            |
| Nom.   | omnēs     | omnia     |
| Gen.   | omnium    | omnium    |
| Dat.   | omnibus   | omnibus   |
| Acc.   | omnīs, -ēs | omnīa   |
| Abl.   | omnibus   | omnibus   |

**III. ONE ENDING**

pār, equal  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Stem pari-</th>
<th>Base par-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masc. and Fem.</td>
<td>neut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pār</td>
<td>pār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>paris</td>
<td>paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>parī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>parem</td>
<td>pār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>parī</td>
<td>parī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Plural** |            |           |
| Masc. and Fem. | neut. |            |
| Nom.   | parēs     | paria     |
| Gen.   | parium    | parium    |
| Dat.   | paribus   | paribus   |
| Acc.   | parīs, -ēs | paria   |
| Abl.   | paribus   | paribus   |

1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives have -ī in the ablative singular.
### 472. Present Active Participles

**amāns, loving**  
**STEM amanti-**  
**BASE amant-**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. amāns</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. amantis</td>
<td>amantis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. amanti</td>
<td>amanti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. amantem</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. amante, -ī</td>
<td>amante, -ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**iēns, going**  
**STEM ienti-, eunti-**  
**BASE ient-, eunt-**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. iēns</td>
<td>iēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. euntis</td>
<td>euntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. euntī</td>
<td>euntī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. euntem</td>
<td>iēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. eunte, -ī</td>
<td>eunte, -ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 473. Regular Comparison of Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MASC.</td>
<td>MASC. AND FEM.</td>
<td>NEUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altus (alto-)</td>
<td>altior</td>
<td>altius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber (libero-)</td>
<td>liberior</td>
<td>liberius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher (pulchro-)</td>
<td>pulchrior</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audāx (audāci-)</td>
<td>audāciōr</td>
<td>audācius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevis (brevi-)</td>
<td>brevior</td>
<td>brevius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer (ācri-)</td>
<td>ācriōr</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 474. Declension of Comparatives

**altior, higher**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. altior</td>
<td>altius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. altiōris</td>
<td>altiōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. altiōrī</td>
<td>altiōrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. altiōrem</td>
<td>altius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. altiōre</td>
<td>altiōre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>plūs</td>
<td>plūris</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>plūs</td>
<td>plūre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um, good</td>
<td>melior, melius, better</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um, best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um, bad</td>
<td>peior, peius, worse</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um, worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um, great</td>
<td>maior, maius, greater</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um, greatest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um, much</td>
<td>—, plūs, more</td>
<td>plūrimus, -a, -um, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um, small</td>
<td>minor, minus, smaller</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um, smallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senex, senis, old</td>
<td>senior</td>
<td>maximus nātū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iuvenis, -e, young</td>
<td>iūnior</td>
<td>minimus nātū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetus, veteris, old</td>
<td>vetustior, -ius</td>
<td>veterrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, -e, easy</td>
<td>facilior, -ius</td>
<td>facillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis, -e, difficult</td>
<td>difficilior, -ius</td>
<td>difficillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similis, -e, similar</td>
<td>similior, -ius</td>
<td>simillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissimilis, -e, dissimilar</td>
<td>dissimilior, -ius</td>
<td>dissimillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humilis, -e, low</td>
<td>humilior, -ius</td>
<td>humillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracilis, -e, slender</td>
<td>gracilior, -ius</td>
<td>gracillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exterus, outward</td>
<td>exterior, outer, exterior</td>
<td>extimus, last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferus, below</td>
<td>inferior, lower</td>
<td>infimus, lowest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterus, following</td>
<td>posterior, later</td>
<td>postrēmus, last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superus, above</td>
<td>superior, higher</td>
<td>postumus, highest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[cis, citrá, on this side]</td>
<td>citerior, hither</td>
<td>citimus, hithermost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[in, intrá, in, within]</td>
<td>interior, inner</td>
<td>intimus, inmost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[prae, pró, before]</td>
<td>prior, former</td>
<td>prīmus, first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[prope, near]</td>
<td>proprior, nearer</td>
<td>proximus, next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ultrá, beyond]</td>
<td>ulterior, further</td>
<td>ultimus, furthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## APPENDIX I

### 476. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cărē (cārus), dearly</td>
<td>cărius</td>
<td>căriissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserē (miser), wretchedly</td>
<td>miserius</td>
<td>miserrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācriter (ācer), sharply</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile (facilis), easily</td>
<td>facilius</td>
<td>facillimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 477. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>diū, long, a long time</td>
<td>diūtius</td>
<td>diūtissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene (bonus), well</td>
<td>melius, better</td>
<td>optimē, best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male (malus), ill</td>
<td>peius, worse</td>
<td>pessimē, worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnopere, greatly</td>
<td>magis, more</td>
<td>maximē, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum (multus), much</td>
<td>plūs, more</td>
<td>plurīnum, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum, little</td>
<td>minus, less</td>
<td>minimē, least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe, often</td>
<td>saepius</td>
<td>saepissimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 478. NUMERALS

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting ūnus, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mīlle used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like bonus, -a, -um.

#### Cardinals

*(How many)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>one</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>three, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Ordinals

*(In what order)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>prīma, -a, -um</th>
<th>secundus (or alter)</th>
<th>tertius</th>
<th>quārtus</th>
<th>quintus</th>
<th>sextus</th>
<th>septimus</th>
<th>octāvus</th>
<th>nōnas</th>
<th>decimus</th>
<th>ūndecimus</th>
<th>duodecimus</th>
<th>tertius decimus</th>
<th>quārtus decimus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>first</td>
<td>second</td>
<td>third, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


NUMERALS

CARDINALS

15, quindecim
16, sedecim
17, septendecim
18, duodeviginti (octodecim)
19, undeviginti (novendecim)
20, viginti
21, viginti unus or
   unus et viginti, etc.
30, triginta
40, quadraginta
50, quinquaginta
60, sexaginta
70, septuaginta
80, octoginta
90, nonaginta
100, centum
101, centum (et) unus, etc.
120, centum (et) viginti
121, centum (et) viginti unus, etc.
200, ducenti, -ae, -a
300, trecenti
400, quadringenti
500, quingenti
600, sescenti
700, septingenti
800, octingenti
900, nongenti
1000, mille

ORDINALS

quintus decimus
sextus decimus
septimus decimus
duodeviginti
nonaginta
vicesimus

vicentesimus

trigesimus
quadragessimus
quinquagessimus
sexagessimus
septuagessimus
octogessimus
nonagessimus
centesimal

cententesimus (et) primus, etc.
cententesimus vicentesimus
cententesimus (et) vicentesimus primus
ducentesimus
trecentesimus
quadringentesimus
quingentesimus
sescentesimus
septingentesimus
octingentesimus
nongentesimus
millesimus

479. Declension of duo, two, tres, three, and mille, a thousand.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duze</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tria</td>
<td>mille milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>duarum</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>mille milium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>mille milibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>duos or duo</td>
<td>duas</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tris or tres</td>
<td>tria</td>
<td>mille milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>mille milibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE. Mille is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of unus cf. § 470.
### PERSONAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ego</td>
<td>nōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>meī</td>
<td>nostrum, -trī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mihi</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>nōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tuō</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuī</td>
<td>vestrum, -trī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tibi</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that suī is always reflexive.

### DEMONSTRATIVE

Demonstratives belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings -īus and -ī in the gen. and dat. sing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ipsī’us</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ipsūō</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsūō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huicius</td>
<td>hūc</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hic, this (here), he</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iste</td>
<td>iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
<td>istud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>istī’us</td>
<td>ista</td>
<td>istud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>ista</td>
<td>istud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>ista</td>
<td>istud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
<td>istō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iste</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>istārūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>isti’us</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>istārūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>istārūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istam</td>
<td>istārūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
<td>istārūm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iste</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>istās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>isti’us</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>istās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>istās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istam</td>
<td>istās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
<td>istās</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iste</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>isti’us</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istam</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iste</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>isti’us</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>isti</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istam</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### RELATIVE PRONOUN

**ille, that (yonder), he**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>masc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em> ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em> illiūs</td>
<td>illiūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em> illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em> illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em> illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*is, this, that, he*

| Nom. | ea | id | iī, eī | eae | ea |
| Gen. | eius | eius | eius | eōrum | eārum | eō rum |
| Dat. | eī | eī | ei | iīs, eīs | iīs, eīs |
| Acc. | eum | eam | id | eōs | eās | ea |
| Abl. | eō | eā | eō | iīs, eīs | iīs, eīs |

**idem, the same**

| Nom. | ïdem | e'adem | idem | iē’dem | iē’dem | e’adem |
| Gen. | eius’dem | eius’dem | eius’dem | eōrun’dem | eārun’dem | eōrun’dem |
| Dat. | eī’dem | eī’dem | eī’dem | iīs’dem | iīs’dem | iīs’dem |
| Acc. | eun’dem | ean’dem | idem | eōs’dem | eās’dem | e’adem |
| Abl. | eō’dem | eā’dem | eō’dem | iīs’dem | iīs’dem | iīs’dem |

*Note. In the plural of is and idem the forms with two i’s are preferred, the two i’s being pronounced as one.*

### RELATIVE

**quī, who, which, that**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>masc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em> quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em> cuius</td>
<td>cuia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em> cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em> quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em> quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 483.

**INTERROGATIVE**

_quis, substantive, who, what_

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.</td>
<td>MASC. FEM. NEUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quis</td>
<td>qui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>quorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quò</td>
<td>què</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The interrogative adjective _qui, quae, quod_, is declined like the relative.

### 484.

**INDEFINITES**

_quis_ and _qui_, as declined above, are used also as indefinites (*some, any*). The other indefinites are compounds of _quis_ and _qui._

_quisque, each_

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.</td>
<td>MASC. FEM. NEUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quisque</td>
<td>quisque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius'que</td>
<td>cuius'que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cuique</td>
<td>cuique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quemque</td>
<td>quemque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quòque</td>
<td>quèque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 485.

_quidam, a certain one, a certain_

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has _quoddam_ and the substantive _quiddam._

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MASC. FEM. NEUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius'dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cuidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quendam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quòdham</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 _qua_ is generally used instead of _quae_ in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>quīdam</th>
<th>quaedam</th>
<th>quaedam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>quōrun‘dam</td>
<td>quārun‘dam</td>
<td>quōrun‘dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>quibus‘dam</td>
<td>quibus‘dam</td>
<td>quibus‘dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quōsdam</td>
<td>quāsdam</td>
<td>quaedam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quibus‘dam</td>
<td>quibus‘dam</td>
<td>quibus‘dam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

486. quisquam, substantive, any one (at all)

Masc. and Fem. Neut.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>quisquam</th>
<th>quicquam (quidquam)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius‘quam</td>
<td>cuius‘quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cuiquam</td>
<td>cuiquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quemquam</td>
<td>quicquam (quidquam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quōquam</td>
<td>quōquam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

487. aliquis, substantive, some one. aliquī, adjective, some

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aliquis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alicu‘ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>alicui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>alicuem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>alicuō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural for both Substantive and Adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aliquī</td>
<td>aliquae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alicuō‘rum</td>
<td>alicuā‘rum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ali’quibus</td>
<td>ali’quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ali’quīs</td>
<td>ali’quās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ali’quibus</td>
<td>ali’quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. quis (qui), any one, any, is the least definite (§ 297. b). aliquis (aliquī), some one, some, is more definite than quis. quisquam, any one (at all), and its adjective ullus, any, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.
## REGULAR VERBS

### FIRST CONJUGATION. Å-VERBS. AMÖ

**Principal Parts** amō, amāre, amāvi, amātus  
**Pres. Stem** amā-  
**Perf. Stem** amāv-  
**Part. Stem** amāt-

### Active

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I love, am loving, do love, etc.</td>
<td>I am loved, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amō</td>
<td>amo mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amās</td>
<td>amātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amat</td>
<td>amat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I loved, was loving, did love, etc.</th>
<th>I was loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābam</td>
<td>amābāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābās</td>
<td>amābātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābat</td>
<td>amābant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall love, etc.</th>
<th>I shall be loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābō</td>
<td>amābimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābis</td>
<td>amābitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābit</td>
<td>amābunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have loved, loved, did love, etc.</th>
<th>I have been (was) loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvi</td>
<td>amāvimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvistī</td>
<td>amāvistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvit</td>
<td>amāvērunt, -re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had loved, etc.</th>
<th>I had been loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāverani</td>
<td>amāverāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverās</td>
<td>amāverātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverat</td>
<td>amāverant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have loved, etc.</th>
<th>I shall have been loved, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāverō</td>
<td>amāverimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāveris</td>
<td>amāveritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FIRST CONJUGATION

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>PLUPERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amem</td>
<td>amēmus</td>
<td>amer</td>
<td>amēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amēs</td>
<td>amētis</td>
<td>amēris, -re</td>
<td>amēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amet</td>
<td>ament</td>
<td>amētur</td>
<td>amērentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amārem</td>
<td>amāremus</td>
<td>amārer</td>
<td>amāremur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāres</td>
<td>amāretis</td>
<td>amārēris, -re</td>
<td>amāreminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāret</td>
<td>amārent</td>
<td>amārētur</td>
<td>amārentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverim</td>
<td>amāverimus</td>
<td>sim</td>
<td>simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāveris</td>
<td>amāveritis</td>
<td>sīs, -a, -um</td>
<td>sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td>amātus, -ē, -ae, -a</td>
<td>amātī, -ē, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvissem</td>
<td>amāvissēmus</td>
<td>essem</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvissēs</td>
<td>amāvissētis</td>
<td>essēs, -ae, -a</td>
<td>essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvissent</td>
<td>amāvissent</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā, love thou</td>
<td>amātor, thou shalt be loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāte, love ye</td>
<td>amantō, they shall be loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE

- **Pres.** amāre, to love
- **Perf.** amāvisse, to have loved
- **Fut.** amātūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to love

#### PARTICIPLES

- **Pres.** amāns, -antis, loving
- **Fut.** amātūrus, -a, -um, about to love
- **Perf.** amātus, -a, -um, having been loved

#### GERUND

- **Nom.** amandī, of loving
- **Gen.** amandō, of loving
- **Dat.** amandō, for loving
- **Acc.** amandum, loving
- **Abl.** amandō, by loving

#### SUPINE (Active Voice)

- **Acc.** [amātum], to love
- **Abl.** [amātū], to love, in the loving

1 Sometimes called the future passive participle.
## SECOND CONJUGATION. É-VERBS. MONEÖ

### Principal Parts
- moneō, monēre, monūi, monitus

### Active

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I advise, etc.</th>
<th>I am advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneō</td>
<td>monēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>monētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monet</td>
<td>monēnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēris, -re</td>
<td>monēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>monentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was advising, etc.</th>
<th>I was advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbam</td>
<td>monēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>monēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>monēbant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbar</td>
<td>monēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbāris, -re</td>
<td>monēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbātur</td>
<td>monēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall advise, etc.</th>
<th>I shall be advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbō</td>
<td>monēbimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbis</td>
<td>monēbitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbit</td>
<td>monēbunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbor</td>
<td>monēbimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēberis, -re</td>
<td>monēbiminí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbitur</td>
<td>monēbuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have advised, I advised, etc.</th>
<th>I have been (was) advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monui</td>
<td>monuimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuistī</td>
<td>monuistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuit</td>
<td>monuērunt, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus, sum</td>
<td>monitus, eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-a, -um</td>
<td>-a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitī, sumus</td>
<td>monitī, erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estis</td>
<td>erātis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had advised, etc.</th>
<th>I had been advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerās</td>
<td>monuerātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuerant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus, eram</td>
<td>monitus, eras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-a, -um</td>
<td>-a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitī</td>
<td>monitī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erāmus</td>
<td>erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erant</td>
<td>erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have advised, etc.</th>
<th>I shall have been advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuerō</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus, erō</td>
<td>monitus, eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-a, -um</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitī, erit</td>
<td>monitī, erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erāmus</td>
<td>erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erant</td>
<td>erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SECOND CONJUGATION

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

moneam monēāmus monear moneāmur
moneās monēātis moneāris, -re moneāmini
moneat monēant moneātur moneāntur

IMPERFECT

monērem monērēmus monērer monērēmur
monērēs monērētis monērēris, -re monērēmini
monēret monērent monērentur

PERFECT

monuerim monuerimus monitus, -a, -um sim monitū, -a, -um simus
monueris monueritis sis monitū, -a, -um sit sint
monuerit monuerint

PLOUPERFECT

monuissem monuissemus monitus, -a, -um essēmus
monuissēs monuissetis essēs monitū, -a, -um essētis
monuisset monuissent esset essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē, advise thou monēre, be thou advised
monēte, advise ye monēmini, be ye advised

FUTURE

monētō, thou shalt advise monētor, thou shalt be advised
monētō, he shall advise monētor, he shall be advised
monētōte, you shall advise
monentō, they shall advise monentor, they shall be advised

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre, to advise
Perf. monuisse, to have advised

Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to advise [monitūm irtī], to be about to be advised

PARTICIPLES

Pres. monēns, -entis, advising

Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um, about to advise

Perf. monitu, -a, -um, having been advised

GERUND

Nom. monendō, of advising
Gen. monēndū, of advising
Dat. monēndō, for advising
Acc. monendum, advising
Abl. monēndō, by advising

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [monitum], to advise
Abl. [monitū], to advise, in the advising
### APPENDIX I

#### 490. THIRD CONJUGATION. Ė-VERBS. REGŌ

**Principal Parts** regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

**Pres. Stem** rege-  **Perf. Stem** rēx-  **Part. Stem** rēct-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ACTIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>INDICATIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>PASSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I rule, etc.</td>
<td>I am ruled, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regō</td>
<td>regimus</td>
<td>re'gor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regis</td>
<td>regitis</td>
<td>re'geris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regit</td>
<td>regunt</td>
<td>re'gitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was ruling, etc.</td>
<td>I was ruled, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbam</td>
<td>regēbāmus</td>
<td>regē'bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbās</td>
<td>regēbātis</td>
<td>regēbā'ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbat</td>
<td>regēbant</td>
<td>regēbā'tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regēbā'mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regēbā'minī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regēbāntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td>I shall rule, etc.</td>
<td>I shall be ruled, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regam</td>
<td>regēmus</td>
<td>re'gar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēs</td>
<td>regētis</td>
<td>regē'ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reget</td>
<td>regent</td>
<td>regē'tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regē'mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regē'minī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regēntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>I have ruled, etc.</td>
<td>I have been ruled, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| rēxī       | rēximus        | rēctus, \{sum | sum
| rēxistī    | rēxistis       | -a, -um \{est | est
| rēxit      | rēxērunt, -re  | -ae, -a \{sunt | sunt
|            |                | eram \{eram | eram
|            |                | rēctī, -ae, -a | rētis
|            |                | erat \{erat | erant
| **PLUPERFECT** | I had ruled, etc. | I had been ruled, etc. |
| rēxeram    | rēxerāmus      | rēctus, \{erō | erō
| rēxerās    | rēxerātis      | -a, -um \{eris | eris
| rēxerat    | rēxerant       | -ae, -a \{erint | erint
|            |                | rēctī, rētīs | erimus
|            |                | erant | erunt
| **FUTURE PERFECT** | I shall have ruled, etc. | I shall have been ruled, etc. |
| rēxerō     | rēxerīmus      | rēctus, \{erō | erō
| rēxerīs    | rēxerītis      | -a, -um \{eris | eris
| rēxerīt    | rēxerīnt       | -ae, -a \{erint | erint
|            |                | rēctī, rētīs | erimus
|            |                | erant | erunt
### THIRD CONJUGATION

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>IMPERFECT</th>
<th>PERFECT</th>
<th>PLUPERFECT</th>
<th>IMPERATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regam</td>
<td>regāmus</td>
<td>regar</td>
<td>rēctus, sim</td>
<td>regi, rule thou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regās</td>
<td>regātis</td>
<td>regāris, -re</td>
<td>rēctī, sīs</td>
<td>regere, be thou ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regat</td>
<td>regant</td>
<td>regātur</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
<td>regimini, be ye ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regerem</td>
<td>regerēmus</td>
<td>regerer</td>
<td>sīmus</td>
<td>regere, be thou ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regerēs</td>
<td>regerētis</td>
<td>regerēris, -re</td>
<td>sītis</td>
<td>regere, be thou ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regeret</td>
<td>regerent</td>
<td>regerētur</td>
<td>sīnt</td>
<td>regere, be thou ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerim</td>
<td>rēxerimus</td>
<td>rēcussus, deum</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>regi, to be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxeris</td>
<td>rēxeritis</td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
<td>rēcussus, -a, -um esse, to have been ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerit</td>
<td>rēxerint</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>essētis</td>
<td>[rēcussus īri], to be about to be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxissem</td>
<td>rēxissemus</td>
<td>rēcussus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>rēcussus, -a, -um esse, to have been ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxisse</td>
<td>rēxissetis</td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>essētis</td>
<td>[rēcussus īri], to be about to be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxisset</td>
<td>rēxisSENT</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>essētis</td>
<td>[rēcussus īri], to be about to be ruled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rege, rule thou</td>
<td>regitor, thou shalt be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regite, rule ye</td>
<td>regitor, he shall be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regitō, thou shalt rule</td>
<td>reguntor, they shall be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regitō, he shall rule</td>
<td>reguntor, they shall be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regitōte, ye shall rule</td>
<td>reguntor, they shall be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reguntō, they shall rule</td>
<td>reguntor, they shall be ruled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regere, to rule</td>
<td>rēxisse, to have ruled</td>
<td>rēcussus, -a, -um esse, to be about to rule</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regēns, -entis, ruling</td>
<td>rēcussus, -a, -um, about to rule</td>
<td>rēcussus, -a, -um, having been ruled, ruled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regendi, of ruling</td>
<td>regendō, of ruling</td>
<td>regendō, for ruling</td>
<td>regendum, ruling</td>
<td>regendō, by ruling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUPINE (Active Voice)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>Abl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[rēcussus], to rule</td>
<td>[rēcussus], to rule, in the ruling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix I

#### 491. Fourth Conjugation. I-Verbs. Audiō

**Principal Parts**
- audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus

**Pres. Stem**: audi-
- **Perf. Stem**: audīv-
- **Part. Stem**: audit-

### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form 1</th>
<th>Form 2</th>
<th>Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>audīmus</td>
<td>au’dior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audis</td>
<td>auditis</td>
<td>audī’ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audiunt</td>
<td>audī’tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
<td>audiēbam</td>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
<td>audiē’bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audiēbās</td>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
<td>audiēbā’ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>audiēbant</td>
<td>audiēbā’tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>audiam</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
<td>au’diar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audiēs</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td>audiē’ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audiet</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td>audiē’tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td>audivī</td>
<td>audīvīmus</td>
<td>audiĭtus, -ae, -a sum{sumus}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audivistī</td>
<td>audīvīstis</td>
<td>est{estis}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audivīt</td>
<td>audīvīrant, -re</td>
<td>est{estis}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td>audīveram</td>
<td>audīverāmus</td>
<td>audiĭtus, eram{erāmus}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audīverās</td>
<td>audīverātis</td>
<td>erās{erātis}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audīverat</td>
<td>audīverant</td>
<td>erat{erant}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>audīverō</td>
<td>audīverimus</td>
<td>audītī, erō{erimus}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audīveris</td>
<td>audīveritis</td>
<td>erīs{eritis}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audīverit</td>
<td>audīverint</td>
<td>erit{erunt}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FOURTH CONJUGATION

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audiam | audiamus | audiar | audiamur
audiás | audiáts | audiáris, -re | audiáminí
audiat | audiánt | audiátor | audiántur

IMPERFECT

audírem | audíremus | audírer | audíremur
audirés | audirétsis | audiíris, -re | audiíminí
audiíret | audiírent | audiíretur | audiírentur

PERFECT

audíverim | audíverimus | audítus, sím | audíti, símus
audíveris | audíveritis | -a, -um sít | -ae, -a sint
audíverit | audíverint | audítus, essém | audíti, essëmus

PLUPERFECT

audívissem | audívissemus | audiívisse, -a, -um esse | audiívisset, -ae, -a esse
audívissés | audívissetis | essém | esse
audívisset | audívissent | essës | essëtis

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audi, hear thou | audíra, be thou heard
audite, hear ye | audiíminí, be ye heard

FUTURE

audió, thou shalt hear | audítor, thou shalt be heard
auditó, he shall hear | audítor, he shall be heard
audítôte, ye shall hear
audiuntó, they shall hear | audíuntor, they shall be heard

INFINITIVE

Pres. | audiére, to hear
Perf. | audívisse, to have heard
Fut. | audítorus, -a, -um esse, to be about to hear

PARTICIPLES

Pres. audiéns, -entis, hearing
Fut. audiérrus, -a, -um, about to hear
Perf. —

GERUND

Nom. —
Gen. audiëndi, of hearing
Dat. audiëndó, for hearing
Acc. audiëndum, hearing
Abl. audiëndó, by hearing

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [audiínum], to hear
Abl. [audiíui], to hear, in the hearing
### APPENDIX I

#### 492. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -IŌ. CAPIO

**Principal Parts** capiō, capere, cēpī, captus  
**Pres. Stem** cape-  
**Perf. Stem** cēp-  
**Part. Stem** capt-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>ca’pior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>ca’peris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>ca’pitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IMPERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td>ca’pie’bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td>capiēbā’ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
<td>capiēbā’tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>ca’piar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>capiē’ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēt</td>
<td>capient</td>
<td>capiē’tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
<td>sum, es, est, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PLUPERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
<td>eram, erās, erat, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FUTURE PERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
<td>erō, eris, erit, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SUBJUNCTIVE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiam, capiās, capiat, etc.</td>
<td>capiar, -iāris, -re, -iātur, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IMPERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc.</td>
<td>caperer, -crēris, -re, -crētur, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
<td>sim, sis, sit, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PLUPERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
<td>essem, essēs, esset, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IMPERATIVE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d Pers. capē</td>
<td>capite</td>
<td>capere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deponent Verbs

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2d Pers.</th>
<th>3d Pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capitō</td>
<td>capitō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitőte</td>
<td>capitőte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitor</td>
<td>capitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiuntō</td>
<td>capiuntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capere</td>
<td>cēpisse</td>
<td>captūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēns, -ientis</td>
<td>captūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gerund**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>Supine (Active Voice)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiendī</td>
<td>[captum]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortor</td>
<td>hortāris, -re</td>
<td>hortābar</td>
<td>hortābor</td>
<td>hortātus sum</td>
<td>partior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vereor</td>
<td>verēris, -re</td>
<td>verēbar</td>
<td>verēbor</td>
<td>veritus sum</td>
<td>partūris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>sequeris, -re</td>
<td>sequēbar</td>
<td>sequēbor</td>
<td>secūtus sum</td>
<td>partītus, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partior</td>
<td>partūris, -re</td>
<td>partītus, -re</td>
<td>partītus, -re</td>
<td>partītus, -re</td>
<td>partītus, -re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with an asterisk. Deponent -ō verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capiō.
### APPENDIX I

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>horter</th>
<th>verear</th>
<th>sequar</th>
<th>partiar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>hortārer</td>
<td>verērer</td>
<td>sequerer</td>
<td>partīrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>hortātus sim</td>
<td>verītus sim</td>
<td>secūtus sim</td>
<td>partītus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>hortātus essem</td>
<td>verītus essem</td>
<td>secūtus essem</td>
<td>partītus essem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>hortāre</th>
<th>verēre</th>
<th>sequere</th>
<th>partīre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>hortātor</td>
<td>verētor</td>
<td>sequitor</td>
<td>partitor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>hortāri</th>
<th>verēri</th>
<th>sequī</th>
<th>partūri</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>hortātus esse</td>
<td>verītus esse</td>
<td>secūtus esse</td>
<td>partītus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td><em>hortātūrus esse</em></td>
<td><em>verītūrus esse</em></td>
<td><em>secūtūrus esse</em></td>
<td><em>partītūrus esse</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Particles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th><em>hortāns</em></th>
<th><em>verēns</em></th>
<th><em>sequēns</em></th>
<th><em>partīēns</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td><em>hortātūrus</em></td>
<td><em>verītūrus</em></td>
<td><em>secūtūrus</em></td>
<td><em>partītūrus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>hortātus</td>
<td>verītus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>partītus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>hortāndus</td>
<td>verendus</td>
<td>sequendus</td>
<td>partīendidus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Gerund

*hortāndī, etc.*    *verendī, etc.*    *sequendī, etc.*    *partiendī, etc.*

#### Supine

*[hortātum, -tū]*  *[verītum, -tū]*  *[secūtum, -tū]*  *[partītum, -tū]*

### IRREGULAR VERBS

#### 494.

*sum, am, be*

**Principal Parts**  *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus*

**Pres. Stem**  *es-  
**Perf. Stem**  *fu-  
**Part. Stem**  *fut-*

#### Indicative

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum, I am</td>
<td>sumus, we are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es, thou art</td>
<td>estis, you are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est, he (she, it) is</td>
<td>sunt, they are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eram, I was</td>
<td>erāmus, we were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erās, thou wast</td>
<td>erātis, you were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erat, he was</td>
<td>erant, they were</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IRREGULAR VERBS

FUTURE

erō, I shall be
eris, thou wilt be
erit, he will be
erimus, we shall be
eritis, you will be
erunt, they will be

PERFECT

fuī, I have been, was
fuistī, thou hast been, wast
fuit, he has been, was
fuimus, we have been, were
fuistis, you have been, were
fuērunt, they have been, were

PLUPERFECT

fueram, I had been
fuerās, thou hadst been
fuerat, he had been
fuerāmus, we had been
fuerātis, you had been
fuerant, they had been

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, I shall have been
fueris, thou wilt have been
fuerit, he will have been
fuerimus, we shall have been
fueritis, you will have been
fuerint, they will have been

PRESENT

singulare plural
sim simus
sīs sitīs
sit sint

PERFECT

fuerim fuerimus
fueris fueritis
fuerit fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

sūngulare plural
imperfectum
sīm simus
sīs sitīs
sīt sint

fuerim fuerimus
fueris fueritis
fuerit fuerint

IMPERFECT

sūngulare plural
essem essēmus
essēs essētis
esset essent

fuissem fuerēmus
fuisseis fuerētis
fuisset fuerēnt

IMPERATIVE

2d Pers. Sing. es, be thou
2d Pers. Plur. este, be ye
3d Pers. Sing. estō, thou shalt be
3d Pers. Plur. estōte, ye shall be
3d Pers. Plur. suntō, they shall be

INFINITIVE

Pres. esse, to be
Perf. fuisse, to have been
Fut. futūrus, -a, -um esse or fore,
     to be about to be

PARTICIPLE

futūrus, -a, -um, about to be
possum, be able, can

Principal Parts possum, posse, potuī, —

Indicative | Subjunctive
---|---
**Singular** | **Plural** | **Singular** | **Plural**
Pres. | possum | possumus | possim | possī'mus
potes | potes'tis | possis | possī'tis
potest | possunt | possit | possint
Impf. | poteram | poterāmus | possem | possē'mus
Fut. | poterō | poterimus | ——— | ———
Perf. | potuī | potuimus | potuerim | potuerimus
Plup. | potueram | potuerāmus | potuissem | potuisse'mus
F. P. | potuerō | potuerimus | ——— | ———

Infinitive
Pres. posse

Participle
Pres. potēns, gen. -entis, (adjective) powerful

prōsum, benefit

Principal Parts prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus
Pres. Stem prōdes- | Perf. Stem prōfu- | Part. Stem prōfut-

Indicative | Subjunctive
---|---
**Singular** | **Plural** | **Singular** | **Plural**
Pres. | prōsum | prō'sumus | prōsim | prōsi'mus
prōdes | prōdes'tis | prōsis | prōsi'tis
prōdest | prōsunt | prōsit | prōsint
Impf. | prōderam | prōderāmus | prōdessem | prodessē'mus
Fut. | prōderō | prōderimus | ——— | ———
Perf. | prōfui | prōfuimus | prōfuerim | prōfuerimus
Plup. | prō fueram | prō fuitāmus | prōfuissem | prōfui'seus
F. P. | prōfuerō | prōfuerimus | ——— | ———

Imperative
Pres. 2d Pers. prōdes, prōdeste | Fut. 2d Pers. prōdestō, prōdestōte

Infinitive
Pres. prōdesse | Perf. prōfuisse | Fut. prōfutūrus, -a, -um esse

Future Participle prōfutūrus, -a, -um
IRREGULAR VERBS

497. **Principal Parts**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{volō, velle, volui,} & \quad \text{be willing, will, wish} \\
\text{nōlō, nōlle, nōlui,} & \quad \text{be unwilling, will not} \\
\text{mālō, mālle, mālui,} & \quad \text{be more willing, prefer}
\end{align*}
\]

Nōlō and mālō are compounds of volō. Nōlō is for ne (not) + volō, and mālō for mā (from magis, more) + volō. The second person vis is from a different root.

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Singular 1st</th>
<th>Singular 2nd</th>
<th>Singular 3rd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>volō</td>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>mālō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>nōn vis</td>
<td>māvīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vult</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>māvult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
<td>mālumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
<td>māvultis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>violent</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imprf.</td>
<td>volēbam</td>
<td>nōlebam</td>
<td>mālebam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>volam, volēs, etc.</td>
<td>nōlam, nōlēs, etc.</td>
<td>mālam, mālēs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>volui</td>
<td>nōlui</td>
<td>mālui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>nōlueram</td>
<td>mālueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>voluerō</td>
<td>nōluerō</td>
<td>māluerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Singular 1st</th>
<th>Singular 2nd</th>
<th>Singular 3rd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>velim</td>
<td>nōlim</td>
<td>mālim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velis</td>
<td>nōlis</td>
<td>mālis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velit</td>
<td>nōlit</td>
<td>mālit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>velīmus</td>
<td>nōlīmus</td>
<td>mālīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velītis</td>
<td>nōlītis</td>
<td>mālītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velint</td>
<td>nōlint</td>
<td>mālint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imprf.</td>
<td>vellem</td>
<td>nōllem</td>
<td>mālem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluerim</td>
<td>nōluerim</td>
<td>māluerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>voluissem</td>
<td>nōluissem</td>
<td>māluissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>nōlī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>nōlītō, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX I

**INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>velle</th>
<th>nólle</th>
<th>mälle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluisse</td>
<td>nóluisse</td>
<td>mäluisse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLE**

| Pres.  | volëns, -entis | nölëns, -entis |

---

**498. ferō, bear, carry, endure**

**Principal Parts** ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

**Pres. Stem** fer-  **Perf. Stem** tul-  **Part. Stem** lāt-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ferō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fertis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>feram, ferēs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tulī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. 2d Pers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. 2d Pers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d Pers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IRREGULAR VERBS

**GERUND**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>ferendī</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>ferendum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ferendō</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ferendō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 499.

**eō, go**

**Principal Parts** eō, ire, ī (īvī), itum (n. perf. part.)

**Pres. Stem** ī-  
**Perf. stem** ī- or īv-  
**Part. Stem** īt-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td></td>
<td>sing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eō</td>
<td>īmus</td>
<td>eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īs</td>
<td>ītis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>eunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>ībām</td>
<td>īrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ībō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>ī (īvī)</td>
<td>ierim (iverim)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>ieram (iveram)</td>
<td>īśsem (īvissem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>īrō (īverō)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>iēns, gen. euntis (§ 472)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>īsсе (īvisse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>itūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>eundi</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>eundum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eundō</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eundō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Supine**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>itum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ītū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The verb eō is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as ītur, ītum est, etc.

b. In the perfect system the forms with v are very rare.

#### 500.

**fiō, passive of faciō; be made, become, happen**

**Principal Parts** fiō, fieri, factus sum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td></td>
<td>sing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiō</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>fiunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>fiēbām</td>
<td>fierem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>fiam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## APPENDIX I

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um erō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um similis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um esses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>fierī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>[factum iri]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>factus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>faciendus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

CASTRA MURO FOSSAQUE MUNIUNTUR
APPENDIX II

501. RULES OF SYNTAX

Note. The rules of syntax are here classified and numbered consecutively. The number of the text section in which the rule appears is given at the end of each.

Nomina tive Case

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative and answers the question Who? or What? § 36.

Agreement

2. A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject. § 28.

3. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb. § 76.

4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains. § 81.

5. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. § 65.

6. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb. § 215. a.

7. A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause. § 224.

Prepositions

8. A noun governed by a preposition must be in the accusative or ablative case. § 52.

Genitive Case

9. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive and answers the question Whose? § 38.

10. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of sum, and is then called the predicate genitive. § 409.

11. Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the partitive genitive. § 331.

12. Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective. § 443.
Dative Case

13. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. § 45.
14. The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs crēdō, faveō, noceō, pāreō, persuādeō, resistō, studeō, and others of like meaning. § 154.
15. Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative. § 426.
16. The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites. § 143.
17. The dative is used to denote the purpose or end for which; often with another dative denoting the person or thing affected. § 437.

Accusative Case

18. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative and answers the question Whom? or What? § 37.
19. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. § 214.
20. The place to which is expressed by ad or in with the accusative. Before names of towns, small islands, domus, and rūs the preposition is omitted. §§ 263, 266.
21. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative. § 336.
22. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, showing, and the like, may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives. § 392.

Ablative Case

23. Cause is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question Because of what? § 102.
24. Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question By means of what? or With what? § 103.
25. Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with cum. This answers the question With whom? § 104.
26. The ablative with cum is used to denote the manner of an action. Cum may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question How? or In what manner? § 105.
27. With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference. § 317.
28. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance. This is called the *ablative absolute*. § 381.

29. i. Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective. § 444.

2. Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective. § 445.

30. The ablative is used to denote *in what respect* something is true. § 398.

31. The *place from which* is expressed by ā or ab, dé, ē or ex with the separative ablative. This answers the question Whence? Before names of towns, small islands, domus, and rūs the preposition is omitted. §§ 264, 266.

32. Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning. This is called the *ablative of separation*. § 180.

33. The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition ā or ab. This is called the *ablative of the personal agent*. § 181.

34. The comparative degree, if quam is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative. § 309.

35. The *time when or within which* anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. § 275.

36. i. The *place at or in which* is expressed by the ablative with in. This answers the question Where? Before names of towns, small islands, and rūs the preposition is omitted. §§ 265, 266.

2. Names of towns and small islands, if singular and of the first or second declension, and the word domus express the *place in which* by the locative. § 268.

Gerund and Gerundive

37. i. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns. § 406. 1.

2. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual. § 406. 2.

38. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with ad, or the genitive with causā, is used to express purpose. § 407.
Moods and Tenses of Verbs

39. Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses, and secondary by secondary. § 358.

40. The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action in the principal clause. § 349.

41. A substantive clause of purpose with the subjunctive is used as object with verbs of commanding, urging, asking, persuading, or advising, where in English we should usually have the infinitive. § 366.

42. Verbs of fearing are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by ut (that not) or nē (that or lest). § 372.

43. Consecutive clauses of result are introduced by ut or ut nōn, and have the verb in the subjunctive. § 385.

44. Object clauses of result with ut or ut nōn are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about. § 386.

45. A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the subjunctive of characteristic or description. § 390.

46. The conjunction cum means when, since, or although. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means when and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place. § 396.

47. When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive, and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive. § 416.

48. The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving. § 419.

49. A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive. § 418.

50. In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence. § 432.
APPENDIX III

REVIEWS

I. REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR
THROUGH LESSON VIII

502. Give the English of the following words:

Nouns
agricola  dea  gallina  pugna
ancilla  domina  iniuria  sagitta
aqua  fabula  insula  silva
casa  fera  ina  terra
causa  filia  nauta  tuba
cena  fortuna  pecunia  via
corona  fuga  puella  victoria

Adjectives
alta  clara  lata  magna  nova  pulchra
bona  grata  longa  mala  parva  sola

Verbs
amat  est  laborat  narrat  nuntiat  portat  sunt
dat  habitat  laudat  necat  parat  pugnat  vocat

Prepositions  Pronouns  Adverbs  Conjunctions  Interrogative
a or ab  mea  cur  et  -no
ad  tua  deinde  quia
cum  quis  non  quod
de or ex  cuius  ubi
in  quem  quid

1 It is suggested that each of these reviews be assigned for a written test.
2 Proper nouns and proper adjectives are not repeated in the reviews. Words
used in Cæsar’s “Gallic War” are in heavy type.

265
503. Give the Latin of the following words:¹

Underline the words you do not remember. Do not look up a single word till you have gone through the entire list. Then drill on the words you have underlined.

flight  tells  goddess  what
story   money  wild beast  way
new    calls   praises (verb)  bad
lives (verb)  with  alone  loves
away from  your  pleasing  pretty
who     then, in the  prepares  water
why    next place  are  great
forest  daughter  to  is
wreath  to whom  because  announces
deep, high  fortune  arrow  injury, wrong
dinner  famous  cottage  battle (noun)
out from  labors (verb)  gives  small
my     kills  girl  fights (verb)
where  not  good  maid
trompet  in  carries  down from
lady, mistress  and  chicken  long
whom  sailor  victory  cause
island  farmer  land  whose
wide

504. Review Questions. How many syllables has a Latin word? How are words divided into syllables? What is the ultima? the penult? the antepenult? When is a syllable short? When is a syllable long? What is the law of Latin accent? Define the subject of a sentence; the predicate; the object; the copula. What is inflection? declension? conjugation? What is the ending of the verb in the third person singular, and what in the plural? What does the form of a noun show? Name the Latin cases. What case is used for the subject? the direct object? the possessor? What relation is expressed by the dative case? Give the rule for the indirect object. How are questions answered in Latin? What is a predicate adjective? an attributive adjective? What is meant by agreement? Give the rule for the agreement of the adjective. What are the three relations expressed by the ablative? What can you say of the position of the possessive pronoun? the modifying genitive? the adjective? What is the base? What is grammatical gender? What is the rule for gender in the first declension? What are the general principles of Latin word order?

¹ The translations of words used in Cæsar are in italics.
505. Fill out the following summary of the first declension:

THE FIRST OR Ā-DECLENSION

1. Ending in the nominative singular
2. Rule for gender
3. Case terminations
   a. Singular
   b. Plural
4. Irregular nouns

II. REVIEW OF LESSONS IX–XVII

506. Give the English of the following words:

**Nouns of the First Declension**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>agrī cultūra</th>
<th>cōpia</th>
<th>fāma</th>
<th>galea</th>
<th>lacrima</th>
<th>patria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnstantia</td>
<td>dīligentia</td>
<td>fēmina</td>
<td>inopia</td>
<td>lōrica</td>
<td>praeda</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nouns of the Second Declension**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ager</th>
<th>cibus</th>
<th>frūmentum</th>
<th>oppidānus</th>
<th>scūtum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amīcus</td>
<td>cōnsilium</td>
<td>gladius</td>
<td>oppidum</td>
<td>servus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arma (plural)</td>
<td>domicilium</td>
<td>lēgātus</td>
<td>pilum</td>
<td>studium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auxilium</td>
<td>dominus</td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>populus</td>
<td>tēlum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bellum</td>
<td>equus</td>
<td>magister</td>
<td>praemium</td>
<td>vīcus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carrus</td>
<td>fīlius</td>
<td>mūrus</td>
<td>proelium</td>
<td>vir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castrum</td>
<td>flūvius</td>
<td>numeros</td>
<td>puer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions**

| aeger, aegra, aegrum | neuter, neutra, neutrum |
| alius, alia, aliud   | noster, nostra, nostrum |
| alter, altera, alterum| nūllus, -a, -um |
| armātus, -a, -um     | pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum |
| crēber, crēbra, crēbrum| sōlus, -a, -um |
| dūrus, -a, -um       | suus, -a, -um |
| fīnitimus, -a, -um   | tōtus, -a, -um |
| īnfirmus, -a, -um    | tuus, -a, -um |
| legiōnārius, -a, -um | ūllus, -a, -um |
| liber, libera, liberum| ūnus, -a, -um |
| mātūrus, -a, -um     | uter, utra, utrum |
| meus, -a, -um        | validus, -a, -um |
| miser, misera, miserum| vester, vestra, vestrum |
| multus, -a, -um      |                    |
APPENDIX III

Verbs
arat
cūrat
dēsiderat
mātūrat
properat

Demonstrative Pronouns
is, ea, id

Conjunctions
an
-que
sed

Adverbs
iam
quō
saepe

Preposition
apud

507. Give the Latin of the following words:
sword  war   shield (noun)  plan (noun)
corset  number  whole  people
man  my  it
your (plural)  free (adj.)  aid (noun)
hasten  children  legionary
but  wall  weak
among  grain  arms

Tear (noun)  weapon  master (of school)
village  one  friend
strong  plow (verb)  neighboring
long for  this or that  sick
and (enclitic)  already  lieutenant
often  helmet  field
want (noun)  river  report, rumor
which (of two)  zeal  abode

Care for  any  boy

or (in a question)  he  his own

Whither  slave  prize (noun)
wagon  your (singular)  master (owner)
townsmen  she  carefulness
wretched  woman  plenty
ripe  horse  troops

508. Review Questions. How many declensions are there? What three things must be known about a noun before it can be declined? What three cases of neuter nouns are always alike, and in what do they end in the plural? What two plural cases are always alike? When is the vocative singular not like the nominative? What is a predicate noun? With what does it agree? What is an appositive? Give the rule for the agreement of an appositive. How can we tell whether a noun in -er is declined like puer or like ager?
Decline bonus, liber, pulcher. How can we tell whether an adjective in -er is declined like liber or like pulcher? Why must we say nauta bonus and not nauta bona? Name the Latin possessive pronouns. How are they declined? With what does the possessive pronoun agree? When do we use tuus and when vester? Why is suus called a reflexive possessive? What is the non-reflexive possessive of the third person? When are possessives omitted? What four uses of the ablative case are covered by the relations expressed in English by with? Give an illustration in Latin of the ablative of manner; of the ablative of cause; of the ablative of means; of the ablative of accompaniment. What ablative regularly has cum? What ablative sometimes has cum? What uses of the ablative never have cum? Name the nine pronominal adjectives, with their meanings. Decline alius, nulius. Decline is. What does is mean as a demonstrative adjective or pronoun? What other important use has it?

509. Fill out the following summary of the second declension:

1. Endings in the nominative
2. Rule for gender
3. Case terminations of nouns { a. Singular
   in -us
   b. Plural
   a. The vocative singular of nouns in -us
4. Case terminations of nouns { a. Singular
   in -um
   b. Plural
5. Peculiarities of nouns in -er and -ir
6. Peculiarities of nouns in -ius and -ium

III. REVIEW OF LESSONS XVIII-XXVI

510. Give the English of the following words:

Nouns of the First Declension

disciplina  poena  rēgina  trīstitia
forma  potentia  superbia

Nouns of the Second Declension

lūdus  ornāmentum  sacrum  socius  verbum

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

amicus  grātus  interfectus  molestus  septem
antiquus  idōneus  īrātus  perpetuus  superbus
finītīmus  inimicus  laetus  prōximus
### ADVERBS
- hodie
- ibi
- maximē
- mox
- nunc
- nūper

### CONJUNCTIONS
- etiam
- nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam

### PERSONAL PRONOUN
- ego

### VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJ. I</th>
<th>CONJ. II</th>
<th>CONJ. III</th>
<th>CONJ. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>volō, -āre</td>
<td>dēleō, -ēre</td>
<td>agō, -ere</td>
<td>audiō, -ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>doceō, -ēre</td>
<td>capiō, -ere</td>
<td>mūniō, -ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>faveō, -ēre</td>
<td>crēdō, -ere</td>
<td>reperīō, -ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>habeō, -ēre</td>
<td>dīcō, -ere</td>
<td>venīō, -ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iubeō, -ēre</td>
<td>dūcō, -ere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>moneō, -ēre</td>
<td>faciō, -ere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>moveō, -ēre</td>
<td>fugiō, -ere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>noceō, -ēre</td>
<td>iacio, -ere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pāreō, -ēre</td>
<td>mittō, -ere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>persuādeō, -ēre</td>
<td>rapiō, -ere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sedeo, -ēre</td>
<td>regō, -ere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>studeō, -ēre</td>
<td>resistō, -ere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>videō, -ēre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 511. Give the Latin of the following words. In the case of verbs always give the first form and the present infinitive.

- ancient
- come
- resist
- see
- be
- fly
- I
- proud
- word
- sadness
- find
- rule (verb)
- be eager
- for

- not only . . . sacred rite.
- seven
- ally, companion
- pride
- fortify
- send
- sit
- also
- school
- hear
- hurl
- persuade
- only

- nearest
- move
- training
- soon
- queen
- flee
- obey
- lately
- constant
- ornament
- most of all
- angry
- power
- make, do
- injure
- now
- command (verb)
- annoying
- lead
- there
- slain

- take
- have
- to-day
- drive
- favor (verb)
- suitable
- pleasing
- teach
- neighboring
- destroy
- friendly
- seize

#### 512. Review Questions. What is conjugation? Name two important differences between conjugation in Latin and in English. What is tense?
What is mood? What are the Latin moods? When do we use the indicative mood? Name the six tenses of the indicative. What are personal endings? Name those you have had. Inflect sum in the three tenses you have learned. How many regular conjugations are there? How are they distinguished? How is the present stem found? What tenses are formed from the present stem? What is the tense sign of the imperfect? What is the meaning of the imperfect? What is the tense sign of the future in the first two conjugations? in the last two? Before what letters is a final long vowel of the stem shortened? What are the three possible translations of a present, as of pugnō? Inflect arō, sedeō, mittō, faciō, and veniō, in the present, imperfect, and future active. What forms of -iō verbs of the third conjugation are like audiō? what like regō? Give the rule for the dative with adjectives. Name the special intransitive verbs that govern the dative. What does the imperative mood express? How is the present active imperative formed in the singular? in the plural? What three verbs have a shortened present active imperative? Give the present active imperative of portō, dēleō, agō, faciō, mūniō.

IV. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXVII–XXXVI

513. Give the English of the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns of the First Declension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ālā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns of the Second Declension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>animus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aurum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adversus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attensus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cārus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anteā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celeriter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēnique</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjunctions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>autem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX III

Prepositions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dé</th>
<th>Per</th>
<th>Pró</th>
<th>Sine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adpropinquō</td>
<td>recúsō</td>
<td>superō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvīgō</td>
<td>reportō</td>
<td>temptō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occupō</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>vāstō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postulō</td>
<td>stō</td>
<td>vulnerō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conj. I

Conj. II

Conj. III

Gerō | Interficiō

Irregular Verb

Absum

514. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

be away | moreover | boat, ship | without | before, | previously
wind | greatest | sail (verb) | hold | depart, | leave
through | oracle | life | suddenly | go away | province
if | danger | save | dear | care, trouble
savage | lay waste | full | always |
| wound (verb) | gate | refuse | god |
| wine | doubtful | heavily | hold in, |
| delay | opposite, | monster | keep |
faithless | adverse | approach | afar |
right | demand | nevertheless | thus, so, |
size | finally | place | as follows |
quickly | attentive | be without, | arm (noun) |
| before, in | then, at | lack | heart |
| battle | weary | moved | when |
| down from or | overcome, | gold | bear, carry on |
| concerning | conquer | restrain, | try |
| | keep from | bring back, | |

515. Give the principal parts and meaning of the following verbs:

sum | moveō | moneō | pāreō | veniō
dō | créāō | capiō | dūcō | iaciō
| teneō | rapiō | doceō | faciō | videō
| lubeō | reperiō | regō | persuādeō | absump
| agō | dēleō | faveō | sedeō | egeō
| mittō | resistō | noceō | studeō | gerō
| müniō | audiō | dicō | fugiō | stō
516. **Review Questions.** What are the personal endings in the passive voice? What is the letter -r sometimes called? What are the distinguishing vowels of the four conjugations? What forms constitute the principal parts? What are the three different conjugation stems? How may they be found? What are the tenses of the indicative? of the infinitive? What tense of the imperative have you learned? What forms are built on the present stem? on the perfect stem? on the participial stem? What are the endings of the perfect active indicative? What is the tense sign of the pluperfect active? of the future perfect active? How is the present active infinitive formed? the present passive infinitive? How is the present active imperative formed? the present passive imperative? How is the perfect active infinitive formed? the perfect passive infinitive? How is the future active infinitive formed? What is a participle? How are participles in -us declined? Give the rule for the agreement of the participle. How are the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative formed? Conjugate the verb *sum* in all moods and tenses as far as you have learned it (§ 494). What is meant by the separative ablative? How is the place *from which* expressed in Latin? Give the rule for the ablative of separation; for the ablative of the personal agent. How can we distinguish between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent? What is the perfect definite? the perfect indefinite? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect indefinite and the imperfect? What two cases in Latin may be governed by a preposition? Name the prepositions that govern the ablative. What does the preposition *in* mean when it governs the ablative? the accusative? What are the three interrogatives used to introduce *yes-and-no* questions? Explain the force of each. What words are sometimes used for *yes* and *no*? What are the different meanings and uses of *ubi*?

V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVII-XLIV

517. Give the English of the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST DECLENSION</th>
<th>SECOND DECLENSION</th>
<th>THIRD DECLENSION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ripa</td>
<td>barbari</td>
<td>captivus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>castellum</td>
<td>impeditamentum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animal</td>
<td>calamitas</td>
<td>cliens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbor</td>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>collis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avis</td>
<td>caput</td>
<td>consul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caedes</td>
<td>civis</td>
<td>dens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>flumen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>finis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>frater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ignis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>imperator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>homos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>insigne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>iter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>barbarus</th>
<th>dexter</th>
<th>sinister</th>
<th>summus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prepositions</td>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>Conjunctions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in with the abl.</td>
<td>cotidiē</td>
<td>nec, neque</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in with the acc.</td>
<td>numquam</td>
<td>nec...nec, or neque...neque</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trāns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>conj. I</th>
<th>conj. III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cessō</td>
<td>oppugnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnfirmō</td>
<td>vetō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accipīō</td>
<td>petō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incipīō</td>
<td>vincō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pōnō</td>
<td>vivō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 518. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

- **forbid**
- **rank, row**
- **brother**
- **force**
- **across**
- **savages**
- **horseman**
- **never**
- **mountain**
- **manliness, courage**
- **leader**
- **put, place**
- **time**
- **savage, barbarous**
- **sister**
- **seek**
- **captive**
- **hindrance, baggage**
- **man-of-war**
- **judge**
- **defeat, disaster**
- **fire**
- **tree**
- **foot soldier**
- **receive**
- **general**
- **highest**
- **fountain**
- **orator**
- **neither...nor**
- **and not**
- **left**
- **tooth**
- **soldier**
- **month**
- **city**
- **victor**
- **daily**
- **live (verb)**
- **conquer**
- **consul**
- **mother**
- **retainer**
- **citizen**
- **head**
- **safety**
- **assail, storm**
- **begin**
- **march**
- **decoration**
- **bridge**
- **bird**
- **cease**
- **man**
- **river**
- **work (noun)**
- **and**
- **ship**
- **bank**
- **redoubt, fort**
- **sea**
- **tower**
- **drill (verb)**
- **legion**
- **terror**
- **into, to**
- **right (adj.)**
- **in**
- **stone**
- **blood**
- **labor (noun)**
- **king**
- **spur**
- **chief**
- **slaughter**
- **strengthen**
- **foot**
- **enemy**
- **animal**
- **father**
519. **Review Questions.** Give the conjugation of *possum*. What is an infinitive? What three uses has the Latin infinitive that are like the English? What is the case of the subject of the infinitive? What is meant by a complementary infinitive? In the sentence *The bad boy cannot be happy*, what is the case of *happy*? Give the rule. Decline *qui*. Give the rule for the agreement of the relative. What are the two uses of the interrogative? Decline *quis*. What is the base of a noun? How is the stem formed from the base? Are the stem and the base ever the same? How many declensions of nouns are there? Name them. What are the two chief divisions of the third declension? How are the consonant stems classified? Explain the formation of *lapis* from the stem *lapid-*., *miles* from *milit-*., *rex* from *rēg-*.. What nouns have *i*-stems? What peculiarities of form do *i*-stems have,—masc., fem., and neut.? Name the five nouns that have -i and -e in the abl. Decline *turris*. Give the rules for gender in the third declension. Decline *miles, lapis, rēx, virtūs, cōnsul, legiō, homō, pater, flūmen, opus, tempus, caput, caedēs, urbs, hostis, mare, animal, vis, iter*.

### 520. Fill out the following scheme:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Gender Endings</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>The Third Declension</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Consonant Stems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Masc. and fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Neuters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. I-Stems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Masc. and fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Neuters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Irregular Nouns</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

VI. **Review of Lessons XLV–LII**

521. Give the English of the following words:

**Nouns**

**First Declension**
- amīcitia
- hōra
- littera

**Second Declension**
- annus
- modus
- nūntius
- oculus

- rēgnum
- signum
- supplicium
- supplicium dare

- tergium
- tergium vertere
- vestīgium
- supplicium sūmere dē
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THIRD DECLENSION</th>
<th>FOURTH DECLENSION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aestās</td>
<td>nox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corpus</td>
<td>pars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hiems</td>
<td>pāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libertās</td>
<td>rūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūx,</td>
<td>sōl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prīma lūx</td>
<td>vōx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmen</td>
<td>vulnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>adventus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>impetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lacus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>domus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>equitātus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>metus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>exercitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fluctus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIFTH DECLENSION</th>
<th>INDECLINABLE NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aciēs</td>
<td>rēs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>spēs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fidēs, in idem venire</td>
<td>rēs gestae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rēs adversae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rēs secundae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rēs pública</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nihil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ADJECTIVES**

**FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS**

| dēnsus          | pristinus         | äcer, äcris, äcre |
| invīsus         | públicus          | brevis, breve     |
| mīrus           | secundus          | difficilis, difficile |
| pauci           | tautus            | facilis, facile   |
| primus          | vērus             | fortis, forte     |

**THIRD DECLENSION**

| gravis, grave   | incolumis, incolume |
|                 | omnis, omne         |
|                 | pār, pār            |
|                 | vēlōx, vēlōx        |

**PRONOUNS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERSONAL</th>
<th>DEMONSTRATIVE</th>
<th>INTENSIVE</th>
<th>INDEFINITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ego</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>aliquid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td></td>
<td>quidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suī</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td></td>
<td>quī, quī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tū</td>
<td>iste</td>
<td></td>
<td>quīsquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vōs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>quīsque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ADVERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nē ... quidem</th>
<th>paene</th>
<th>satis</th>
<th>itaque</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ōlim</td>
<td>quoque</td>
<td>vērō</td>
<td>nisi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CONJUNCTIONS**

| ante | post | propter |

**PREPOSITIONS**

**VERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJ. I</th>
<th>CONJ. II</th>
<th>CONJ. III</th>
<th>CONJ. IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conlocō</td>
<td>débeō</td>
<td>committō,</td>
<td>désiliō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convocō</td>
<td>exercēō</td>
<td>committere proelium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cremō</td>
<td>maneō</td>
<td>démōnstrō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēmōnstrō</td>
<td>placeō</td>
<td>sustineō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mandō</td>
<td></td>
<td>sūmō, sūmere supplicium dē-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>trādūcō</td>
<td>vertō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
522. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

if not, unless on account of unharm public commonwealth leap down, dismount lead across remain call together friendship footprint, trace each fear (noun) hope therefore behind, after so great equal in truth, indeed that (yonder) a certain fall down owe, ought measure, mode eye name wave, billow thing, matter exploits republic prosperity

adversity former, old-time all, every any one (at all) this (of mine) heavy, serious hateful, detested true burn snatch from letter punishment inflict punishment on suffer punishment reign, realm messenger part, direction body harbor faith, protection of himself also, too sufficiently burn that (of yours) before you (plur.) light daybreak winter attack line of battle army drill, train join battle house, home midday wonderful brave almost the same some, any if any one self, very not even easy dense point out, explain difficult first arrange, station please year peace back turn the back, retreat night hand, force lake day commit, intrust a few only sharp, eager we turn you (sing.) I signal summer cavalry wound horn, wing country second, favor- able short voice formerly, once arrival come under the protection of swift nothing

523. Review Questions. By what declensions are Latin adjectives declined? What can you say about the stem of adjectives of the third declension? Into what classes are these adjectives divided? How can you tell to which of the classes an adjective belongs? Decline ācer, omnis, pār. What are the nominative endings and genders of nouns of the fourth
or u-declension? What nouns are feminine by exception? Decline *adventus*, *lacus*, *cornū*, *domus*. Give the rules for the ordinary expression of the *place to which*, the *place from which*, the *place in which*. What special rules apply to names of towns, small islands, and *rūs*? What is the locative case? What words have a locative case? What is the form of the locative case? Translate *Galba lives at home*, *Galba lives at Rome*, *Galba lives at Pompeii*. What is the rule for gender in the fifth or ē-declension? Decline *diēs*, *rēs*. When is the long ē shortened? What can you say about the plural of the fifth declension? Decline *tuba*, *servus*, *pīlum*, *ager*, *puer*, *mīles*, *cōnsul*, *flūmen*, *caedēs*, *animal*. How is the *time when* expressed? Name the classes of pronouns and define each class. Decline *ego*, *tū*, *is*. What are the reflexives of the first and second persons? What is the reflexive of the third person? Decline *it*. Translate *I see myself*, *he sees himself*, *he sees him*. Decline *ipse*. How is *ipse* used? Decline *īdem*. Decline *hic*, *iste*, *ille*. Explain the use of these words. Name and translate the commoner indefinite pronouns. Decline *aliquis*, *quisquam*, *quīdam*, *quisque*.

### VIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LIII–LX

#### 524. Give the English of the following words:

**Nouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Declension</th>
<th>Second Declension</th>
<th>Third Declension</th>
<th>Fourth Declension</th>
<th>Fifth Declension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aquila</td>
<td>aedificium</td>
<td>agmen</td>
<td>aditus</td>
<td>tēs frumentāria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fossa</td>
<td>captīvus</td>
<td>ēdēs</td>
<td>passus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>concilium</td>
<td>mēns</td>
<td>commēātus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tēs frumentāria**
REVIEW

Adjectives

First and Second Declensions

aequus  maximus  plürimus  singulī
bīnī    medius   posterus   superus
ducentī  minus   primus    tardus
duo     opportūnus reliquus ternī
exterus optimus  secundus ūnus
inferus pessimus

Third Declension

alacer, alacris, alacre  humilis, humile  peior, peius
audāx, audāx  ingēns, ingēns  ——, plūs
CELER, celeris, celere  interior, interius  prior, prius
CETERIOR, citerius  lēnis, lēne  recēns, recēns
DIFFICILIS, difficile  maiōr, maius  similis, simile
dissimilis, dissimile  meliōr, melius  trēs, tria
facilis, facile  minor, minus  ulterior, ulterius
gracilis, gracile  nōbilis, nōbile

Adverbs

ācret  magnis  optimē  proximē
audācter  magnopere  parum  quam
bene  maximē  paulō  statim
facile  melius  plūrimum  tam
ferē  minimē  prope  undique
fortiter  multum  propius

Conjunctions

atque, ac  quā dē causā
aut     quam ob rem
aut ... aut  simul atque or
et ... et  simul ac
nam

Verbs

Conj. I  Conj. II  Conj. III  Conj. IV
Cōnror  moror  obtineō  valeō
hortor  vexō  perterreō  vereor

abdō  dēdō  patior  revertor
cadō  dēfendō  premō  sequor
Cognōscō  ēgredior  proficiscor  statuō
cōsequor  incendō  prōgressō  subsequor
contendō  incolō  quaerō  suspiciō
cupiō  insequor  recipiō  trādō
currō  occidō  relinquō  trahō

orīor  perveniō
525. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

on account of
nearly
keenly, sharply
thousand
two
opportune
remaining
above (adj.)
next
grain
supply
pace
shout (noun)
from all sides
against
around
three
further
line of march
rumor
region
fortification
eagle
almost
boldly
bravely
across
between, among
hither (adj.)
so
less
more
most
worst
difficulty
hostage
death
command, power
captive
or
and
arrive
attempt, try
length

width
scout
cohort
tribe, nation
business
by a little
somewhat
crime
difficult
equal
move forward,
advance
multitude
woman
desire (verb)
give over, surrender
kill
overtake
hasten, strive
hide
one
first
second, favorable
two hundred
former
inner
middle
low
outward
three by three
provisions
speed
ditch
wherefore or therefore
for this reason
fear (noun)
return
inquire
set out
move out, disembark

fear (verb)
worse
greater, larger
two by two
least (adv.)
opinion, expectation
approach, entrance
trader
magnitude, size
council, assembly
space, room
either . . . or
rise, arise
suffer, allow
press hard
fall
surrender
set fire to
defend
possess, hold
delay (verb)
nearest (adv.)
nearer (adv.)
better (adj.)
well known, noble
mild, gentle
swift
eager
low (adj.)
slender
one by one
no one
least (adv.)
little (adv.)
learn, know
drag
undertake
run
fix, decide

leave
abandon
be strong
receive, recover
terrify, frighten
dwell
state, citizenship
valley
slavery
greatly
best of all (adv.)
better (adv.)
well (adv.)
very much
much
unlike
like (adj.)
slow
very greatly,
exceedingly
building
mind (noun)
easily
easy
recent
huge, great
bold
immediately
as soon as
for
than
best (adj.)
greatest
follow close
encourage
annoy, ravage
hide
follow
pursue
both . . . and
rampart
526. Review Questions. What is meant by comparison? In what two ways may adjectives be compared? Compare clārus, brevis, vēlōx, and explain the formation of the comparative and the superlative. What are the adverbs used in comparison? Compare brevis by adverbs. Decline the comparative of vēlōx. How are adjectives in -er compared? Compare ācer, pučher, liber. What are possible translations for the comparative and superlative? Name the six adjectives that form the superlative in -limus. Translate in two ways Nothing is brighter than the sun. Give the rule for the ablative with comparatives. Compare bonus, magnus, malus, multus, parvus, exerēs, īnferēs, posterus, superus. Decline plūs. Compare citerīor, interior, proprīor, ulterior. Translate That route to Italy is much shorter. Give the rule for the expression of measure of difference. Name five words that are especially common in this construction. How are adverbs usually formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions? from adjectives of the third declension? Compare the adverbs cārē, liberē, fortītēr, audācēr. What cases of adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs? What are the adverbs from fācilis? multus? prīmus? plūrīmus? bonus? magnus? parvus? Compare prope, saepe, magnopere. How are numerals classified? Give the first twenty cardinals. Decline īnus, duo, trēs, mīlle. How are the hundreds declined? What is meant by the partitive genitive? Give the rule for the partitive genitive. What sort of words are commonly used with this construction? What construction is used with quīdam and cardinal numbers excepting mīlle? Give the first twenty ordinals. How are they declined? How are the distributives declined? Give the rule for the expression of duration of time and extent of space. What is the difference between the ablative of time and the accusative of time? What is a deponent verb? Give the synopsis of one. What form always has a passive meaning? Conjugate amō, moneō, regō, capiō, audīō, in the active and passive.

VIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXI-LXIX


528. Review Questions. Name the tenses of the subjunctive. What time is denoted by these tenses? What are the mood signs of the present subjunctive? How may the imperfect subjunctive be formed? How do the perfect subjunctive and the future perfect indicative active differ in form? How is the pluperfect subjunctive active formed? Inflect the subjunctive active and passive of cūrō, dēleō, vincō, rapiō, mūniō. Inflect the
subjunctive tenses of sum; of possum. What are the tenses of the participles in the active? What in the passive? Give the active and passive participles of amō, moneō, regō, capiō, audiō. Decline regēns. What participles do deponent verbs have? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect participle of a deponent verb and of one not deponent? Give the participles of vereor. How should participles usually be translated? Conjugate volō, nōlō, mālō, fīō.

What is the difference between the indicative and subjunctive in their fundamental ideas? How is purpose usually expressed in English? How is it expressed in Latin? By what words is a Latin purpose clause introduced? When should quō be used? What is meant by sequence of tenses? Name the primary tenses of the indicative and of the subjunctive; the secondary tenses. What Latin verbs are regularly followed by substantive clauses of purpose? What construction follows iubeō? What construction follows verbs of fearing? How is consequence or result expressed in Latin? How is a result clause introduced? What words are often found in the principal clause foreshadowing the coming of a result clause? How may negative purpose be distinguished from negative result? What is meant by the subjunctive of characteristic or description? How are such clauses introduced? Explain the ablative absolute. Why is the ablative absolute of such frequent occurrence in Latin? Explain the predicate accusative. After what verbs are two accusatives commonly found? What do these accusatives become when the verb is passive?
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

The words in heavy type are used in Caesar's "Gallic War."

LESSON IV, § 39

NOUNS
dea, goddess (deity)
Diā'na, Diana
fera, a wild beast (fierce)
Latō'na, Latona
sagit'ta, arrow

VERBS
est, he (she, it) is; sunt, they are
necat, he (she, it) kills, is killing, does kill

CONJUNCTION
et, and

PRONOUNS
quis, interrog. pronoun, nom. sing., who? cuius (pronounced cōī'tyōōs, two syllables), interrog. pronoun, gen. sing., whose?

LESSON V, § 47

NOUNS
corō'na, wreath, garland, crown
fā'bula, story (fable)
pecū'nia, money (pecuniary)
pugna, battle (pugnacious)
victō'ria, victory

VERBS
dat, he (she, it) gives
nārrat, he (she, it) tells (narrate)

CONJUNCTION
quia or quod, because

cui (pronounced cōī', one syllable), interrog. pronoun, dat. sing., to whom? for whom?

LESSON VI, § 56

ADJECTIVES
bona, good
grātā, pleasing
magna, large, great
mala, bad, wicked

parva, small, little
pulchra, beautiful, pretty
sōla, alone

1 A conjunction is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

Nouns
ancilla, maidservant
Iulia, Julia

Adverbs
cur, why; non, not

Pronouns
mea, my; tua, thy, your (possessives)
quid, interrog. pronoun, nom. and acc.
sing., what?

-ne, the question sign, an enclitic (§ 16) added to the first word, which, in a question, is usually the verb, as amat, he loves, but amat-ne? does he love? est, he is; estne? is he? Of course -ne is not used when the sentence contains quis, cur, or some other interrogative word.

LESSON VII, § 62

Nouns
casa, -ae, f., cottage
cena, -ae, f., dinner
gallina, -ae, f., hen, chicken
insula, -ae, f., island (peninsula)

Adverbs
deiinde, then, in the next place
ubi, where

Preposition
ad, to, with acc. to express motion toward

Verbs
habitat, he (she, it) lives, is living,
does live (inhabit)
laudat, he (she, it) praises, is praising,
does praise (laud)
parat, he (she, it) prepares, is preparing,
does prepare
vocat, he (she, it) calls, is calling,
does call; invites, is inviting,
does invite (vocation)

Pronoun
quem, interrog. pronoun, acc. sing., whom?

LESSON VIII, § 69

Nouns
Italia, -ae, f., Italy
Sicilia, -ae, f., Sicily
tuba, -ae, f., trumpet (tube)
via, -ae, f., way, road, street
(viaduct)

Adjectives
alta, high, deep (altitude)
ciera, clear, bright; famous
lata, wide (latitude)
longa, long (longitude)
nova, new (novelty)

1 An adverb is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, She sings sweetly; she is very talented; she began to sing very early.
LESSON IX, § 77

Nouns

bellum, -ī, n., war (re-bel)
cōnstantia, -ae, f., firmness, constancy, steadiness
dominus, -ī, m., master, lord (dominate)
equus, -ī, m., horse (equine)
frūmentum, -ī, n., grain
lēgātus, -ī, m., lieutenant, ambassador (legate)
Mārcus, -ī, m., Marcus, Mark

mūrus, -ī, m., wall (mural)
oppidānus, -ī, m., townsman
oppidum, -ī, n., town
pīlum, -ī, n., spear (pile driver)
servus, -ī, m., slave, servant
Sextus, -ī, m., Sextus

Verbs

cūrat, he (she, it) cares for, with acc.
properat, he (she, it) hastens

LESSON X, § 82

Nouns

amīcus, -ī, m., friend (amicable)
Germānia, -ae, f., Germany
patria, -ae, f., fatherland

populus, -ī, m., people
Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine
vīcus, -ī, m., village

LESSON XI, § 86

Nouns

arma, armōrum, n., plur., arms, especially defensive weapons
fāma, -ae, f., rumor; reputation, fame

galea, -ae, f., helmet
praeda, -ae, f., booty, spoils (predatory)
tēlum, -ī, n., weapon of offense, spear

Adjectives

dūrus, -a, -um, hard, rough; unfeeling, cruel; severe, toilsome (durable)
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman. As a noun, Rōmānus, -ī, m., a Roman

LESSON XII, § 90

Nouns

filius, fillī, m., son (filial)
fluvius, fluviī, m., river (fluent)
gladius, glādī, m., sword (gladiator)
praesidium, praessiōdi, n., garrison, guard, protection
proelium, proeliī, n., battle

Adjectives

finitimus, -a, -um, bordering upon, neighboring, near to. As a noun, finitimi, -orum, m., plur., neighbors
Germānus, -a, -um, German. As a noun, Germānus, -ī, m., a German
multus, -a, -um, much; plur., many

Adverb

saepe, often
LESSON XIII, § 95

Nouns

ager, agrī, m., field (acre)
cōpia, -ae, f., plenty, abundance (copious); plur., troops, forces
Cornēlius, Cornēlī, m., Cornelius
lōricā, -ae, f., coat of mail, corselet

praemium, praemī, n., reward, prize
(premium)
puer, puerī, m., boy (puerile)
Rōma, -ae, f., Rome
scūtum, -ī, n., shield (escutcheon)
vir, virī, m., man, hero (virile)

Adjectives

legionārius, -a, -um, 1 legionary, belonging to the legion. As a noun, legionāriī, -ōrum, m., plur., legionary soldiers
liber, libera, liberum, free (liberty).
As a noun, libērī, -ōrum, m., plur., children (lit. the freeborn)
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, pretty, beautiful

Preposition

apud, among, with acc.

Conjunction

sed, but

LESSON XIV, § 99

Nouns

auxilium, auxiˈliː, n., help, aid (auxiliary)
castrum, -ī, n., fort (castle); plur., camp (lit. forts)
cibus, -ī, m., food
cōnsilium, cōnsiˈliː, n., plan (counsel)
diligentia, -ae, f., diligence, industry
magister, magistri, m., master, teacher 2

Adjectives

aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick
crebēr, crebhra, crebrum, frequent
miser, misera, miserum, wretched, unfortunate (miser)

LESSON XV, § 107

Nouns

carrus, -ī, m., cart, wagon
inopia, -ae, f., want, lack; the opposite of cōpia
studium, studī, n., zeal, eagerness (study)

Adjectives

armātus, -a, -um, armed
infirmus, -a, -um, weak, feeble (infirm)
validus, -a, -um, strong, sturdy

1 The genitive singular masculine of adjectives in -ius ends in -iī and the vocative in -iē; not in -ī, as in nouns. 2 Observe that dominus, as distinguished from magister, means master in the sense of owner.
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

VERB
mātūrat, he (she, it) hastens. Cf. iam, already, now
properat

ADVERB
-que, conjunction, and; an enclitic (cf. § 16) and always added to the second of two words to be connected, as arma tēla'que, arms and weapons.

LESSON XVII, § 117

Nouns
agri cultūra, -ae, f., agriculture
domicilium, domici'li, n., abode, dwelling place (domicile)
fēmina, -ae, f., woman (female)

ADJECTIVE
mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, mature

Verbs
arat, he (she, it) plows (arable)
désiderat, he (she, it) misses, longs for (desire), with acc.

LESSON XVIII, § 124

Nouns
lūdus, -ī, m., school
socius, soci, m., companion, ally (social)

ADJECTIVES
īrātus, -a, -um, angry, furious (irate)
laetus, -a, -um, happy, glad

Adverb
hodiē, to-day
ibi, there, in that place
mox, presently, soon, of the immediate future

nunc, now, the present moment
nūper, lately, recently, of the immediate past

LESSON XX, § 136

Nouns
fōrma, -ae, f., form, beauty
poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty
potentia, -ae, f., power (potent)

ADJECTIVES
septem, indeclinable, seven
superbus, -a, -um, proud, haughty (superb)

rēgīna, -ae, f., queen (regal)
superbia, -ae, f., pride, haughtiness
trīstitia, -ae, f., sadness, sorrow

Conjunctions
nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also
LESSON XXI, § 140

Nouns
sacrum, -i, n., sacrifice, offering, rite
verbum, -i, n., word (verb)

Verbs
sedeō, -ēre, sit (sediment)
volo, -āre, fly (volatile)

Adjectives
interfectus, -a, -um, slain
molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, annoying (molest)
perpetuus, -a, -um, perpetual, continuous

ego, personal pronoun, I (egotism). Always emphatic in the nominative.

LESSON XXII, § 146

Nouns
disciplina, -ae, f., training, culture, discipline
ornamentum, -i, n., ornament, jewel

Verb
doceō, -ēre, teach (doctrine)

Adverb
maximē, most of all, especially

Adjective
antiquus, -qua, -quum, old, ancient (antique)

LESSON XXVII, § 168

Nouns
āla, -ae, f., wing
deus, -i, m., god (deity) ¹
mōnstrum, -i, n., omen, prodigy; monster
orāculum, -i, n., oracle

Verb
vāstō, -āre, lay waste, devastate

Adjectives
commōtus, -a, -um, moved, excited
maximus, -a, -um, greatest (maximum)
saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage

Adverbs
ita, thus, in this way, as follows
tum, then, at that time

LESSON XXVIII, § 171

Verbs
respondeō, -ēre, respond, reply
servō, -āre, save, preserve

Adjective
cārōs, -a, -um, dear (cherish)

Conjunction
autem, but, moreover, now. Usually stands second, never first

Noun
vīta, -ae, f., life (vital)

For the declension of deus, see § 468
LESSON XXIX, § 176

VERB
superō, -āre, conquer, overcome (insuperable)

NOUNS
cūra, -ae, f., care, trouble
locus, -ī, m., place, spot (location).
Locus is neuter in the plural and is declined loca, -ōrum, etc.
perīculum, -ī, n., danger, peril

ADVERBS
semper, always
tamen, yet, nevertheless

PREPOSITIONS
dē, with abl., down from; concerning
per, with acc., through

CONJUNCTION
sī, if

LESSON XXX, § 182

VERBS
absum, abesse, irreg., be away, be absent, be distant, with separative abl.
adpropinquō, -āre, draw near, approach (propinquity), with dative
contineō, -āre, hold together, hem in, keep (contain)

discēdō, -ere, depart, go away, leave, with separative abl.
egēō, -ere, lack, need, be without, with separative abl.
interficīō, -ere, kill
prohibēō, ēre, restrain, keep from (prohibit)
vulnerō, -āre, wound (vulnerable)

ADJECTIVE
dēfessus, -a, -um, weary, worn out

ADVERB
longē, far, by far, far away

LESSON XXXI, § 188

NOUNS
prōvincia, -ae, f., province
vīnum, -ī, n., wine

ADJECTIVES
attentus, -a, -um, attentive, careful
dubius, -a, -um, doubtful (dubious)
perfidus, -a, -um, faithless, treacherous (perfidy)

ADVERB
anteā, before, previously

PREPOSITION
sine, with abl., without

1 This verb governs the dative because the idea of nearness to is stronger than that of motion to. If the latter idea were the stronger, the word would be used with ad and the accusative.
LESSON XXXII, § 193

Nouns
animus, -i, m., mind, heart; spirit, feeling (animate)
bracchium, bracchi, n., forearm, arm
porta, -ae, f., gate (portal)

Adjectives
adversus, -a, -um, opposite; adverse, contrary
plenus, -a, -um, full (plenty)

Preposition
pro, with abl., before; in behalf of; instead of

Adverb
diu, for a long time, long

LESSON XXXIV, § 200

Adverbs
CELERITER, quickly (celerity)
denique, finally

Graviter, heavily, severely (gravity)
Subito, suddenly

Verb
reporto, -are, -avi, bring back, restore; win, gain (report)

LESSON XXXVI, § 211

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right (dexterous)
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left
frustra, adv., in vain (frustrate)
gerer, gerere, gessi, gestus, bear, carry on; wear; bellum gerere, to wage war
occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus, seize, take possession of (occupy)
postulam, postulare, postulavi, postulatus, demand (ex-postulate)
recusar, recusare, recusavi, recusatus, refuse
stio, stare, stet, status, stand

Tempto, temptare, temptavi, temptatus, try, tempt, test; attempt
teneo, tenere, tenui, --, keep, hold (tenacious)

The word ubi, which we have used so much in the sense of where in asking a question, has two other uses equally important:

1. ubi = when, as a relative conjunction denoting time; as,
   Ubi monstrum audiverrunt, fagerunt, when they heard the monster, they fled
2. ubi = where, as a relative conjunction denoting place; as,
   Videop oppidum ubi Galba habitat, I see the town where Galba lives

Ubi is called a relative conjunction because it is equivalent to a relative pronoun. When in the first sentence is equivalent to at the time at which; and in the second, where is equivalent to the place in which.
LESSON XXXVII, § 217

neque or nec, conj., neither, nor; castellum, -ī, n., redoubt, fort (castle)
and... not; neque... neque, cotidiē, adv., daily
neither... nor

cessō, cessāre, cessāvī, cessātus, cease, with the infin.
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus, begin (incipient), with the infin.
oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus, storm, assail
petō, petere, petivī or petīi, petitus, aim at, assail, storm, attack; seek,
ask (petition)
pōnō, pōnere, posūi, positus, place, put (position); castra pōnere, to pitch
camp
possum, posse, potuī,——, be able, can (potent), with the infin.
vētō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, forbid (veto), with the infin.; opposite of iūbeō,
command
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, conquer (in-vincible)
vīvō, vīvere, vīxi,——, live, be alive (re-vive)

LESSON XXXIX, § 234

barbarus, -a, -um, strange, foreign, barbarous. As a noun, barbari,
-ōrum, m., plur., savages, barbarians
dux, ducis, m., leader (duke). Cf.
the verb dūcō
eques, equitis, m., horseman, cav-
alryman (equestrian)
iūdex, iūdicis, m., judge
lapis, lapidis, m., stone (lapidary)
miles, militis, m., soldier (militia)

pedes, peditis, m., foot soldier (pe-
destrian)
pēs, pedīs, 1 m., foot (pedal)
princeps, principis, m., chief (prin-
cipal)
rēx, rēgis, m., king (regal)
summus, -a, -um, highest, greatest
(summit)
virtūs, virtūtis, f., manliness, cour-
age (virtue)

LESSON XL, § 237

Caesar, -aris, m., Caesar
captivus, -ī, m., captive, prisoner
cōnsul, -īs, m., consul
frāter, frātrīs, m., brother (frater-
nity)
homō, hominis, m., man, human
being

impedimentum, -ī, n., hindrance
(impediment); plur. impedimenta,
-ōrum, baggage
imperātor, imperātōris, m., com-
mander in chief, general (em-
peror)

1 Observe that e is long in the nom. sing. and short in the other cases.
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

legiō, legiōnis, f., legion
māter, mātris, f., mother (maternal)
ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., row, rank (order)
pater, patris, m., father (paternal)
salūs, salūtis, f., safety (salutary)
soror, sorōris, f., sister (sorority)

LESSON XLI, § 239

calamitās, calamitātis, f., loss, disaster, defeat (calamity)
caput, capitis, n., head (capital)
flūmen, flūminis, n., river (flume)
labor, labōris, m., labor, toil
opus, operis, n., work, task
ōrātor, ōrātōris, m., orator
rīpa, -ae, f., bank (of a stream)
tempus, temporis, n., time (temporal)
terror, terrōris, m., terror, fear
victor, victōris, m., victor
accipió, accipere, accēpi, acceptus, receive, accept
cōnfirmō, cōnfirmāre, cōnfirmāvī, cōnfirmātus, strengthen, establish, encourage (confirm)

LESSON XLIII, § 245

animal, animālis (-ium1), n., animal
avis, avis (-ium), f., bird (aviation)
caedēs, caedis (-ium), f., slaughter
calcar, calcāris (-ium), n., spur
cīvis, cīvis (-ium), m. and f., citizen (civic)
cliēns, cliēntis (-ium), m., retainer, dependent (client)
finis, finis (-ium), m., end, limit (final); plur., country, territory
hostis, hostis (-ium), m. and f., enemy in war (hostile). Distinguish from
inimicus, which means a personal enemy
ignis, ignis (-ium), m., fire (ignite)
insigne, insignis (-ium), n., decoration, badge (ensign)
mare, maris (-ium2), n., sea (marine)
nāvis, nāvis (-ium), f., ship (naval);
nāvis longa, man-of-war
turris, turris (-ium), f., tower (turret)
urbs, urbīs (-ium), f., city (suburb).
An urbs is larger than an oppidum

LESSON XLIV, § 249

arbor, arboris, f., tree (arbor)
collis, collis (-ium), m., hill
dēns, dēntis (-ium), m., tooth (dentist)
fōns, fōntis (-ium), m., fountain,
spring; source
iter, itineris, n., march, journey,
route (itinerary)
mēnsis, mēnis (-ium), m., month
moenia, -ium, n., plur., walls, fortifications. Cf. mūrus
mōns, mōntis (-ium), m., mountain;
summus mōns, top of the mountain
sumquam, adv., never
pōns, pontis, m., bridge (pontoon)

1 The genitive plural ending -ium is written to mark the i-stems.  2 The

The genitive plural of mare is not in use.
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood (sanguinary)
summus, -a, -um, highest, greatest (summit)
trāns, prep. with acc., across (transatlantic)
vis (vis), gen. plur. virium, f., strength, force, violence (vim)

LESSON XLV, § 258
ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, eager (acrid)
brevis, breve, short, brief
difficilis, difficile, difficult
facilis, facile, facile, easy
fortis, forte, brave (fortitude)
gravis, grave, heavy, severe, serious (grave)
coniocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus, arrange, station, place (collocation)
dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātus, point out, explain (demonstrate)
mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātus, commit, intrust (mandate)

omnis, omne, every, all (omnibus)
pār, gen. paris, equal (par)
pauci, -ae, -a, few, only a few (paucity)
secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable, opposite of adversus
signum, -ī, n., signal, sign, standard
vēlōx, gen. vēlōcis, swift (velocity)

LESSON XLVI, § 261
adventus, -ūs, m., approach, arrival (advent)
ante, prep. with acc., before (ante-date)
cornū, -ūs, n., horn, wing of an army (cornucopia); à dextrō cornū, on the right wing; à sinistrō cornū, on the left wing
equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry
exercitus, -ūs, m., army
impetus, -ūs, m., attack (impetus); impetum facere in, with acc., to make an attack on
lacūs, -ūs, dat. and abl. plur. laccūs, m., lake
manus, -ūs, f., hand; band, force (manual)
portūs, -ūs, m., harbor (port)
post, prep. with acc., behind, after (post-mortem)
cremō, cremāre, cremāvī, cremātus, burn (cremate)
exerciseō, exercēre, exercui, exercitus, practice, drill, train (exercise)

LESSON XLVII, § 270
Athēnae, -ārum, f., plur., Athens
Corinthus, ēs, f., Corinth
domus, -ūs, locative domī, f., house, home (deme). Cf. domicilium
Genāva, -ae, f., Geneva
Pompēii, -orum, m., plur., Pompeii, a city in Campania. See map
propter, prep. with acc., on account of; because of
tergum, tergī, n., back; ā tergō, behind, in the rear
rūs, rūris, in the plur. only nom. and acc. rūra, n., country (rustic)
vulnus, vulneris, n., wound (vulnerable)
committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, intrust, commit; proelium committere, join battle
convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus, call together, summon (convoke)
timeō, timēre, timui, —, fear; be afraid (timid)
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, turn, change (convert); terga vertere, to turn the backs, hence to retreat

LESSON XLVIII, § 276

aciēs, -ēi, f., line of battle
aestās, aestātis, f., summer
annus, -i, m., year (annual)
diēs, diēi, m., day (diary)
fidēs, fidēi, no plur.; f., faith, trust; promise, word; protection; in fidem venire, to come under the protection
fluctus, -ūs, m., wave, billow (fluctuate)
hiems, hiemis, f., winter
hōra, -ae, f., hour
lūx, lūcis, f., light (lucid); prīma lūx, daybreak
meridiēs, acc. -em, abl. -ē, no plur., m., midday (meridian)
ox, noctis (-ium), f., night (nocturnal)
prīmus, -a, -um, first (prime)
rēs, reī, f., thing, matter (real); rēs gestae, deeds, exploits (lit. things performed); rēs adversae, adversity; rēs secundae, prosperity
spēs, speī, f., hope

LESSON XLIX, § 283

amicitia, -ae, f., friendship (amicable)
itaque, conj., and so, therefore, accordingly
littera, -ae,f., a letter of the alphabet; plur., a letter, an epistle
metus, metūs, m., fear
nihil, indeclinable, n., nothing (nihilist)
nūntius, nūntī, m., messenger. Cf. nūntiō
pāx, pācis, f., peace (pacificy)
regnūm, -ī, n., reign, sovereignty, kingdom
supplicium, suppliant, n., punishment; supplicium sūmere dē, with abl., inflict punishment on; supplicium dare, suffer punishment. Cf. poena
placeō, placère, placui, plācitus, be pleasing to, please, with dative. Cf. § 154
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmpsus, take up, assume
sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentus, sustain
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

LESSON L, § 288

corpus, corporis, n., body (corporeal)
dēnsus, -a, -um, dense
īdem, eadem, idem, demonstrative pronoun, the same (identity)
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pronoun, self; even, very
mirus, -a, -um, wonderful, marvelous (miracle)

ōlim, adv., formerly, once upon a time
pars, partis (-ium), f., part, region, direction
quoque, adv., also. Stands after the word which it emphasizes
sōl, sōlis, m., sun (solar)
vērus, -a, -um, true, real (verity)

dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, dēbitus, owe, ought (debt)
ēripīō, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus, snatch from

LESSON LI, § 294

hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative pronoun, this (of mine); he, she, it
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative pronoun, that (yonder); he, she, it
invisus, -a, -um, hateful, detested, with dative. Cf. § 143
iste, ista, stud, demonstrative pronoun, that (of yours); he, she, it
libertas, -ātis, f., liberty
modus, -ī, m., measure; manner, way, mode

nōmen, nōminis, n., name (nominate)
oculus, -ī, m., eye (oculist)
prīstinus, -a, -um, former, old-time (pristine)
pūblicus, -a, -um, public, belonging to the state; rēs pūlica, rei pūblicae, f., the commonwealth, the state, the republic
vestīgium, vestīgī, n., footprint, track; trace, vestige
vōx, vōcis, ī., voice

LESSON LII, § 298

incolumis, -e, unharmed
nē . . . quidem, adv., not even. The emphatic word stands between nē and quidem
nisi, conj., unless, if . . . not
paene, adv., almost (peninsula)

satis, adv., enough, sufficiently (satisfaction)
tantus, -a, -um, so great
vērō, adv., truly, indeed, in fact. As a conj. but, however, usually stands second, never first.

dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidi, ——, fall down (deciduous)
dēsiliō, dēsiliēre, dēsilui, dēsultus, leap down, dismount
maneō, manēre, mānī, mānsūrus, remain
trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxi, trāductus, lead across
LESSON LIII, § 306

aquíla, -ae, f., eagle (aquiline)
audáx, gen. audácis, adj., bold, audacious
celer, celeris, celere, swift, quick (cerenity). Cf. vélōx
explōrátor, -ōris, m., scout, spy (explorer)
ingēns, gen. ingentis, adj., huge, vast
medius, -a, -um, middle, middle part of (medium)
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, ask, inquire, seek (question). Cf. petō

LESSON LIV, § 310

alacer, alacris, alacre, eager, spirited, excited (alacrity)
celeritās, -ātis, f., speed (cerenity)
clāmor, clāmōris, m., shout, clamor
lēnis, lēne, mild, gentle (lenient)
mulier, mulī'eris, f., woman
multitūdō, multitādinis, f., multitude
nēmō, dat. nēmini, acc. nēminem
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupitus, desire, wish (cupidity)

LESSON LV, § 314

aedificium, aedificī'ci, n., building, dwelling (edifice)
imperium, impe'ri, n., command, chief power; empire
mors, mortis (-iūm), f., death (mortal)
abdō, abdere, abdīdī, abditus, hide
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus, strain, struggle; hasten (contend)
occorrēō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus, cut down, kill. Cf. necō, interficiō
perterreō, perterrēre, perterrui, perterrītus, terrify, frighten
recipīō, recipere, recipī, receptus, receive, recover; sé recipere, betake one's self, withdraw, retreat
trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trāditus, give over, surrender, deliver (traitor)

mēns, mentis (-iūm), f., mind (mental). Cf. animus
opportūnus, -a, -um, opportune
quam, adv., than. With the superlative quam gives the force of as possible, as quamaudācissimī
virī, men as bold as possible
recēns, gen. recentis, adj., recent
tam, adv., so. Always with an adjective or adverb, while ita is generally used with a verb
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

LESSON LVII, § 318

aditus, -ūs, m., approach, access; entrance
civitās, civitātis, f., citizenship; body of citizens, state (city)
inter, prep. with acc., between; among (interstate commerce)
incolō, incolere, incolui, ——, transitive, inhabit; intransitive, dwell. Cf. habitō, vivō
relinquō, relinquere, reliqui, relictus, leave, abandon (relinquish)
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, fix, decide (statute), usually with infin.

LESSON LVII, § 326

aequus, -a, -um, even, level; equal
cohors, cohortis (-ium), f., cohort, a tenth part of a legion, about 360 men
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus, run (course)
difficultās, -ātis, f., difficulty
fossa, -ae, f., ditch (fosse)
gēns, gentis (-ium), f., race, tribe, nation (Gentile)
negōtium, negōtī, n., business, affair, matter (negotiate)
regiō, -onis, f., region, district
rūmor, rūmōris, m., rumor, report.
Cf. fāma
simul atque, conj., as soon as
suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpi, susceptus, undertake
trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctus, drag, draw (ex-tract)
valēō, valēre, valui, valēruitus, be strong; plūrimum valēre, to be most powerful, have great influence (value). Cf. validus

LESSON LVIII, § 332

commeātus, -ūs, m., provisions
lātitūdō, -inis, f., width (latitude)
longitūdō, -inis, f., length (longitude)
magnitūdō, -inis, f., size, magnitude
mercātor, mercātōris, m., trader, merchant
mūnītiō, -onis, f., fortification (munition)
magnitūdō, -inis, f., size, magnitude
s𝒫 responded to, respond, respondit (respondent)
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōsvi, cognītus, learn; in the perfect tenses, know (re-cognize)
cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, coāctus, collect; compel (cogent)
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfensus, defend
incendēre, incendē, incendēs, sei fire to, burn (incendiary). Cf. cremō 
obtainēō, obtainēre, obtainēs, possess, occupy, hold (obtain) 
pervenēō, pervenēre, pervenēs, pervenērēns, pervertēs, come through, arrive

LESSON LIX, § 337

agmen, agminis, n., line of march, column; primum agmen, the van 
 novissimum agmen, the rear
atque, ac, conj., and; atque is used 
 before vowels and consonants, ac 
 before consonants only. Cf. et and
-que
concilium, conciliō, n., council, assembly
Helvētii, -ōrum, m., the Helvetii, a 
 Gallic tribe
passus, passūs, m., a pace, feet; mille passuum, a 
 thousand (of) paces, a Roman 
mile
quā de causā, for this reason, for 
what reason
vāllum, -i, n., earthworks, rampart
cadēō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall (decadence)
dēdēō, dēdēre, dēdidī, dēditūs, surrender, give up; with a reflexive pronoun, 
surrender one's self, submit, with the dative of the indirect object
premō, premère, pressī, pressus, press hard, harass
vexō, vexāre, vexāvī, vexātus, annoy, rāgage (vex)

LESSON LX, § 341

aut, conj., or; aut . . . aut, either
. . . or
causā, abl. of causa, for the sake of; 
because of. Always stands after 
the gen. which modifies it
ferē, adv., nearly, almost
opiniō, -ōnis, f., opinion, supposition 
expectation
rēs frumentāria, rei frumentāriae, f. 
(lit. the grain affairs), grain supply 
timor, -ōris, m., fear. Cf. timeō 
undique, adv., from all sides
cōnō, cōnāri, cōnātus sum, attempt, try 
égreōdior, égreōdi, égressus sum, move out, disembark; prōgreōdior, move 
forward, advance (gress, progress)
morō, morāri, morātus sum, delay 
orō, orōri, ortus sum, arise, spring ; begin; be born (from) (origin)
proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, set out 
revertō, revertī, reversus sum, return (revert). The forms of this verb are 
usually active, and not deponent, in the perfect system. Perf. act., revertī 
sequō, sequī, secūtus sum, follow (sequence). Note the following comp-
ounds of sequō and the force of the different prefixes: cōnsequō (follow 
with), overtake; insequō (follow against), pursue; subsequō (follow 
under), follow close after
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not to be used as such; they are inserted to show etymological meanings.

A

ā or ab, prep. with abl. from, by, off.
Translated on in ā dextrō cornā, on the right wing; ā fronte, on the front or in front; ā dextrā, on the right;
ā latere, on the side; etc.
ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, hide, conceal
ab-duō, -ere, -dui, - ductus, lead off, lead away
abs-clō, -ere, -ciō, -cīsus [ab(s), off, + caedō, cut], cut off
ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, ā futūrus, be away,
be absent, be distant, be off; with ā or ab and abl. § 501. 32
ac, conj., see atque
accipiō, -ere, -cepī, -ceptus [ad, to, + capī, take], receive, accept
ācer, ācris, ācre, adj. sharp; figuratively, keen, active, eager (§ 471)
acerbus, -a, -um, adj. bitter, sour
aciēs, -ēi, f. [ācer, sharp], edge; line of battle
ācriter, adv. [ācer, sharp], compared
ācrīus, ācerrimē, sharply, fiercely
ad, prep. with acc. to, towards, near.
With the gerund or gerundive, to, for
ad-aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make equal, make level with
ad-dūcō, -ere, -duxi, - ductus, lead to; move, induce
ad-eō, -ere, -iū, -ītus, go to, approach, draw near; visit, with acc. (§ 413)

ad-ferō, ad-ferre, at-tuli, ad-lātus, bring, convey; report, announce; render, give (§ 426)
ad-ściō, -ere, -scēi, -sectus [ad, to, + faciō, do], affect, visit
ad-flictātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of ad-flictō, shatter], shattered
ad-fligō, -ere, -flixī, -flictus, dash upon, strike upon; harass, distress
ad-hūcē, -ēre, -uī, -itus [ad, to, + habeō, hold], apply, employ, use
ad-hūc, adv. hitherto, as yet, thus far
aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō, approach], approach, access; entrance. Cf. adventus
ad-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bind to, fasten
ad-loquor, -loqui, -locūtus sum, dep. verb [ad, to, + loquor, speak], speak to, address, with acc.
ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, manage, direct
admirātīō, -ōnis, i. [admirō, wonder at], admiration, astonishment
ad-moveō, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtus, move to; apply, employ
ad-propinquo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, come near; approach, with dat.
ad-sum, -esse, -suī, -sūtūrus, be present; assist; with dat., § 426
adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f. [part. of adulēscō, grow], a youth, young man, young person
adventus, -ús, m. [ad, to, + veniō, come], approach, arrival (§ 466)
adversus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of advertē, turn to], turned towards, facing; contrary, adverse. rēs adversae, adversity
aedificium, aedificī, n. [aedicō, build], building, edifice
aedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aedēs, house, + faciō, make], build
aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. sick, feeble
aegūlālis, -e, adj. equal, like. As a noun, aequalis, -is, m. or f. one of the same age
aequus, -a, -um, adj. even, level; equal
Aesōpus, -i, m. Αἴσος, a writer of fables
aestās, -ātis, f. summer. initiā aestāte, at the beginning of summer
aētās, -ātis, f. age
Aethiopia, -ae, f. Ethiopia, a country in Africa
Āfrica, -ae, f. Africa
Āfrīcānus, -a, -um, adj. of Africa.
A name given to Scipio for his victories in Africa
ager, agri, m. field, farm, land (§ 462.c)
agger, -eris, m. mound
agmen, -inis, n. [agō, drive], an army on the march, column. prīmum agmen, the van
agō, -ere, ēgī, ēctus, drive, lead; do, perform. vitam agere, pass life
agricola, -ae, m. [ager, field, + colō, cultivate], farmer
agri cultura, -ae, f. agriculture
āla, -ae, f. wing
alacer, -cris, -cre, adj. active, eager.
Cf. ācer
alacritās, -ātis, f. [alacer, active], eagerness, alacrity
ancilla
alacriter, adv. [alacer, active], comp
alacrius, alacerrīmē, actively, eagerly
albus, -a, -um, adj., white
alcēs, -is, f. elk
Alcēna, -ae, f. Alcēna, the mother of Hercules
aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron. some one, some (§ 487)
alius, -a, -ud (gen. -ius, dat. -i), adj. another, other. alius . . . alius, one . . . another. aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others (§ 110)
Alpēs, -ium, f. plur. the Alps
alter, -era, -erum (gen. -ius, dat. -i), adj. the one, the other (of two). alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other (§ 110)
altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus, high], height
altus, -a, -um, adj. high, tall, deep
Amāzonēs, -um, f. plur. Amazons, a fabled tribe of warlike women
ambō, -ae, -ō, adj. (decl. like duo), both
amicē, adv. [amicus, friendly], superl. amicissimē, in a friendly manner
amicīō, -īre, — —, -ictus [am-, about, + iacō, throw], throw around, wrap about, clothe
amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus, friend], friendship
amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō, love], friendly. As a noun, amicus, -i, m. friend
ā-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send away; lose
amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, love, like, be fond of (§ 488)
amphitheātrum, -i, n. amphitheater
amplus, -a, -um, adj. large, ample; honorable, noble
an, conj. or; introducing the second part of a double question
ancilla, -ae, f. maidservant
ancora, -ae, f. anchor
Andromeda, -ae, f. Androm'eda, daughter of Cepheus and wife of Perseus
angulus, -i, m. angle, corner
anim-advertō, -ere, -tī, -sus [animus, mind, + advertō, turn to], turn the mind to, notice
animal, -ālis, n. [anima, breath], animal (§ 465. b)
animōsus, -a, -um, adj. spirited
animus, -i, m. [anima, breath], mind, heart; spirit, courage, feeling; in this sense often plural
annus, -i, m. year
ante, prep. with acc. before
anteā, adv. [ante], before, formerly
antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante, before], former, ancient, old
aper, apri, m. wild boar
Apollo, -inis, m. Apollo, son of Jupiter and Latona, brother of Diana
appāreō, -ēre, -uī, —— [ad + pāreō, appear], appear
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call by name, name. Cf. nōminō, vocō
Appius, -a, -um, adj. Appian
ap-plicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, apply, direct, turn
apud, prep. with acc. among: at, at the house of
aqua, -ae, f. water
aquila, -ae, f. eagle
āra, -ae, f. altar
arbitror, -āri, -ātus sum, think, suppose (§ 420. c). Cf. existimō, putō
arbor, -oris, f. tree (§ 247. 1. a)
Arcadia, -ae, f. Arcadia, a district in southern Greece
ārdeo, -ēre, ārsi, ārsūrus, be on fire, blaze, burn
aruus, -a, -um, adj. steep
Aricia, -ae, f. Aricia, a town on the Appian Way, near Rome
ariēs, -etis, m. battering-ram (p. 221)
arma, -ōrum, n. plur. arms, weapons. Cf. tēīum
armātus, -a, -um, adj. [armē, arm], armed, equipped
arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, plow, till
ars, artis, f. art, skill
articulus, -i, m. joint
ascriptō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus [ad, in addition, + scribō, write], enroll, enlist
Āsia, -ae, f. Asia, i.e. Asia Minor
at, conj. int. Cf. autem, sed
Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur. Athens
Atlās, -antis, m. Atlas, a Titan who was said to hold up the sky
at-que, ac, conj. and, and also, and what is more. atque may be used before either vowels or consonants, ac before consonants only
attentus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of at-tendō, direct (the mind) toward], attentive, intent on, careful
at-tonitus, -a, -um, adj. thunderstruck, astounded
audācia, -ae, f. [audax, bold], boldness, audacity
audācter, adv. [audax, bold], compared audācium, audācissimē, boldly
audāx, -ācis, adj. bold, daring
audēō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare
audīō, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītus, hear, listen to (§§ 420. d, 491)
Augēas, -ae, m. Augēas, a king whose stables Hercules cleaned
aura, -ae, f. air, breeze
aurātus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold], adorned with gold
aureus

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold], golden

aurum, -i, n. gold

aut, conj. or. aut...aut, either...or

autem, conj., usually second, never first, in the clause, but, moreover, however, now. Cf. at, sed

auxilium, auxi'lium, n. help, aid, assistance; plur. auxiliaries

a-vertō, -ere, -ī, -sus, turn away, turn aside

avis, -is, f. bird (§ 243. 1)

B

ballista, -ae, f. ballista, an engine for hurling missiles (p. 220)

balteus, -i, m. belt, sword belt

barbarus, -i, m. barbarian, savage

bellum, -i, n. war. bellum inferre, with dat. make war upon

bene, adv. [for bonē, from bonus], compared melius, optimē, well

benignē, adv. [benignus, kind], compared benignius, benignissimē, kindly

benignus, -a, -um, adj. good-natured, kind, often used with dat.

bīnī, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. two each, two at a time (§ 334)

bis, adv. twice

bonus, -a, -um, adj. compared melior, optimus, good, kind (§ 469. a)

bōs, bovis (gen. plur. bovum or bovum, dat. and abl. plur. bōbus or būbus), m. and f. ox, cow

braccium, bracchī, n. arm

brevis, -e, adj. short

Brundisium, -ī, n. Brundisium, a seaport in southern Italy. See map

bulla, -ae, f. bulla, a locket made of small concave plates of gold fastened by a spring (p. 212)

casa

casa

C

C. abbreviation for Gāius, Eng. Caius

cadō, -ere, ce'cidē, cāsārus, fall

caedēs, -is, f. [caēdō, cut], (a cutting down), slaughter, carnage (§ 465. a)

caelum, -i, n. sky, heavens

Caesar, -aris, m. Cæsar, the famous general, statesman, and writer

calamitās, -ātis, f. loss, calamity, defeat, disaster

calcār, -āris, n. spur (§ 465. b)

Campānia, -ae, f. Campania, a district of central Italy. See map

Campānus, -a, -um, adj. of Campania
campus, -i, m. plain, field, esp. the Campus Martius, along the Tiber just outside the walls of Rome
canīs, -is, m. and f. dog
canō, -ere, ce'cinī, ——, sing
cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [canō, sing], sing

Capēnus, -a, -um, adj. of Capēna, esp. the Porta Capēna, the gate at Rome leading to the Appian Way

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, take, seize, capture (§ 492)

Capitōlīnus, -a, -um, adj. belonging to the Capitoli, Capitoline

Capitōlium, Capitōlii, n. [caput, head], the Capitol, the hill at Rome on which stood the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus and the citadel
capsa, -ae, f. box for books
captīvus, -i, m. [capiō, take], captive

Capua, -ae, f. Capua, a large city of Campania. See map

caput, -itis, n. head (§ 464. 2. b)
carcer, -eris, m. prison, jail
carrus, -i, m. cart, wagon
cārus, -a, -um, adj. dear, precious

casa, -ae, f. hut, cottage
castellum

castellum, -i, n. [dim. of castrum, fort], redoubt, fort
castrum, -i, n. fort. Usually in the plural, castra, -orum, a military
camp. castra poneere, to pitch camp
cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō, fall], chance: misfortune, loss

cataulta, -ae, i. catapult, an engine
for hurling stones

catēna, -ae, f. chain

cauponsa, -ae, f. inn

causa, -ae, f. cause, reason. quā dē
causa, for this reason

cēdō, -ere, cessō, cessūrus, give way,
retire
celer, -ēris, -ere, adj. swift, fleet
celerītās, -ātis, f. [celer, swift], swiftness, speed
celeriter, adv. [celer, swift], compared

celerius, celerīmē, swiftily
cēna, -ae, f. dinner

centum, indecl. numeral adj. hundred
centuriō, -onis, m. centurion, captain
Cēpheus (dissyll.), -ei (acc. Cēphae),
m. Cēpheus, a king of Ethiopia and
father of Andromeda

Cerberus, -i, m. Cerberus, the fabled
triple-headed dog that guarded the
entrance to Hades

certāmen, -inis, n. [certō, struggle],
struggle, contest, rivalry
certē, adv. [certus, sure], compared
certius, certissimē, surely, certainly
certus, -a, -um, adj. fixed, certain,
sure. aliquem certōrem facere (to
make some one more certain), to
inform some one
cervus, -i, m. stag, deer
cessō, -ēre, -āvi, -ātus, delay, cease
cibāria, -ōrum, n. plur. food, provisions
cibus, -i, m. food, victuals

collum

Cimbri, -ōrum, m. plur. the Cimbri
Cimbriicus, -a, -um, adj. Cimbrian
cinctus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of cingō,
surround], girt, surrounded
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cinctus, gird, surround
circiter, adv. about
circum, prep. with acc. around
circumōdō, -dare, -dēdī, -datus, place
around, surround, inclose
circumēō, -ere, -iī, -itus, go around
circum-sistō, -ere, circumsteti, ——,
stand around, surround
circum-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus (come
around), surround
citerior, -ius, adj. in comp., superl.
citimus, hither, nearer (§ 475)
civilis, -e, adj. [civis], civil

civis, -is, m. and f. citizen (§ 243. i)
civitas, -ātis, f. [civis, citizen], (body
of citizens), state; citizenship

clàmor, -oris, m. shout, cry

clárus, -a, -um, adj. clear; famous,
renowned; bright, shining

classis, -is, f. fleet
claudō, -ere, -si, -sus, shut, close
clavus, -i, m. stripe

cliēna, -eitēs, m. dependent, retainer,
client (§ 465. a)

Cocles, -itis, m. (blind in one eye),
Cocles, the surname of Horatius

goūsōci, -ere, -goūvi, -goūitus, learn,
know, understand. Cf. scīo (§ 420. b)
gōgō, -ere, coēgī, coēctus [co(m)-, to-
gether, + age, drive], (drive together),
collect, compel, drive
cohōrs, cohortis, f. cohort, the tenth
part of a legion, about 360 men

collis, -is, m. hill. in summō colle, on
top of the hill (§ 247. z. a)
collum, -i, n. neck
colō

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, cultivate, till; honor, worship; devote one's self to
columna, -ae, f. column, pillar
com-, (col-, con-, cor-, co-), a prefix, together, with, or intensifying the meaning of the root word
com-, -ae, f. hair
comes, -itis, m. and f. [com-, together, + eō, go], companion, comrade
comitātus, -ūs, m. [comitor, accompany], escort, company
comitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb
[comes, companion], accompany
com-meātus, -ūs, m. supplies
com-minus, adv. [com-, together, + manus, hand], hand to hand
com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, join together; commit, intrust, proelium
committere, join battle. sē committere with dat., trust one's self to
commodē, adv. [commodus, fil], compared commodius, commodissimē, conveniently, fitly
commodus, -a, -um, adj. suitable, fit
com-mōtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of com-moveō, move], aroused, moved
com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intensive, + parō, prepare], prepare; provide, get
com-pleō, -ere, -plēvi, -plētus [com-, intensive, + pleō, fill], fill up
complexus, -ūs, m. embrace
com-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus
[com-, together, + premō, press], press together, grasp, seize
com-cidō, -ere, -cidī, —— [com-, intensive, + cadō, fall], fall down
concilium, concīlī, n. meeting, council
con-clūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus [com-, intensive, + claudō, close], shut up, close; end, finish
con-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [com-, together, + currō, run], run together; rally, gather
condiciō, -ōnis, f. [com-, together, + dicō, talk], agreement, condition, terms
con-dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, pardon
con-dācō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, hire
con-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, bring together. sē conferrē, betake one's self
con-fertus, -a, -um, adj. crowded, thick
confestim, adv. immediately
con-fīciō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus [com-, completely, + faciō, do], make, complete, accomplish, finish
con-firmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make firm, establish, strengthen, affirm, assert
con-fluō, -ere, -flūxi, ——, flow together
con-fugiō, -ere, -fugī, -fugītūrus, flee for refuge, flee
con-iciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectus [com-, intensive, + iacio, throw], hurl
con-iungō, -ere, -iūnxi, -iunctus [com-, together, + iungō, join], join together, unite
con-iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together, + iūrō, swear], unite by oath, conspire
con-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together, + locō, place], arrange, place, station
conloquium, conlo'qui, n. [com-, together, + loquor, speak], conversation, conference
cōnōr, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb, endeavor, attempt, try
con-scendō, -ere, -scendi, -scensus [com-, intensive, + scandō, climb], climb up, ascend. nāvem conscen-
dere, embark, go on board
cōn-scribō

contrōversia, -ae, f. dispute, quarrel

con-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -vēntus [com-, together, + veniō, come], come together, meet, assemble

con-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus [com-, intensive, + vertō, turn], turn

con-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-, together, + vocō, call], call together

co-orīor, -īri, -ortus sum, dep. verb [com-, intensive, + orior, rise], rise, break forth

cōpia, -ae, f. [com-, intensive, + ops, wealth], abundance, wealth, plenty.

Plur. cōpiae, -ārum, troops

cōquo, -ere, coxi, coactus, cook

Corinthus, -i, f. Corinth, the famous city on the Isthmus of Corinth

Cornēlia, -ae, f. Cornelia, daughter of Scipio and mother of the Gracchi

Cornēlius, Cornḗlii, m. Cornelius, a Roman name

cornū, -ūs, n. horn; wing of an army. a
dextrō cornū, on the right wing (§ 466)
corōna, -ae, f. garland, wreath; crown

corōnātus, -a, -um, adj. crowned

corpus, -oris, n. body

cor-rippō, -ere, -ui, -reptus [com-, intensive, + rapiō, seize], seize, grasp

cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj. daily

cotidiē, adv. daily

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj. thick, crowded, numerous, frequent

crēddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, trust, believe, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
cremō, -ēre, -āvi, -ātus, burn

crēō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make; elect, appoint

Creōn, -ontis, m. Creon, a king of Corinth

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, rise, grow, increase
Créta

Créta, -ae, f. Crete, a large island in the Mediterranean
Créticaus, -a, -um, adj. Cretan
crús, crúris, n. leg
crustum, -i, n. pastry, cake
cubile, -is, n. bed
cultūra, -ae, f. culture, cultivation
cum, conj. with the indic. or subjv. when; since; although (§ 501. 46)
cum, prep. with abl. with (§ 209)
cupidē, adv. [cupidus, desirus], compared cupidus, cupidissimē, eagerly
cupītās, -ātis, f. [cupidus, desirus], desire, longing
cupiō, -ere, -iūi or -iī, -ītus, desire, wish. Cf. volō
currō, -ere, cucurri, cursus, run
currus, -ūs, m. chariot
cursus, -ūs, m. course
custōdiō, -ere, -iūi, -ītus [custōs, guard], guard, watch

děnsus

dē-cidō, -ere, -cidi, — [dē, down, + cadō, fall], fall down
decimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. tenth
dēclīvis, -e, adj. sloping downward
dē-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, give up, surrender. sē dēdere, surrender one’s self
dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus [dē, down, + dūcō, lead], lead down, escort
dē-fendō, -ere, -dī, -fensus, ward off, repel, defend
dē-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [dē, down, + ferō, bring], bring down; report, announce (§ 426)
dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj. tired out, weary
dē-ficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectus [dē, from, + faciō, make], fail, be wanting; revolt from
dē-fīgō, -ere, -fixi, -fixus [dē, down, + figō, fasten], fasten, fix
dē-iciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectus [dē, down, + iacio, hurl], hurl down; bring down, kill
dē-indē, adv. (from thence), then, in the next place
dēlectō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, delight
dēleō, -ère, -ēvi, -ētus, blot out, destroy
dēliberō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, weigh, deliberate, ponder
dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [dē, from, + legō, gather], choose, select
Delphicus, -a, -um, adj. Delphic
dēmīssus, -a, -um [part. of dēmittō, send down], downcast, humble
dē-mōnstrō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [dē, out, + monstrō, point], point out, show
dēmum, adv. at last, not till then. tum dēmum, then at last
dēnique, adv. at last, finally. Cf. postrēmō
dēns, dentis, m. tooth (§ 247. 2. a)
dēnsus, -a, -um, adj. dense, thick
dē-pendeō

dē-pendeō, -ēre, — — [dē, down, + pendeō, hang], hang from, hang down

dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dē, intensive, + plōrō, wail], bewail, deplore

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus [dē, down, + pōnō, put], put down

dē-scendō, -ere, -di, -scēnsus [dē, down, + scandō, climb], climb down, descend

dē-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus [dē, down, + scribō, write], write down

dē-sīderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, long for

dē-siliō, -ere, -uí, -sultus [dē, down, + salīō, leap], leap down

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dē, away from, + spērō, hope], despair

dē-spiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus [dē, down], look down upon, despise

dē-sum, -esse, -suī, -sūtūrus [dē, away from, + sum, be], be wanting, lack, with dat. (§ 426)
dēus, -i, m. god (§ 468)
dē-volvō, -ere, -volvī, -volvūtus [dē, down, + volvō, roll], roll down

dē-vorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dē, down, + vorō, swallow], devour

dexter, -tra, -trum (-tera, -terum), adj. to the right, right. a dextrō cornū, on the right wing

Diāna, -ae, f. Diana, goddess of the moon and twin sister of Apollo
dīcō, -ere, -dixi, dixūs (inv. dic), say, speak, tell. Usually introduces indirect discourse (§ 420, a)
dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dictate], dictator, a chief magistrate with unlimited power
dīēs, -ēi or dīe, m., sometimes f. in sing., day (§ 467)
dif-ferrō, -ferre, distulī, distūtus [dis-, apart, + ferō, carry], carry apart;
dif-ferē, -ferre inter sē, differ from each other

dif-ficilis, -e, adj. [dis-, not, + facilis, easy], hard, difficult (§ 307)
difficultās, -ātis, f. [difficilis, hard], difficulty

diligenter, adv. [āligēns, careful], compared diligentius, diligentissimē, industriously, diligently
diligentia, -ae, f. [āligēns, careful], industry, diligence

di-micō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fight, struggle

di-mittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missus [di-, off, + mittō, send], send away, dismiss, disband. dīmittere animum in, direct one's mind to, apply one's self to

Diomēdēs, -is, m. Diō-menēs, a name

dis-, di-, a prefix expressing separation, off, apart, in different directions. Often negatives the meaning

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus [dis-, apart, + cēdō, go], depart from, leave, withdraw, go away

dis-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus [dis-, apart, + cernō, see], separate; distinguish

disciplīna, -ae, f. instruction, training, discipline

discipulus, -i, m. [discō, learn], pupil, disciple

discō, -ere, didicī, — —, learn

dis-cutīō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus [dis-, apart, + quatiō, shake], shatter, dash to pieces

dis-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [dis-, apart, + pōnō, put], put here and there, arrange, station

dis-similis, -e, adj. [dis-, apart, + similis, like], unlike, dissimilar (§ 307)
dis-trībuō, -ere, -ūi, -ūtus, divide, distribute
diū
adv., compared diūtius, diūtissimē, for a long time, long ($§$ 477)
dō, dare, dēdī, dātus, give. in fugam dare, put to flight. alicui nēgōtiām dare, employ some one
doceō, -ere, -ūī, -tus, teach, show
doctrina, -ae, f. [doctor, teacher], teaching, learning, wisdom
dolor, -ōris, m. pain, sorrow
domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [domus, house], of the house, domestic
domicilium, domiciūlum, n. dwelling, house, abode. Cf. domus
domina, -ae, f. mistress (of the house), lady ($§$ 461)
dominus, -ī, m. master (of the house), owner, ruler ($§$ 462)
domus, -ūs, f. house, home. domī, locative, at home ($§$ 468)
dormiō, -ēre, -īvī, -ātus, sleep
dracō, -onis, m. serpent, dragon
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hesitate
dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo, two], (moving two ways), doubtful, dubious
du-centī, -ae, -a, numeral adj. two hundred
duō, -ere, dōxī, ductus (inv. dūc), lead, conduct
dum, conj. while, as long as
duo, duae, duo, numeral adj. two ($§$ 479)
duo-decim, indecl. numeral adj. twelve
dūrūs, -a, -um, adj. hard, tough; harsh, pitiless, bitter
dux, ducis, m. and f. [cf. dūcō, lead'], leader, commander

ē or ex, prep. with abl. out of, from, off, of ($§$ 209)
eburneus, -a, -um, adj. of ivory

eccē, adv. see! behold! there! here!
ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus [ē, out, + dūcō, lead'], lead out, draw out
ef-ficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectus [ex, thoroughly, + faciō, do], work out; make, cause

ef-fugō, -ere, -fugi, -fugitūrus [ex, from, + fugō, flee], escape
egeō, -ère, -ui, —, be in need of, lack, with abl. ($§$ 501. 32)
egō, pers. pron. I; plur. nōs, we ($§$ 480)
egredior, -ī, ēgressus sum, dep. verb [ē, out of, + gradior, go], go out, go forth. ē nāvī ēgregiā, disembark
ē-iciō, -ere, -icēi, -ictus [ē, forth, + iaciō, hurl], hurl forth, expel
elementum, -ī, n., in plur. first principles, rudiments
elephantus, -ī, m. elephant
Ēlis, Elēdis, f. E'lis, a district of southern Greece
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, buy, purchase
enim, conj., never standing first, for; in fact, indeed. Cf. nam
Ennius, Ėnnī, m. Ėnnius, the father of Roman poetry, born 239 b.c.
eō, ēre, ēt (īvi), ētūrus, go ($§$ 499)
eō, adv. to that place, thither
Ēpīrus, -ī, f. Epī'rus, a district in the north of Greece
eques, -ītis, m. [equus, horse], horseman, cavalryman
equitātus, -ūs, m. [equitō, ride], cavalry
equus, -ī, m. horse
ē-rigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rectus [ē, out, + regō, make straight], raise up
ē-rūpiō, -ere, -ūrī, -ruptus [ē, out of, + rūpiō, seize], seize; rescue
ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptus [ē, forth, + rumpō, break], burst forth
ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. salty
Erymanthius

Erymanthius, -a, -um, adj. Eryman-thian, of Erymanthus, a district in southern Greece
et, conj. and, also. et...et, both...
and. Cf. atque, ac, -que
etiam, adv. (rarely conj.) [et, also, +
iam, now], yet; still; also, besides. Cf.
quoque. non solum...sed etiam, not
only...but also

Etruscī, -orum, m. the Etruscans, the
people of Etruria. See map of Italy

Eurōpā, -ae, f. Europe

Eurystheus, -i, m. Eurystheus, a king
of Tiryns, a city in southern Greece
evādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus [ē, out, +
vādō, go], go forth, escape
ex, see ē

examīnātus, -a, -um [part. of examīnō,
put out of breath (anima)], adj. out
of breath, tired; lifeless
ex-cipīō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [ex, out,
+ cāpiō, take], welcome, receive

exemplum, -i, n. example, model
ex-eō,-ire,-iā,-itārūs [ex, out, +
cō, go],
go out, go forth (§ 413)
ex-erceō,-ère,-ui,-ītus [ex, out, +
arceō, shut], (shut out), employ, train,
exercise, use

exercitus, -ūs, m. [exerceō, train],
army
ex-īstīmō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus [ex, out, +
aestīmō, reckon], estimate; think,
judge (§ 420.č). Cf. arbitrōr, putō

ex-oriōr,-īi,-ūrūs sum, dep. verb [ex,
forth, + orio, rise], come forth, rise
expeditūs,-a,-um, adj. without baggage
ex-pellō,-ere,-pulī,-pulsus [ex, out,
+ pellō, drive], drive out
ex-piō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus [ex, intensive,
+ piō, atone for], make amends for,
atone for

fāma

explōrātor, -ōris, m. [explōrō, investi-
gate], spy, scout
explōrō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus, examine, ex-
ploro
ex-pugnō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus [ex, out, +
pugnō, fight], take by storm, capture
exsiliōn, exsilīō, n. [exsilū, exsilē], ban-
ishment, exile
ex-spectō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus [ex, out, +
spectō, look], expect, wait
ex-struō,-ere,-strūxi,-strūctus [ex,
out, + struō, build], build up, erect
exterus,-a,-um, adj., compared ex-
terior, extrêmus or extimus, outside,
outer (§ 312)
extrā, prep. with acc. beyond, outside of
ex-trahō,-ere,-trāxi,-trāctus [ex, out,
+ trahō, drag], drag out, pull forth
extrêmus,-a,-um, adj., superl. of ex-
terus, utmost, farthest (§ 312)

fābula,-ae, f. story, tale, fable
facile, adv. [facilis, easy], compared
facilīus, facilīmē, easily (§ 322)
facilis, -ē, adj. [cf. faciō, make], easy,
without difficulty (§ 307)
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus (inv. fac),
make, do; cause, bring about. impe-
tum facere in, make an attack upon.
proelium facere, fight a battle. iter
facere, make a march or journey.
aliquem certōrem facere, inform
some one. facere verba prō, speak in
behalf of. Passive fiō, fieri, factus
sum, be done, happen. certior fieri,
be informed
fallō,-ere, fefellī, falsus, trip, betray,
deceive

fāma, -ae, f. report, rumor; renown,
fame, reputation
famēs
famēs, -is (abl. famē), f. hunger
familia, -ae, f. servants, slaves; household, family
fascēs, -ium (plur. of fascis), f. fāces (p. 225)
fastigium, fastīgī, n. top; slope, descent
fātum, -i, n. fate, destiny
faucēs, -ium, f. plur. jaw, throat
faveō, -ēre, fāvi, fātūrus, be favorable to, favor, with dat. (§ 501.14)
fēlix, -īcis, adj. happy, lucky
fēmina, -ae, f. woman. Cf. muiēr
fera, -ae, f. [ferus, wild], wild beast
ferāx, -ācis, adj. fertile
fērē, adv. about, nearly, almost
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear; graviter or molestē ferre, be annoyed (§ 498)
ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum, iron], made of iron
fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs, trust], faithful, true
fidēs, fidei or fidē, trust, faith; promise, word; protection. in fīdem venīre, come under the protection. in fīdes manēre, remain loyal
fīlia, -ae (dat. and abl. plur. fīliābus), f. daughter (§ 461. a)
filius, fili (voc. sing. fīli), m. son
finis, -is, m. boundary, limit, end; in plur. territory, country (§ 243.1)
finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [finis, boundary], adjoining, neighboring. Plur. finitimi, -ōrum, m. neighbors
fiō, fierī, factus sum, used as passive of facīō. See faciō (§ 500)
flamma, -ae, f. fire, flame
flōs, flōris, m. flower
fluctus, -ūs, m. [cf. flūō, flow], flood, wave, billow
fūgā, -ae, f. [cf. fugō, flee], flight.
in fugām dare, put to flight
flūmen, -inis, n. [cf. flūō, flow], river (§ 464. 2. b)
flūō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus, flow
fluvius, fluvī, m. [cf. flūō, flow], river
fodiō, -ere, fodī, fossus, dig
fōns, fontis, m. fountain (§ 247. 2. a)
fōrma, -ae, f. form, shape, appearance; beauty
Formiae, -ārum, f. Formiae, a town of Latium on the Appian Way. See map
forte, adv. [abl. of fors, chance], by chance
fortis, -e, adj. strong; fearless, brave
fortiter, adv. [fortis, strong], compared fortius, fortissimē, strongly; bravely
fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], chance, fate, fortune
forum, -ī, n. market place, esp. the Forum Rōmānum, where the life of Rome centered
Forum Appī, Forum of Appius, a town in Latium on the Appian Way
fossa, -ae, f. [cf. fōdiō, dig], ditch
fragor, -ōris, m. [cf. frangō, break], crash, noise
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, break
frāter, -tris, m. brother
fremitus, -ūs, m. loud noise
frequentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, attend
frētus, -a, -um, adj. supported, trusting.
Usually with abl. of means
frōns, frontis, f. fronte, a fronte, in front
fructus, -ūs, m. fruit
frumentārius, -a, -um, adj. pertaining to grain. rēs frumentāria, grain supplies
frumentum, -ī, n. grain
früstrā, adv. in vain, vainly
fuga, -ae, f. [cf. fugō, flee], flight.
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

fugiō

fugiō, -ere, fugi, fugitūrus, flee, run; avoid, shun

fūmō, -āre, —, smoke

fūnis, -is, m. rope

furor, -ōris, m. [fūō, rage], madness. in furōrem incidere, go mad

G

Gāius, Gāi, m. Gaius, a Roman name, abbreviated C., English form Caius

Galba, -ae, m. Galba, a Roman name

galea, -ae, f. helmet

Gallia, -ae, f. Gaul, the country comprising what is now Holland, Belgium, Switzerland, and France

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. Gallic

gallīna, -ae, f. hen, chicken

Gallus, -i, m. a Gaul

gaudium, gaudi, n. joy

Genāva, -ae, f. Geneva, a city in Switzerland

gēns, gentis, f. [cf. gignō, beget], race, family; people, nation, tribe

genus, -eris, n. kind, variety

Germānia, -ae, f. Germany

Germānus, -i, m. a German

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, carry, wear; wage. bellum gerere, wage war. rēs gestae, exploits. bene gerere, carry on successfully

gladiātōrius, -a, -um, adj. gladiatorial

gladius, glādi, m. sword

glōria, -ae, f. glory, fame

Gracchus, -i, m. Gracchus, name of a famous Roman family

gracilis, -e, adj. slender (§ 307)

Græca, -ōrum, n. plur. Greek writings, Greek literature

Græcē, adv. in Greek

Græcia, -ae, f. Greece

grammaticus, -i, m. grammarian

honestus

grātia, -ae, f. thanks, gratitude

grātus, -a, -um, adj. acceptable, pleasing. Often with dat. (§ 501. 16)

gravīs, -ē, adj. heavy; disagreeable; serious, dangerous; earnest, weighty

graviter, adv. [gravis, heavy], compared gravius, gravissimē, heavily; greatly, seriously. graviter ferre, bear ill, take to heart

gubernātor, -ōris, m. [gubernō, pilot], pilot

H

habēna, -ae, f. halter; rein

habeō, -ère, -ui, -itus, have, hold; regard, consider, deem

habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. habeō, have], dwell, abide, inhabit. Cf. incolō, vivō

hāc-tenus, adv. thus far

Helvētii, -ōrum, m. the Helvetii, a Gallic tribe

Herculēs, -is, m. Hercules, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, and god of strength

Hesperidēs, -um, f. the Hesperides, daughters of Hesperus, who kept the garden of the golden apples

hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative adj. and pron. this (of nine); as pers. pron. he, she, it (§ 481)

hic, adv. here

hiems, -emis, f. winter

hinc, adv. [hic, here], from here, hence

Hippolytē, -ēs, f. Hippolyte, queen of the Amazons

ho-dīē, adv. [modified form of hōc dīē, on this day], to-day

homō, -inis, m. and f. (human being), man, person

honestus, -ae, -um, adv. [honor, honor], respected, honorable
honor
honor, -ōris, m. honor
hōra, -ae, f. hour
Horātius, Horā'ti, m. Horatius, a
Roman name
horribilis, -e, adj. terrible, horrid
hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb,
urge, incite, exhort, encourage
(§ 493)
hortus, -i, m. garden
hospitium, hospī'ti, n. [hospes, host],
hospitality
hostis, -is, m. and f. enemy, foe
(§ 465. a)
humilis, -e, adj. low, humble (§ 307)
Hydra, -ae, f. the Hydra, a mythical
water snake slain by Hercules

I
iacō, -ere, iēci, iactus, throw, hurl
iam, adv. now, already. nec iam, and
no longer
Iāniculum, -i, n. the Janiculum, one
of the hills of Rome
iānua, -ae, f. door
ibi, adv. there, in that place
Icarus, -i, m. Icarus, the son of
Daedalus
ictus, -ūs, m. [cf. icō, strike], blow
idem, eadem, idem, demonstrative
pron. [is. + dem], same (§ 481)
idōneus, -a, -um, adj. suitable, fit
igitur, conj., seldom the first word,
therefore, then. Cf. itaque
ignis, -is, m. fire (§§ 243. 1; 247. 2. a;
465. 1)
ignōtus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, +
(g)nōtus, known], unknown, strange
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative adj. and
pron. that (yonder); as pers. pron.
he, she, it (§ 481)
illic, adv. [cf. ille], yonder, there

in-cautus
im-mittō, -ere, -misī, -missus [in,
against, + mittō, send], send against;
let in
immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, upon, +
mola, meal], sprinkle with sacrificial
meal; offer, sacrifice
im-mortālis, -e, adj. [in-, not, + mor-
tālis, mortal], immortal
im-mortālitās, -ātis, f. [immortālis,
immortal], immortality
im-parātus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, +
parātus, prepared], unprepared
impedimentum, -i, n. [impedō, hin-
der], hindrance; in plur. baggage
impeditus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of im-
pedō, hinder], hindered, burdened
im-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus [in,
against, + pellō, strike], strike
against; impel, drive, propel
imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō, com-
mand], general
imperium, impe'ri, n. [imperō, com-
mand], command, order; realm, em-
pire; power, authority
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, command,
order. Usually with dat. and an ob-
ject clause of purpose (§ 501. 41).
With acc. object, levy, impose
impetus, -ūs, m. attack. impetum
facere in, make an attack upon
im-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus [in, upon,
+ pōnō, place], place upon; impose,
assign
in, prep. with acc. into, to, against, at,
upon, towards; with abl. in, on. in
reliquum tempus, for the future
in-, inseparable prefix. With nouns
and adjectives often with a negative
force, like English un-, in-
in-cautus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, +
cautus, careful], off one's guard
incendium, incendī, n. flame, fire. Cf. ignis, flamma
in-cendō, -ere, -di, -cēnus, set fire to, burn
in-cidō, -ere, -cīdi, —— [in, in, on, + cadō, fall], fall in, fall on; happen.
in furōrem incidere, go mad
in-cipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [in, on, + capiō, take], begin
in-cognitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + cognitus, known], unknown
in-colō, -ere, -uī, —— [in, in, + colō, dwell], inhabit; live
incolumis, -e, adj. sound, safe, uninjured, unharmed
in-crēdibilis, -e, adj. [in-, not, + crēdibilis, to be believed], incredible
inē, from that place, thence
induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, put on
indūtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of induō, put on], clothed
in-eō, -ere, -iī, -ītus [in, into, + eō, go], go into; enter upon, begin, with acc. (§ 413)
In-fāns, -fantis, adj. [in-, not, + *fāns, speaking], not speaking. As a noun, m. and f. infant
in-fēlix, -īcis, adj. [in-, not, + fēlix, happy], unhappy, unlucky
in-fēnsus, -a, -um, adj. hostile
in-ferō, interferre, in-tuli, inlātus [in, against, + ferō, bear], bring against or upon, inflict, with acc. and dat. (§ 501, 1 s.). bellum inferre, with dat., make war upon
infirmus, -a, -um, adj. low, below (§ 312)
in-finitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + finitus, bounded], boundless, endless
in-firmus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + firmus, strong], weak, infirm

ingenium, ingeˈnium, n. talent, ability
ingēns, -entis, adj. vast, huge, enormous, large. Cf. magnus
in-gredior, -gredi,-gressus sum [in, in, + gradior, walk], advance, enter
inimicus, -a, -um, adj. [in-, not, + amicus, friendly], hostile. As a noun, inimicus, -i, m. enemy, foe. Cf. hostis
initium, initī, entrance, beginning
initus, -a, -um, part. of inēō. initā aestāte, at the beginning of summer
iniūria, -ae, f. [in, against, + iūs, law], injustice, wrong, injury. aliqui iniūriās inferre, inflict wrongs upon some one
inopia, -ae, f. [inops, needy], want, need, lack
in-opināns, -antis, adj. [in-, not, + opināns, thinking], not expecting, taken by surprise
inquit, said he, said she. Regularly inserted in a direct quotation
in-rigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, irrigate, water
in-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [in, into, + rumpō, break], burst in, break in
in-rūō, -ere, -rūī, —— [in, in, + rūō, rush], rush in
in-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [in, on, + sequor, follow], follow on, pursue
in-signe, -is, n. badge, decoration (§ 485, b)
in-signis, -e, adj. remarkable, noted
instāns, -antis, adj. [part. of insto, be at hand], present, immediate
in-stō, -āre, -stiti, -stātūrus [in, upon, + stō, stand], stand upon; be at hand; pursue, press on
instrumentum, -i, n. instrument
in-struō, -ere, -struī, -strūctus [in, on, + struō, build], draw up
insula, -ae, f. island
integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, whole; fresh, new
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [inter, between, eligō, choose], perceive, understand (§ 420 d)
intentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, aim; threaten
inter, prep. with acc. between, among; during, while (§ 340)
interfectus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of interficō, kill], slain, dead
inter-ficō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [inter, between, faciō, make], put out of the way, kill. Cf. necō, occidō, trucidō
interim, adv. meanwhile
interior, -ius, adj. interior, inner (§ 315)
inter-mittō, -ere, -misset, missus, leave off, suspend
interpres, -etis, m. and f. interpreter
interrogō, -ere, -āvi, -ātus, question
inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [inter, between, sum, be], be present, take part in, with dat. (§ 501. 15)
inter-vallum, -i, n. interval, distance
intrā, adv. and prep. with acc. within
intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, ge into, enter
inveniō, -īre, -vēniō, -ventus [in, upon, + veniō, come], find
invisus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of invideō, envy], hated, detested
Iölāus, -i, m. Io-la’us, a friend of Hercules
ipse, -a, -um, intensive pron. that very, this very; self, himself, herself, itself, (§ 481)
īra, -ae, f. wrath, anger
frātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of irāscor, be angry], angered, enraged
is, ea, id, demonstrative adj. and pron. this, that; he, she, it (§ 481)
iste, -a, -ud, demonstrative adj. and pron. that (of yours), he, she, it (§ 481)
ita, adv. so, thus. Cf. sic and tam
Italia, -ae, f. Italy
ita-que, conj. and so, therefore
item, adv. also
iter, itineris, n. journey, march, route; way, passage (§§ 247. 1 a; 468). iter dare, give a right of way, allow to pass.
iter facere, march (see p. 159)
iubēō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, order, command. Usually with the infin. and subj. acc. (§ 213)
iūdēx, -icus, m. and f. judge (§ 464. 1)
iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [iūdēx, judge], judge, decide (§ 420 c)
Iūlia, -ae, Julia, a Roman name
Iūlius, Iūli, m. Julius, a Roman name
iungō, -ēre, iūnxī, iunctus, join; yoke, harness
Iūnō, -onis, f. Iūna, the queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter
Iuppiter, Iovis, m. Jupiter, the supreme god
iūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, swear, take an oath
iussus, -a, -um, part. of iubēō, ordered
L
L., abbreviation for Lūcius
labefactus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of labefaciō, cause to shake], shaken, weakened, ready to fall
Labiēnus, -i, m. La-biē’nus, one of Caesar’s lieutenants
labor, -ōris, m. labor, toil
labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [labor, labor], labor; suffer, be hard pressed
lacrima, -ae, f. tear
lacus, -ūs (dat. and abl. plur. lacubus), m. lake
Latin–English Vocabulary

laetē
laetē, adv. [laetus, glād], compared
laetius, laetissimē, glādly
lactitia, -ae, f. [laetus, glād], joy
laetus, -a, -um, adj. glād, joyful
lapis, -īdis, m. stone (§§ 247. 2. a; 464. 1)
Lār, Laris, m.; plur. Lāris, -um (rarely -um), the Lores or household gods
lātē, adv. [lātus, wide], compared
lātius, lātissimē, widely
Latinē, adv. in Latin. Latinē loquit, to speak Latin
lātitūdō, -inis, f. [lātus, wide], width
Lātōna, -ae, f. Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana
lātus, -a, -um, adj. wide
latus, -eris, n. side, flank. ab utroque laterē, on each side
laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [laus, praise], praise
laureā, -ae, f. laurel
laureātus, -a, -um, adj. crowned with laurel
laus, laudis, f. praise
lectulus, -i, m. couch, bed
lēgātus, -i, m. ambassador; lieutenant
legiō, -onis, f. [cf. legō, gather], (body of soldiers), legion, about 3600 men (§ 464. 2. c)
legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. legionary.
Plur. legiōnārii, -ōrum, m. the soldiers of the legion
legō, -ere, legī, lēctus, read
lēnis, -e, adj. gentle, smooth, mild
lēnīter, adv. [lēnis, gentle], compared
lēnīus, lēnissimē,gently
Lentulus, -i, m. Lentulus, a Roman family name
leō, -onis, m. lion
Lernaeus, -a, -um, adj. Lernæan, of Lerna, in southern Greece
Lesbia, -ae, f. Lesbia, a girl's name
magis
levīs, -e, adj. light
lēx, lēgis, f. measure, law
libenter, adv. [libēns, willing], compared libentius, libentissimē, willingly, gladly
libēr, -era, -erum, adj. free (§ 469. b)
liberi, -ōrum, m. [liber, free], children
liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [liber, free], set free, release, liberate
libertās, -ātis, f. [liber, free], freedom, liberty
lictor, -ōris, m. lictor (p. 225)
limus, -ī, m. mud
littera, -ae, f. a letter of the alphabet; in plur. a letter, epistle
lītus, -oris, m. seashore, beach
locus, -i, m. (plur. loci and loca, m. and n.), place, spot
longē, adv. [longus, longus], comp. longius, longissimē, along way off; by far
longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus, longus], distant, remote
longitūdō, -inis, f. [longus, longus], length
longus, -a, -um, adj. long
loquiōr, loquiō, locūtus sum, dep. verb, talk, speak
lōrica, -ae, f. [lōrum, thong], coat of mail, corselet
lūdō, -ere, lūsi, lūsus, play
lūdus, -i, m. play; school, the elementary grades. Cf. schola
lūna, -ae, f. moon
lūx, lūcis, f. (no gen. plur.), light.
prima lūx, daybreak
Lūdia, -ae, f. Lydia, a girl's name

M
M., abbreviation for Mārcus
magicus, -a, -um, adj. magic
magis, adv. in comp. degree [magnus, great], more, in a higher degree (§ 323)
magister

magister, -trí, m. master, commander; teacher

magistrátus, -ús, m. [magister, master], magistracy; magistrate

magnitúdō, -inis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, size

magnopere, adv. [abl. of magnus opus], compared magis, maximē, greatly, exceedingly (§ 323)

magnus, -a, -um, adj., compared maior, maximus, great, large; strong, loud (§ 311)

maior, maius, -óris, adj., comp. of magnus, greater, larger (§ 311)

maiōrēs, -um, m. plur. of maior, ancestors

mālō, mālle, mālui, — [magis, more, + volō, wish], wish more, prefer (§ 497)

malus, -a, -um, adj., compared peior, pessimus, bad, evil (§ 311)

māndō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [manus, hand, + dō, put], (put in hand), intrust; order, command

манеō, -ère, mānsi, mānsūrus, stay; remain, abide

Mānlius, Mānli, m. Manlius, a Roman name

mānsuētus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of mānsuēscō, tame], tamed

manus, -ús, f. hand; force, band

Marcus, -i, m. Marcus, Mark, a Roman first name

mare, -is, n. (no gen. plur.), sea. mare tenēre, be out to sea

margō, -inis, m. edge, border

maritus, -i, m. husband

Marius, Mari, m. Marius, a Roman name, esp. C. Marius, the general.

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj. of Mars, esp. the Campus Martius

māter, -tris, f. mother

mātrimōnium, mātrimōnī, n. marriage. in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hasten. Cf. contendō, properō

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj. ripe, mature

maximē, adv. in superl. degree [maximus, greatest], compared magnopere, magis, maximē, especially, very much (§ 323)

maximus, -a, -um, adj., superi. of magnus, greatest, extreme (§ 311)

medius, -a, -um, adj. middle part; middle, intervening

melior, -ius, -óris, adj., comp. of bonus, better (§ 311)

melius, adv. in comp. degree, compared bene, melius, optimē, better (§ 323)

memoria, -ae, f. [memor, mindful], memory. memoria tenēre, remember

mēns, mentis, f. mind. Cf. animus

mēnis, -is, m. month (§ 247. 2. a)

mercātor, -óris, m. [mercør, trade], trader, merchant

meridiānus, -a, -um, adj. [meridiēs, noon], of midday

meridiēs, — (acc. -em, abl. -ē), m. [medius, mid, + diēs, day], noon

metus, -ūs, m. fear, dread

meus, -a, -um, possessive adj. and pron. mý, mine (§ 98)

mīles, -itis, m. soldier (§ 464. 1)

militāris, -e, adj. [mīles, soldier], military. rēs militāris, science of war

militō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [mīles, soldier], serve as a soldier

mīlle, plur. mīlia, -ium, numeral adj. and subst. thousand (§ 479)

minimē, adv. in superl. degree, compared parum, minus, minimē, least, very little; by no means (§ 323)
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

minimus

minimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared parvus, minor, minimus, least, smallest (§ 311)

minor, minus, -oris, adj. in comp. degree, compared parvus, minor, minimus, smaller, less (§ 311)

Minōs, -ōs, m. Minos, a king of Crete

minus, adv. in comp. degree, compared parum, minus, minime, less (§ 323)

Minyae, -ārum, m. the Minyae, a people of Greece

mirabilia, -e, adj. [miror, wonder at], wonderful, marvelous

miror, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb [mirus, wonderful], wonder, marvel, admire

mirus, -a, -um, adj. wonderful

Misēnum, -ī, Misē'num, a promontory and harbor on the coast of Campania. See map

miser, -era, -erum, adj. wretched, unhappy, miserable

missus, -a, -um, part. of mittō, sent

mittō, -ere, misi, missus, send

modicus, -a, -um [modus, measure], modest, ordinary

modo, adv. [abl. of modus, measure, with shortened o], only, merely, just now. modo . . . modo, now . . . now, sometimes . . . sometimes

modus, -ī, m. measure; manner, way; kind

moenia, -ium, n. plur. [cf. mūniō, fortify], walls, ramparts

molestē, adv. [molestus, troublesome], compared molestius, molestissimē, annoyingly. molestē ferre, to be annoyed

molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, annoying, unpleasant (§ 501. 16)

nauta

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, remind, advise, warn (§ 489)

mōns, montis, m. mountain (§ 247. 2. a)

mōnstrum, -ī, n. monster

mora, -ae, f. delay

moror, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb [mora, delay], delay, linger; impede

mors, mortis, f. [cf. morior, die], death

mōs, mōris, m. custom, habit

mōtus, -ūs, m. [cf. moveō, move], motion, movement. terrae mōtus, earthquake

moveō, -ēre, movi, mōtus, move

mox, adv. soon, presently

mulier, -eris, f. woman

multitūdō, -inis, f. [multus, much], multitude

multum (multō), adv. [multus, much], compared plūs, plūrium, much (§ 477)

multus, -a, -um, adj., compared plūs, plūrium, much; plur. many (§ 311)

mūniō, -īre, -īvi or -īī, -itus, fortify, defend

mūniōtiō, -onis, f. [mūniō, fortify], defense, fortification

mūrus, -ī, m. wall. Cf. moenia

mūsica, -ae, f. music

N

nam, conj. for. Cf. euim

nam-que, conj., a strengthened nam, introducing a reason or explanation, for, and in fact; seeing that

nārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, tell, relate

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, dep. verb, be born, spring from

nātūra, -ae, f. nature

nātus, part. of nāscor

nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita, from nāvis, ship], sailor
nāvālis

nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvis, ship], naval
nāvigium, nāvi'gi, n. ship, boat
nāvīgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nāvis, ship, + agō, drive], sail, cruise
nāvis, -is (abl. -i or -e), f. ship
($§ 243. 1$). nāvem cónscedere, embark, go on board. nāvem solvere, set sail. nāvis longa, man-of-war
nē, conj. and adv. in order that not, that (with verbs of fearing), lest; not. nē ... quidem, not even
-ne, interrog. adv., enclitic (see §§ 16, 210). Cf. nóne and num
nec or neque, conj. [nē, not, + que, and], and not, nor. nec ... nec or neque ... neque, neither ... nor
necessārius, -a, -um, adj. needful, necessary
necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. nēx, death].
kill. Cf. interficō, occīdō, trucidō
negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, deny, say not
($§ 420. a$)
negotium, negō'ti, n. [nec, not, + ōtium, ease], business, affair, matter. aliqui negociō dare, to employ some one
Nemaeus, -a, -um, adj. Nê̆mē'an, of Nê̆mē'a, in southern Greece
nēmō, dat. nēminī (gen. nūllus, abl. nūllo, supplied from nūllos), m. and f. [nē, not, + homō, man], (not a man), no one, nobody
Neptūnus, -i, m. Neptūne, god of the sea, brother of Jupiter
neque, see nec
neuter, -tra, -trum (gen. -trīus, dat. -trī), adj. neither (of two) ($§ 108$)
nē-ve, conj. adv. and not, and that not, and lest
nihil, n. indecl. [nē, not, + hilum, a whil], nothing. nihil posse, to have no power

num

nihilum, -i, n., see nihil
Nīobē, -ēs, f. Nī'obe, the queen of Thebes whose children were destroyed by Apollo and Diana
nisi, conj. [nē, not, + si, if], if not, unless, except
nōbilis, -e, adj. well known; noble
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -ītūrus [cf. necō, kill], hurt, injure, with dat. ($§ 501. 14$)
noctū, abl. used as adv. [cf. nox, night], at night, by night
Nōla, -ae, f. Nōla, a town in central Campania. See map
nōlō, nósile, nōli, — [ne, not, + volō, wish], not to wish, be unwilling ($§ 497$)
nōmen, -inis, n. [cf. nōscō, know], (means of knowing), name
nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nōmen, name], name, call. Cf. appellō, vocō
nōn, adv. [nē, not, + ūnum, one], not.
nōn sōlum ... sed etiam, not only ... but also
nōn-dum, adv. not yet
nōn-ne, interrog. adv. suggesting an affirmative answer, not? ($§ 210$). Cf. -ne and num
nōs, pers. pron. we (see ego) ($§ 480$)
noster, -tra, -trum, possessive adj. and pron. our, ours. Plur. nostri, -trum, m. our men ($§ 98$)
novem, indecl. numeral adj. nine
novus, -a, -um, adj. new. novae rēs, a revolution
nox, noctis, f. night. multā nocte, late at night
nūllus, -a, -um (gen. -lus, dat. -i) adj. [nē, not, + ūllus, any], not any, none, no ($§ 108$)
num, interrog. adv. suggesting a negative answer ($§ 210$). Cf. -ne and nōne. In indir. questions, whether
numerus
numerus, -i, m. number
numquam, adv. [nē, non, + umquam, ever], never
nunc, adv. now. Cf. iam
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūntius, messenger], report, announce (§ 420. a)
nūntius, nūnti, m. messenger
nūper, adv. recently, lately, just now
nympha, -ae, f. nymph

O
ob, prep. with acc. on account of. In compounds it often means in front of, against, or is intensive. Quam ob rem, for this reason (§ 340)
obses, -īdis, m. and f. hostages
ob-sideō, -ère, -sēdi, -sessus [ob, against, + sedeō, sit], besiege
obtineō, -ère, -uī, -tentus [ob, against, + teneō, hold], possess, occupy, hold
occāsiō, -ānis, f. favorable opportunity, favorable moment
occāsus, -īs, m. going down, setting
occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ob, down, + caedō, strike], strike down; cut down, kill. Cf. interficiō, necō
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, completely, + capiō, take], seize, take possession of, occupy. Cf. rapiō
oc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [ob, against, + currō, run], run towards; meet, with dat. (§ 426)
ōceanus, -i, m. the ocean
octō, indecl. numeral adj. eight
oculus, -i, m. eye
officium, officiī, n. duty
ōlim, adv. formerly, once upon a time
ōmen, -inis, n. sign, token, omen
o-mittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missus [ob, over, past, + mittō, send], let go, omit. cōnsilium omittere, give up a plan

orior
omnīnō, adv. [omnia, all], altogether, wholly, entirely
omnis, -e, adj. all, every. Cf. tōtus
oleraria, -ae, f. [onus, load], with nāvis expressed or understood, merchant vessel, transport
onus, -eris, n. load, burden
opiniō, -onis, f. [opīdor, suppose], opinion, supposition, expectation
oppidānus, -ī, m. [oppidum, town], townsmen
oppidum, -i, n. town, stronghold
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj. suitable, opportune, favorable
op-prūmō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [ob, against, + premō, press], (press against), crush; surprise
oppugnātiō, -onis, f. storming, assault
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, against, + pugnō, fight], fight against, assault, storm, assail
optimē, adv. in superl. degree, compared bene, melius, optimē, very well, best of all (§ 323)
opimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared bonus, melior, optimus, best, most excellent (§ 311)
opus, -ēris, n. work, labor, task (§ 464. 2 b)
ōrācolum, -ī, n. [ōrē, speak], oracle
ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrē, speak], orator
orbis, -is, m. ring, circle. orbis terrārum, the earth, world
orbita, -ae, f. [orbis, wheel], rut
Orcus, -i, m. Orcus, the lower world
ōrdō, -inis, m. row, order, rank (§ 247. 2 a)
ōrigō, -onis, f. [orior, rise], source, origin
orior, -īrī, oritus sum, dep. verb, arise, rise; begin; spring, be born
Latin-English Vocabulary

ornamentum

ornamentum, -i, n. [örnō, fit out], ornament, jewel
ornatus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of órnō, fit out], fitted out; adorned
órō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fit out, adorn

pāx, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.), peace
pecūnia, -ae, f. [pecus, cattle], money
pedes, -itis, m. [pēs, foot], foot soldier
pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pēs, foot], on foot; by land
peior, peius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, compared malus, peior, pessimus, worse (§ 311)
pellis, -is, f. skin, hide
peenna, -ae, f. feather
per, prep. with acc. through, by means of, on account of. In composition it often has the force of thoroughly, completely, very (§ 340)
percussus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of percutiō, strike through], pierced
per-ducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [per, through, + dūcō, lead], lead through.
fossam perducere, to construct a ditch
per-exiguus, -a, -um, adj. [per, very, + exiguus, small], very small, very short
perfidus, -a, -um, adj. faithless, treacherous, false
per-fringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus [per, through, + frangō, break], shatter
pergō, -ere, perrexī, perrectus [per, through, + regō, conduct], go on, proceed, hasten
periculum, -i, n. trial, test; danger
peristylum, -i, n. peristyle, an open court with columns around it
peritus, -a, -um, adj. skillful
perpetuus, -a, -um, adj. perpetual
Perseus, -ei, Perseus, a Greek hero, son of Jupiter and Danae
persōna, -ae, f. part. character, person
per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsus [per, thoroughly, + suādeō, persuade], persuade, advise, with dat. (§ 501. 14), often with an object clause of purpose (§ 501. 41)

P

P, abbreviation for Pū blius
paene, adv. nearly, almost
paludamentum, -i, n. military cloak
palūs, -ūdis, f. swamp, marsh
pānis, -is, m. bread
pār, paris, adj. equal (§ 471. 111)
pārātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of parō, prepare], prepared, ready
parcō, -ere, perseverī (parsī), parsūrus, spare, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, ——, obey, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, prepare for, prepare; provide, procure
pars, partis, f. part, share; side, direction
param, adv., compared minus, minime, too little, not enough (§ 323)
parvus, -a, -um, adj., compared minor, minimus, small, little (§ 311)
passus, -ūs, m. step, pace. mille passuum, thousand paces, mile (331. b)
pateō, -ere, patui, ——, lie open, be open; stretch, extend
pater, -tris, m. father (§ 464. 2. a)
patriae, -ae, f. [cf. pater, father], fatherland, (one's) country
paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), few, only a few
pauleisper, adv. for a little while
pauleō, adv. by a little, little
paulum, adv. a little, somewhat
per-terreō

per-terrēō, -ēre, -ūi, -ūtus [per, thoroughly, + terrēō, frighten], thoroughly terrifying, alarm

per-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus [per, through, + veniō, come], arrive, reach, come to

pēs, pedis, m. foot, pedem referre, retreat (§ 247. 2. a)

pessimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared malus, peior, pessimus, worst (§ 311)

petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itus, strive for, seek, beg, ask; make for, travel to.
Cf. postulō, quaerō, rogō

Pharsālus, -i, f. Pharsalōns or Pharsalōnia, a town in Thessaly, near which Cæsar defeated Pompey, 48 B.C.

philosophia, -ae, f. philosophy
philosophus, -i, m. philosopher

pictus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of pingō, paint], colored, variegated

pīlum, -ī, n. spear, javelin (§ 462. b)
piscina, -ae, f. [piscis, fish], fish pond
piscis, -is, m. fish

pistor, -ōris, m. baker

placeō, -ēre, -ūi, -itus, please, be pleasing, with dat. (§ 501. 14)

plānitīēs, -ēi, f. [plānus, level], plain
plānus, -a, -um, adj. level, flat
plēnus, -a, -um, full

plūrimum, adv. in superl. degree, compared multum, plūs, plūrimum, very much. plūrimum valēre, be most influential (§ 322)

plūrīmus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared multus, plūs, plūrīmus, most, very many (§ 311)

plūs, plūris, adj. in comp. degree, compared multus, plūs, plūrīmus; sing. n. as substantive, more; plur. more, several (§ 311)

potential

pluteus, -i, m. shield, parapet
poena, -ae, f. punishment, penalty
poēta, -ae, m. poet
pompa, -ae, f. procession
Pompēii, -ōrum, m. Pompeii, a city of Campania. See map

Pompēius, Pompei, m. Pompey, a Roman name

pōnum, -i, n. apple

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, put, place.
castra pōnere, pitch camp

pōns, pontis, m. bridge (§ 247. 2. a)
popīna, -ae, f. restaurant

populus, -i, m. people

Porsena, -ae, m. Porsena, king of Etruria, a district of Italy. See map

porta, -ae, f. gate, door

portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, bear, carry

portus, -ūs, m. [cf. porta, gate], harbor

possideō, -ère, -sēdī, -sessus, have, own, possess

possum, posse, potui, ---, irreg. verb

[ potis, able, + sum, I am], be able, can (§ 495). nihil posse, have no power

post, prep. with acc. after, behind (§ 340)

postēa, adv. [post, after, + ēa, this], afterwards

(posterus), -a, -um, adj., compared posterior, postrēmus or postumus, following, next (§ 312)

postquam, conj. after, as soon as

postrēmō, adv. [abl. of postrēmus, last], at last, finally. Cf. dēmum, dēnique (§ 322)

postrīdiē, adv. [posterō, next, + diē, day], on the next day

postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, asū, demand, require. Cf. petō, quaerō, rogō

potentia, -ae, f. [potēns, able], might, power, force
praebēō
praebēō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [praē, forth, + habēō, hold], offer, give
praeda, -ae, f. booty, spoil, plunder
praedīcō, -ēre, -dixi, -dictus [praē, before, + dicō, tell], foretell, predict
praeficō, -ēre, -feci, -fectus [praē, before, + faciō, make], place in command, with acc. and dat. (§ 501.15)
praemittē, -ēre, -misi, -missus [praē, forward, + mittē, send], send forward
praemium, praemī, n. reward, prize
praeruptus, -a, -um [part. of praerumpō, break off], broken off, steep
praesēns, -entis, adj. present, immediate
praesertim, adv. especially, chiefly
praesidium, praeсидī, n. guard, garrison, protection
praestō, -ēre, -stīti, -stitus [praē, before, + stō, stand], (stand before), excel, surpass, with dat. (§ 501.15); show, exhibit
praesūm, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [praē, before, + sum, be], be over, be in command of, with dat. (§ 501.15)
praeter, prep. with acc. beyond, contrary to (§ 340)
praetereā, adv. [praetēr, besides, + ea, this], in addition, besides, moreover
praetextus, -a, -um, adj. bordered, edged
praetōrium, praetōri, n. pretorium
prandium, prandī, n. luncheon
premō, -ēre, presī, pressus, press hard, compress; crowd, drive, harass (prex, precīs), f. prayer
primō, adv. [prīmus, first], at first, in the beginning (§ 322)
primum, adv. [prīmus, first], first; quam primum, as soon as possible
prīmus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared prior, primus, first (§ 315)
prōccēps, -cipis, m. [prīmus, first, + capīō, take], (taking the first place), chief, leader (§ 464.1)
prior, prius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, superl. prīmus, former (§ 315)
priśtinus, -a, -um, adj. former, previous
prō, prep. with abl. before; for, for the sake of, in behalf of; instead of, as (§ 209). In composition, forth, forward
prō-cēdō, -ēre, -cessi, -cessūrus [prō, forward, + cēdō, go], go forward, proceed
procul, adv. far, afar off
prō-currō, -ēre, -currī (-currī), -currus [prō, forward, + currō, run], run forward
proelium, proeli, n. battle, combat
proelium committere, join battle
proelium facere, fight a battle
profectiō, -ōnis, f. departure
proficiscor, -i, -fectus sum, dep. verb, set out, march. Cf. ēgredior, exēō
prō-gredīō, -i, -gressus sum, dep. verb [prō, forth, + gradior, go]; go forth, proceed, advance. Cf. pergē, prōcēdō
prōgressus, see prōgrediar
prohibēō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [prō, forth, away from, + habēō, hold], keep away from, hinder, prevent
prō-moveō, -ēre, -movēi, -movētus [prō, forward, + moveō, move], move forward, advance
prō-nūtiō, -ēre, -āvī, -ātus [prō, forth, + nūtiō, announce], proclaim, declare
prope, adv., compared propius, proxīmē, nearly. Prep. with acc. near
prō-pellō, -ēre, -pulē, -pulsus [prō, forth, + pulē, drive], drive forth; move, impel
properō

properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [properus, quick], go quickly, hasten. Cf. contendō, mātūrō

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope, near], near, neighboring

propior, -ius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, superl. proximus, nearer (§ 315)

propius, adv. in comp. degree, compared prope, propius, proximē, nearer (§ 323)

proprior, prep. with acc. on account of, because of (§ 340)

prō-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus [prō, forth, + scribō, write], proclaim, publish. Cf. prōnūntō

prō-sequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [prō, forth, + sequor, follow], escort, attend

prō-sum, prōdēssee, prōfuī, prōfutūrus [prō, for, + sum, be], be useful, benefit, with dat. (§§ 496; 501. 15)

prō-terūm, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctus [prō, in front, + tegō, cover], cover in front, protect

prōvincia, -ae, f. territory, province

proximē, adv. in superl. degree, compared prope, propius, proximē, nearest, next; last, most recently (§ 323)

proximus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared propior, proximus, nearest, next (§ 315)

publicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus, people], of the people, public. rēs pūblica, the commonwealth

puella, -ae, f. [diminutive of puer, boy; girl, maiden

puer, -erī, m. boy; slave (§ 462. c)

puigna, -ae, f. fight, battle. Cf. proelium

puignō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [puigna, battle], fight. Cf. contendō, dimicō

qui

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj. beautiful, pretty (§§ 469. b; 304)

Pullō, -ōnis, m. Pullio, a centurion

pulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, strike, beat

puppis, -is (acc. -im, abl. -i), f. stern of a ship, deck

pūrē, adv. [pūrus, pure], comp. pūrius, purely

pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, cleanse, clean

purpureus, -a, -um, adj. purple, dark red

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, reckon, think (§ 420. c). Cf. arbitrō, existimō

Pythia, -ae, f. Pythia, the inspired priestess of Apollo at Delphi

quam dē causā, for this reason, wherefore

quam rē, therefore, for this reason

quae rēus, -ere, -sīvi, -sītus, seek, ask, inquiere. Cf. petō, postulō, rogō

quālis, -e, interrog. pronom. adj. of what sort, what kind of. tālis...

quālis, such... as

quam, adv. how; after a comparative, than; with a superlative, translated as... as possible. quam primum, as soon as possible

quantus, -a, -um, adj. [quam, how], how great, how much. tantus...

quantus, as great as

quartus, -a, -um, numeral adj. [quattuor, four], fourth

quattuor, indecl. numeral adj. four

quattuor-decim, indecl. numeral adj. fourteen

-que, conj., enclitic, and (§ 16). Cf. ac, atque, et

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron. and adj. who, which, what, that (§ 482)
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

quia, conj. because. Cf. quod
quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam),
indef. pron. and adj. a certain one,
a certain, a (§ 485).
quidem, adv. to be sure, certainly, in-
deed. nè ... quidem, not even
quiēs, -ētis, f. rest, repose
quiētus, -a, -um, adj. quiet, restful
quindecim, indecl. numeral adj. fifteen
quinquecenti, -ae, -a, numeral adj. five
hundred
quinque, indecl. numeral adj. five
quintus, -a, -um, numeral adj. fifth
quis (qui), quae, quid (quod), interrog.
pron. and adj. who? what? what? which?
(§ 483)
quis (qui), qua (quaes), quiā (quod),
indef. pron. and adj., used after sī,
nisi, uē, num, any one, anything, some
one, something, any, some (§ 484)
quīsquām, quicumque or quidcqum
(no fem. or plur.), indef. pron. any one
(at all), anything (at all) (§ 486)
quīsque, quaeque, quidque (quodque),
indef. pron. and adj. each, each one,
every (§ 484)
quō, interrog. and rel. adv. whether,
where
quō, conj. in order to, that, with comp.
degree (§ 350)
quod, conj. because, in that. Cf. quia
quoque, conj., following an emphatic
word, also, too. Cf. etiam
quot-annīs, adv. [quot, how many +
annus, year], every year, yearly
quotiēns, interrog. and rel. adv. how
often? as often as

R
rādīx, -īcis, f. root; foot
rapiē, -ere, -ūi, -tus, seize, snatch
re-linquo
rārō, adv. [rārūs, rare], rarely
rārūs, -a, -um, adj. rare
re- or red-, an inseparable prefix,
again, back, anew, in return
rebellīō, -onis, f. renewal of war, rebel-
lion
re-cōns, -entis, adj. recent
re-ciēpīō, -ere, -ćiēpī, -ciēptus [re-, back,
+ capīō, take], take back, receive. sē
reципere, withdraw, retreat
re-clinātus, -a, -um, part. of reclinō,
leaving back
re-creātus, -a, -um, part. of recreō,
refreshed
rectus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of regō, keep
straight], straight, direct
re-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, refuse
red-actus, -a, -um, part. of redigō, re-
duced, subdued
red-eō, -ire, -ī, -itis [red-, back, + eō,
ge], go back, return (§ 413). Cf. revertō
reditus, -ūs, m. [cf. redeō, return],
return, going back
re-duēcō, -ere, -ōxiē, -ductus [re-, back,
+ duōcō, lead], lead back
re-ferō, -ferre, rettuli, -lātus [re-, back,
+ ferō, bear], bear back; report. pedem
referre, withdraw, retreat
re-ficiō, -ere, -ficī, -fectus [re-, again,
+ faciō, make], make again, repair.
sē reficere, refresh one's self
rēgīna, -ae, f. [rēx, king], queen
regiō, -onis, f. region, district
rēgnum, -i, n. sovereignty; kingdom
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus [cf. rēx, king],
govern, rule (§ 490)
re-iciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectus [re-, back, +
iaciō, hurl], hurl back; throw away
re-linquo, -ere, -liqui, -lictus [re-, be-
hind, + linquo, leave], leave behind,
leave, abandon
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

reliquus
reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. relinquo, leave], left over, remaining. As a noun, plur. the rest

remōtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of remove, remove], remote, distant

re-moveō, -ère, -movi, -móitus [re-, back, + moveō, move], remove

rēmus, -i, m. oar

re-perīō, -äre, reperē, repertus, find

re-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-, back, + portō, carry], carry back, bring back, win, gain

rēs, re, f. thing, business, matter, deed, event, circumstance (§ 407). quam ob rem, for this reason. rēs adversae, adversity. rēs frumentaria, grain supplies. rēs gestae, exploits. rēs militāris, science of war. rēs pública, the commonwealth. rēs secundae, prosperity

re-scindō, -ère, -sciō, -scissus [re-, back, + scindō, cut], cut off, cut down

re-sistō, -ère, -stiti, —— [re-, back, + sistō, cause to stand], oppose, resist, with dat. (§ 501. 14)

re-spondeō, -ère, -spondi, -spōnitus [re-, in return, + spondeō, promise], answer, reply (§ 420. a)

re-vertō, -ère, -i, ——, or dep. verb re-vertor, -ē, -sus sum [re-, back, + vertō, turn], turn back, return. Usually active in the perf. system

re-vincio, -äre, -vini, -vinctus [re-, back, + vincō, bind], fasten

rēx, regis, m. [cf. regē, rule], king

Rhēnum, -i, m. the Rhine, a river of Germany

rīpa, -ae, f. bank

rogō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, ask. Cf. petō, postulō, quaerō

sapiēns

Rōma, -ae, f. Rome. See map

Romānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma, Rome], Roman, follows its noun. As a noun, m. and f. a Roman

rosa, -ae, f. rose

rostrum, -i, n. beak of a ship. In plur., the rostra, the speaker's stand in the Roman Forum

rota, -ae, f. wheel

Rubīco, -onis, m. the Rubicon, a river in northern Italy. See map

rūmor, -ōris, m. report, rumor

rūrus, adv. [for reversus, turned back], again, in turn

rūs, rūris (locative abl. rūri, no gen., dat., or abl. plur.), n. the country (§ 501. 36. 1). Cf. ager, patria, terra

S

Sabīnus, -a, -um, adj. Sabine. As a noun, m. and f. a Sabine. The Sabines were an ancient people of central Italy. See map

sacrum, -i, n. [sacer, consecrated], something consecrated, sacrifice; usually in plur., religious rites

saepe, adv., compared saepius, saepissīme, often, frequently

saevus, -a, -um, adj. cruel, savage

sagitta, -ae, f. arrow

saliō, -äre, -ui, saltus, jump

salūs, -ūtis, f. safety; health. salūtem dicere, send greetings

salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [salūs, health], greet, salute

salvē, inv. of salveō, hail, greetings

sanguis, -inis, m. blood (§ 247. 2. a)

sānitas, -ātis, f. [sānus, sound], health, sanity

sapiēns, -entis, adj. [part. of sapiō, be wise], wise, sensible
satis
satis, adv. and indecl. noun, enough, sufficient, sufficiently
saxum, -i, n. rock, stone
scelus, -eris, n. crime, sin
sciprūtrum, -i, n. scepter
schola, -ae, f. school, the higher grades. Cf. lūdus
scientia, -ae, f. [sciēns, knowing], skill, knowledge, science
scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus, cut, tear
scīō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, know (§ 420. b).
Cf. cognōscō
scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus, write
scūtum, -i, n. shield, buckler
sē, see sui
sēcum = sē + cum
secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful. rēs secundae, prosperity
sed, conj. but, on the contrary. nōn sōlum... sed etiam, not only...
but also
sēdecim, indecl. numeral adj. sixteen
sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sessus, sit
semper, adv. always, forever
senātus, -ūs, m. [cf. senex, old], council of elders, senate
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, know, perceive (§ 420. d). Cf. intellegō, videō
septem, indecl. numeral adj. seven
septimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. seventh
sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, dep. verb, follow (§ 493)
serpēns, -entis, f. [serpē, curl], serpent, snake
serpōt, -ārum, f. plur. wreaths, garlands
servitūs, -ūtis, f. [servus, slave], slavery, servitude
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save, rescue, keep
solvō
servus, -ī, m. slave
sēsē, emphatic for sē
sex, indecl. numeral adj. six
Sextus, -ī, m. Sextus, a Roman first name
sī, conj. if
sic, adv. thus, in this way. Cf. ita, tam
Sicilia, -ae, f. Sicily. See map
sic-ut, just as, as if
signifer, -erī, m. [signum, standard, + ferō, bear], standard bearer (p. 224)
signum, -i, n. ensign, standard; signal
silva, -ae, f. wood, forest
similis, -ē, adj., compared similor, simillimus, like, similar (§ 307)
simul, adv. at the same time
simul ac or simul atque, conj. as soon as
sine, prep. with abl. without (§ 209)
singuli, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. one at a time, single (§ 334)
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj. left
Sinuessa, -ae, f. Sinues'sa, a town in Campania. See map
sitīs, -is (acc. -im, abl. -i, no plur.), f. thirst
situs, -a, -um, adj. [part. of sinō, set], situated, placed, lying
socius, soci, m. comrade, ally
sōl, sōlis (no gen. plur.), m. sun
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, semi-dep. verb, be wont, be accustomed
sollicitus, -a, -um, adj. disturbed, anxious
sōlum, adv. [sōlus, alone], alone, only.
nōn sōlum... sed etiam, not only...
but also
sōlus, -a, -um (gen. -īus, dat. -ī), adj. alone, only (§ 108)
solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtus, loosen, unbind. nāvem solvere, set sail
somnus, -i, m. sleep
soror, -ōris, f. sister
spatium, spati, n. space, distance; time; opportunity
spectāculum, -ī, n. [spectō, look at], show, spectacle
spectō, -āre, -āvé, -ātus, look at, witness
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs, hope], hope, expect (§ 420. c)
spēs, spei, f. hope (§ 273. 2)
splendidē, adv. [splendidus], compared splendidius, splendidissimē, splendidly, handsomely
splendidus, -a, -um, adj. brilliant, gorgeous, splendid
Stabianus, -a, -um, Stabian
stabulum, -ī, n. [cf. stū, stand], standing place, stable, stall
statim, adv. [cf. stō, stand'], on the spot, at once, instantly
statua, -ae, f. [sistō, place, set], statue
statūō, -ere, -u, -ūtus [status, station], decide, determine
stilus, -i, m. iron pencil, style (p. 210)
stō, -āre, stētū, status, stand
strātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of sternō, spread], paved (of streets)
streptus, -ūs, m. [streptō, make a noise], noise, din
stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus, bind tight; draw, unsheathe
studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, give attention to, be eager, with dat. (§ 501. 14)
studiō, studi, n. [cf. studeō, be eager for], eagerness, desire, zeal, devotion
stultus, -a, -um, adj. foolish, stupid
Stymphalēsis, -idis, adj. f. Stymphalian, of Stymphalus, a lake in southern Greece

super-sum

Stymphalēus, -i, m. Stymphalus, a district of southern Greece with a town, mountain, and lake, all of the same name
suādeo, -ēre, -sī, -sus, advise, recommend, with subjv. of purpose (§ 501. 41)
sub, prep. with acc. and abl. under, below, up to; at or to the foot of
sub-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus [sub, under, + agō, drive], subdue, reduce
subītō, adv. [subitus, sudden], suddenly
sub-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [sub, below, + sequor, follow], follow close after, follow up
suc-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus [sub, below, + cēdō, go], follow, succeed
sui, reflexive pron. of himself (herself, itself, themselves) (§ 480). sécum = sē + cum. sēsē, emphatic form of sé
sum, esse, fui, futūrus, irreg. verb, be; exist (§ 494)
summus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared superus, superior, suprēmus or summus (§ 312), supreme, highest; best, greatest. in summō colle, on the top of the hill
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmpitus, take up; assume, put on. sūmere supplicium dē, inflict punishment on
super, prep. with acc. and abl. over, above
superbia, -ae, f. [superbus, prōud'], pride, arrogance
superbus, -a, -um, adj. prōud, haughty
superior, comp. of superus
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [superus, above], go over; subdue, overcome; surpass, excel
super-sum, -esse, -fui, —, be over, survive, with dat. (§ 501. 15)
superus

superus, -a, -um, adj., compared superior, suprēmus or summus, above, upper (§ 312)
supplícium, suppliˈci, n. [supplex, kneeling in entreaty], punishment, torture. supplicium sūmere dê, in-flict punishment on. supplicium dare, suffer punishment
surgō, -ere, surrēxi, —— [sub, from below, + regō, straighten], rise
sus-ciπī, -ere, -cēπi, -ceptus [sub, under, + capiō, take], undertake, assume, begin
suspicor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb, suspect, surmise, suppose
sus-tineō, -ère, -tīnui, -tēntus [sub, under, + teneō, hold], hold up, bear, sustain, withstand
susus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. and pron., his, her, hers, its, their, theirs (§ 98)

T

T., abbreviation of Titus
taberna, -ae, f. shop, stall	tabula, -ae, f. tablet for writing
tālis, -e, adj. such. tālis ... quālis, such ... as
tam, adv. so, such. Cf. ita, sic	tamen, adv. yet, however, nevertheless
tandem, adv. at length, finally
tangō, -ere, tētigī, tāctus, touch
tantum, adv. [tantus], only
tantus, -a, -um, adj. so great, such.
tantus ... quantus, as large as
tardus, -a, -um, adj. slow, late; lazy
Tarpēia, -ae, f. Tarpeia (pronounced Tar-pēˈya), the maiden who opened the citadel to the Sabines
Tarquinius, Tarquīˈni, Tarquin, a Roman king. With the surname Superbus, Tarquin the Proud
timeō

timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, fear, be afraid of.

Cf. vereor
timor

timor, -ōris, m. [cf. timeō, fear], fear, dread, alarm. Cf. metus

Tiryns, Tirynthis, f. Tīryns, an ancient town in southern Greece, where Hercules served Eurystheus
toga, -ae, f. [cf. tegō, cover], toga
torrentum, -i, n. engine of war
totiēns, adv. so often, so many times
tōtus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), adj. all, the whole, entire (§ 108)
trā-dō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus [trāns, across, + dō, deliver], give up, hand over, surrender, betray
trā-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus [trāns, across, + dūcō, lead], lead across
trahō, -ere, trāxi, trāctus, draw, pull, drag. multum trahere, protract, prolong much
trā-iciō, -ere, -iécī, -iectus [trāns, across, + iacīō, hurl], throw across; transfix
trā-nō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [trāns, across, + nō, swim], swim across
trāns, prep. with acc. across, over (§ 340)
trāns-eō, -ēre, -ēū, -ētus [trāns, across, + eō, go], go across, cross (§ 413)
trāns-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus [trāns, through, + figō, drive], transfix
trānsitus, —— (acc. -um, abl. -ā), m. [cf. trānseō, cross over], passage across
trēs, trīa, numeral adj. three (§ 479)
trīduum, trīāni, n. [trēs, three, + ēdas, days], three days' time, three days
trigintā, indecl. numeral adj. thirty
triplex, -icus, adj. threefold, triple
trīstis, -e, adj. sad; severe, terrible
trīstitia, -ae, f. [trīstis, sad], sadness, sorrow
triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [triumphus, triumph], celebrate a triumph

ūsus

triumphus, -ī, m. triumphal procession, triumph. triumphum agere, celebrate a triumph
trūcidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, cut to pieces, slaughter. Cf. interficiō, necō, occīdō
ūt, tuī (plur. vōs), pers. pron. thou, you (§ 480)
tuba, -ae, f. trumpet
Tullia, -ae, f. Tullia, a Roman name
tum, adv. then, at that time
turris, -is, f. tower (§ 465. 2)
tūtus, -a, -um, adj. safe
tuus, -a, -um, possessive adj. and pron. your, yours (§ 98)

U

ubi, rel. and interrog. adv. where, when
ullus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), adj. any (§ 108)
ulterior, -ius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, superl. ultimus, farther, more remote (§ 315)
ultimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree (see ulterior), farthest (§ 315)
umbra, -ae, f. shade
umerus, -i, m. shoulder
umquam, adv. ever, at any time
ūnā, adv. [ūnus, one], in the same place, at the same time
undecimus,-a,-um, numeral adj. [ūnus, one, + decimus, tenth], eleventh
undique, adv. from every quarter, on all sides, everywhere
ūnus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), numeral adj. one; alone (§ 108)
urbs, -is, f. city (§ 465. 6)
urgeō, -ēre, ursī, ——, press upon, crowd, hem in
ūrus, -i, m. wild ox; urus
ūisque, adv. all the way, even
ūsus, -ūs, m. use, advantage
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ut</td>
<td>with the subj. that, in order that, that not (with verbs of fearing), so that, to (§ 350. 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uter</td>
<td>-tra, -trum (gen. -ius, dat. -i), interrog. pron. which of two? which? (§ 108)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uterque</td>
<td>utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. each of two, each, both. ab utraque parte, on both sides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>útilis</td>
<td>-e, adj. [útor, use], useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utrimque</td>
<td>adv. [uterque, each of two], on each side, on either hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>úva</td>
<td>-ae, f. grape, bunch of grapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uxor</td>
<td>-ōris, f. wife</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

V

vāgīna, -ae, sheath, scabbard
vagor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb, wander
valeō, -ere, -ui, -itūrus, be powerful, be well; in the imperative as a greeting, farewell. plurimum valère, have the most power
valētūdō, -inis, f. [valeō, be well], health
validus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. valeō, be strong], strong, able, well
vallēs, -is, f. valley
vāllum, -i, n. rampart, earthworks
varius, -a, -um, adj. bright-colored
vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vāstus, empty], (make empty), devastate, lay waste
vectīgal, -ālis, n. tax, tribute
vehementer, adv. [vehemēns, eager], compared vehementius, vehementissimē, eagerly, vehemently
vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus, convey, carry. In the passive often in the sense of ride, sail
vel, conj. or. vel...vel, either...or. Cf. aut

via

vēlōcitās, -ātis, f. [vēlōx, swīf[t], swiftness
vēlōx, -ōcis, adj. swīf[t, fleet
vēlum, -i, n. sail
vēndō, -ere, vēndīdī, vēndītus, sell
venīō, -īre, vēni, ventus, come, go
ventus, -i, m. wind
verbum, -i, n. word. verba facere pró, speak in behalf of
vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, dep. verb, fear; reverence, respect (§ 493). Cf. timeō
Vergilius, Vergi/li, m. Vergil, the poet
vergō, -ere, -i, -i, -i, -um, turn, lie
vērō, adv. [vērus, true], in truth, surely; conj. but, however. tum vērō, then you may be sure, introducing the climax of a story
vertō, -ere, -i, -sus, turn, change. tergum vertere, retreat, flee
vērus, -a, -um, true, actual
vesper, -ērī, m. evening
vester, -tra, -trum, possessive adj. and pron. your, yours (§ 98)
vestīgium, vestī/gi, n. [cf. vestīgō, track], footstep, track, trace
vestīmentum, -i, n. [vestis, clothing], garment
vestīō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [vestis, clothing], clothe, dress
vestis, -is, f. clothing, attire, garment, robe
vestitus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of vestīō, clothe], clothed
Vesuvius, Vesu/vi, m. Vesuvius, the volcano near Pompeii. See map
veterānus, -a, -um, adj. old, veteran
vetō, -āre, -ui, -ītus, forbid, prohibit
vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trouble, annoy
via, -ae, f. way, road, street; way, manner. Cf. iter
viātor
viātor, −ōris, m. [via], traveler
victor, −ōris, m. [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor. In apposition, with adj. force, victorious
victōria, −ae, f. [victor, victor], victory
vicus, −i, m. village
videō, −ēre, vidī, visus, see, perceive.
Pass. be seen; seem (§ 420, d)
vigilia, −ae, f. [vigil, awake], watch. dé tertiā vigilā, about the third watch
vigiūti, indecl. numeral adj. twenty
vīlicus, −i, m. [vīlla, farm], steward, overseer of a farm
vīlla, −ae, f. farm, villa
vīncō, −īre, vīnxi, vīntus, bind, tie, fetter
vīncō, −īre, vīcī, victus, conquer, defeat, overcome. Cf. subīgō, superō
vīnea, −ae, f. shed (p. 219)
vīnum, −i, n. wine
violenter, adv. [vīulentus, violent], compared violentus, vīulentissīmē. violently, furiously
vir, virī, m. man, husband; hero (§ 462, e)
vīrīlis, −e, adj. [vir, man], manly
virtūs, −ūtis, f. [vir, man], manliness; courage, valor; virtue (§ 464, 1)
vis, (vīs), f. strength, power, might, violence (§ 468)
vīta, −ae, f [cf. vivō, live], life. vita agere, spend or pass life
vitō, −āre, −āvī, −ātus, shun, avoid
vivō, −ere, vivī, −āre, live. Cf. habitō, incolō
vīvus, −a, −um, adj. [cf. vivō, live], alive, living
vīx, adv. scarcely, hardly
vocō, −āre, −āvī, −ātus, call, summon, invite. Cf. appellō, nōminō
volō, −āre, −āvī, −ātūrus, fly
volō, velle, volui, −i, −er, −erum, be willing, wish (§ 497). Cf. cupīō
volūmen, −inis, n. roll, book
Vorēnus, −ī, m. Vorēnus, a centurion
vōs, pers. pron. you (see tū) (§ 480)
vōtum, −i, n. [neut. part. of vōveō, vow], vow, pledge, prayer
vōx, vōcis, f. [cf. vocō, call], voice, cry; word
vulnērō, −āre, −āvī, −ātus [vulnus, wound], wound, hurt
vulnus, −eris, n. wound, injury
vulpēs, −is, f. fox
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

This vocabulary contains only the words used in the English-Latin exercises. For details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, after verbs indicate the conjugation.

A

a, an, commonly not translated
able (be), possum, posse, potui, ——

§ 495
abode, domicilium, domicilii, n.
about (adv.), circiter
about (prep.), de, with abl.
about to, expressed by fut. act. part.
abundance, cōpia, -ae, f.
cross, trāns, with acc.
active, ācer, acris, ācre
advance, prōgredior, 3
advantage, ūsus, -ūs, m.
advice, moneō, 2
after (conj.), postquam; often expressed by the perf. part.

§ 108
after (prep.), post, with acc.
against, in, contrā, with acc.
aid, auxilium, auxilii, n.
all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um
allow, patior, 3
ally, socius, socii, m.
amost, paene; ferē
alone, īnus, -a, -um; sólus, -a, -um
already, iam
also, quoque
always, semper
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, m.
among, apud, with acc.
ancient, antiquus, -a, -um
and, et; atque (ac); -que
and so, itaque
Andromeda, Andromeda, -ae, f.
angry, irātus, -a, -um
animal, animal, -ālis, n.
announce, nūntiō, 1
annoying, molestus, -a, -um
another, alius, -a, -ud
any, āūlus, -a, -um
any one, anything, quisquam, quicquam or quidquam
appearance, fūrōr, -ae, f.
appoint, creō, 1
approach, adpropinquō, 1, with dat.
are, used as auxiliary, not translated; as a copula, sum
arise, orior, 4
arm, bracchium, bracciī, n.
armed, armātus, -a, -um
arms, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.
avarmy, exercitus, -ūs, m.
availability, circum, with acc.
avarice, avāritia, -ae, f.
avaricious, avāritus, -a, -umper
arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.
average, medius, -a, -um
avenue, via, -ae, f.
art of war, res militaris
as possible, expressed by quam and superl.
ask, petō, 3; quaerō, 3; rogō, 1
assail, oppugnō, 1
at, in, with acc. or abl.; with names of towns, locative case or abl. without a preposition
a

§ 268; time when, abl.
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

at once
at once, statim
at the beginning of summer, initā
aestāte
Athens, Athēnēae, -ārum, f.
attack, impetus, -ūs, m.
attempt, cōnōr, 1; temptō, 1
away from, ā or ab, with abl.

B
bad, malus, -a, -um
baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, n. plur.
bank, rīpa, -ae, f.
barbarians, barbarī, -ōrum, m. plur.
battle, proelium, proeli, n.; pugna, -ae, f.
be, sum (§ 494)
be absent, be far, absūm (§ 494)
be afraid, timēō, 2; vercor, 2
be away, absūm (§ 494)
be in command of, praesum, with dat.
(§§ 494, 426)
be informed, certior fīō
be off, be distant, absūm (§ 494)
be without, egeō, with abl. (§ 180)
beast (wild), fēra, -ae, f.
beautiful, pulcher, -cha, -chrum
because, quia; quod
because of, propter, with acc.; or abl.
of cause
before, heretofore (adv.), anteā
before (prep.), ante, with acc.; prō, with abl.
begin, incipiō, 3
believe, crōdō, 3, with dat. (§ 153)
belong to, predicate genitive (§ 499)
best, optimus, superl. of bonus
betray, trādō, 3
better, melior, comp. of bonus
between, inter, with acc.
billow, fluctus, -ūs, m.
bird, avis, -is, f. (§ 243, 1)
blood, sanguis, -inis, m.
carry
body, corpus, -oris, n.
bold, audāx, -ācis; fortis, -e
boldly, audācter; fortiter
boldness, audācia, -ae, f.
booty, praeda, -ae, f.
both, each (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque
both ... and, et ... et
boy, puer, -erī, m.
brave, fortis, -e
bravely, fortiter
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bright, clārus, -a, -um
bring back, reportō, 1
bring upon, inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lavus,
with acc. and dat. (§ 426)
brother, frāter, -tris, m.
building, aedificium, aedīficī, n.
burn, cremō, 1; incendō, 3
business, negotium, negotī, n.
but, however, autem, sed
by, ā, ab, with abl.; denoting means,
abl. alone; sometimes implied in a
participle
by night, noctū

C
Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, m.
calamity, calamitās, -ātis, f.
call, vocō, 1; appellō, 1; nōminō, 1
call together, convocō, 1
camp, castra, -ōrum, n. plur.
can, could, possum, posse, potū,
—— (§ 495)
capture, capiō, 3; occupō, 1
care, cura, -ae, f.
care for, cūrō, 1
careful, attentus, -a, -um
carefulness, diligentia, -ae, f.
carry, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus (§ 498);
portō, 1
ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

carry on, gerō, 3

cart, carrus, -ī, m.

cause, causa, -ae, f.

cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, m.

cease, cesso, 1

Cepheus, Cēpheus, -ī, m.
certain (a), quidam, quaeadam, quoddam (quiddem) (§ 485)

chicken, gallina, -ae, f.

chief, prīnceps, -cipis, m.

children, liberī, -ōrum, m. plur.

choose, dēligō, 3

choose, elect, creō, 1

citizen, civis, -is, m. and f. (§ 243. 1)

city, urbs, urbis, f.

clear, clārus, -a, -um

cohort, cohors, -rtis, f.

come, veniō, 4

command, imperō, 1, with dat.

(city) iubeō, 2; praesum, with dat. (§ 426)

commit, committō, 3

commonwealth, rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae

concerning, dē, with abl.

conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3

construct (a ētch), perduēcō, 3

consul, cōnsul, -ulis, m.

contrary to, conuā, with acc.

Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, f.

Cornelia, Cornēlla, -ī, f.

Cornelius, Cornēlius, Cornēliī, m.

corset, lōrica, -ac, f.

cottage, casa, -ae, f.

country, as distinguished from the city, rūs, rūris, n.; as territory, finēs, -ium, m., plur. of finis

courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.

crime, scelus, -eris, n.

cross, trānseō, 4 (§ 499)

crown, corōna, -ae, f.

daily, cotidiē

danger, periculum, -ī, n.
daughter, filia, -ae, f. (§ 67)
day, diēs, -ēi, m.
daybreak, prīma lūx

dear, cārus, -a, -um

death, mors, mortis, f.

deed, rēs, rei, f.
deep, altus, -a, -um

defeat, calamiās, -ātis, f.
defend, dēfendō, 3

delay (noun), mora, -ae, f.
delay (verb), moror, 1

demand, postulō, 1

dense, dēnīsus, -a, -um

depart, discēdō, 3; exeō, 4; proficiscor, 3

dependent, cliēns, -entis, m.
design, cōnsilium, consūli, n.
desire, cupio, 3

destroy, dēleō, 2

Diana, Diāna, -ae, f.
differ, differō, differre, distulī, dīs ātus (§ 498)
different, dissimilis, -e
difficult, difficilis, -e
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, f.
diligence, diligentiā, -ae, f.
dinner, cēna, -ae, f.
disaster, calamītās, -ātis, f.
distant (be), absum, -esse, āfūt, āfūtūrus (§ 494)
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.
dō, agō, 3; facio, 3; when used as auxiliary, not translated
don from, dē, with abl.
drag, trahō, 3
drive, agō, 3
dwell, habitō, 1; incolō, 3; vivō, 3
dwelling, aedificium, aedificiī, n.
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

E

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) ($484$)
each of two, uterque, utraque, utramque
each other, inter with acc. of a reflexive
eager, ácer, ácris, ácre; alacer, alacris, alacre

eager (be), studeó, 2
eagerness, studium, studi, n.
eagle, aquila, -ae, f.
easily, facile
easy, facilis, -e
either...or, aut...aut
empire, imperium, imperi, n.
employ, negótium dò
encourage, hortor, 1
enemy, hostis, -is, m. and f.; inimicus, -i, m.

enough, satis
entire, tótus, -a, -um ($108$)
expectation, opínió, -onis, f.
eye, oculus, -i, m.

F

faithless, perfidus, -a, -um
famous, clárus, -a, -um
far, longē
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
farther, ulterior, ius
father, pater, patris, m.
fatherland, patria, -ae, f.
favor, faveó, 2
favorable, idóncus, -a, -um; secundus, -a, -um

fear, metus, -ús, m.; timor, -óris, m.
fear, be afraid, timeó, 2
few, pauci, -ae, -a
field, ager, agrí, m.
fifteen, quindecem

fight, contendó, 3; pugnō, 1

full, plénus, -a, -um

find, reperió, 4
finish, cónficio, 3
fire, ignis, -is, m. ($243, 1$
firmness, constantia, -ae, f.
first, primum, -a, -um
flee, fugiō, 3
flight, fuga, -ae, f.
fly, volō, 1
foe, see enemy
follow close after, subsequor, 3
food, cibus, -i, m.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, m.
for (conj.), eum, nam
for (prep.), sign of dat.; dē, prō, with abl.; to express purpose, ad, with gerundive; implied in acc. of time and of extent of space
for a long time, diū
forbid, vetō, 1
forces, cópiae, -ārum, f., plur. of cópia
forest, silva, -ae, f.
fort, castellum, -i, n.; castrum, -i, n.
fortification, mūnītiō, -onis, f.
fortify, mūniō, 4
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
fourth, quartus, -a, -um
free, liber, -era, -erum
free, liberate, liberē, 1
frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum
friend, amicus, -i, m.
friendly (adj.), amicus, -a, -um
friendly (adv.), amiciē
friendship, amicitia, -ae, f.
frighten, perterréō, 2
from, a or ab, dē, ē, ex, with abl. Often expressed by the separative ablative without a prep.
from each other, inter, with acc. of a reflexive pron.
Galba

G

Galba, Galba, -ae, m.
garland, corōna, -ae, f.
garrison, praesidium, praesi’dī, n.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
Gaul (a), Gallus, -i, m.
gereral, imperātor, -ōris, m.
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, f.
gentle, lēnis, -e
German, Germānus, -a, -um
Germans (the), Germānī, -ōrum, m.
plur.
Germany, Germānia, -ae, f.
get (dinner), parō, 1
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, dō, dare, dēdi, datus
give over, surrender, dēdō, 3; trādō, 3
give up, omitto, 3
go, eō, 4 (§ 499)
go forth, prōgredior, 3
god, deus, -i, m. (§ 468)
goddess, dea, -ae, f. (§ 67)
gold, aurum, -i, n.
good, bonus, -a, -um
grain, frumentum, -i, n.
grain supply, rēs frumentāriā
great, ingēns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um
greatest, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um
guard, praesidium, praesi’dī, n.

H

hand, manus, -ūs, f.

happy, laetus, -a, -um
harbor, portus, -ūs, m.
hasten, contendō, 3; mātūrō, 1; pro-
perō, 1
hateful, invidus, -a, -um
haughty, superbus, -a, -um
have, habeo, 2
in

have no power, nihil possum
he, is; hic; iste; ille; or not expressed
head, caput, -itis, n.
hear, audiō, 4
heart, animus, -i, m.
heavy, gravis, -e
Helvetti (the), Helvētiī, -ōrum, m. plur.
hen in, contineō, 2
hen, gallīna, -ae, f.
her, eius; huius; istius; illius; reflex-
ive, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
hide, abdō, 3
high, altus, -a, -um
highest, summus, -a, -um
hill, collis, -is, m.
himself, suī. See self
hindrance, impedimentum, -i, n.
his, eius; huius; istius; illius; reflexive,
suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
hither, cīnerior, -ius (§ 315)
hold, teneō, 2
home, domus, -ūs, f. (§ 468). at home,
domī (§ 267)
hope (noun), spēns, speī, f.
hope (verb), spērō, 1
horse, equus, -i, m.
horseman, eques, -itis, m.
hostage, obsecus, -idis, m. and f.
hostile, inimicus, -a, -um
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, domicilium, domici’liī, n.;
domus, -ūs, f. (§ 468)
hurl, iaciō, 3

I

I, ego (§ 280); or not expressed
if, si. if not, nisi
ill, aeger, -gra, -grum
immediately, statim
in (of place), in, with abl.; (of time or
of specification) abl. without prep.
in order that
that not, lest, nē, with subjv.
in vain, frustrā
industry, diligentia, -ae, f.
inflend injuries upon, injūriās inferō with dat. (§ 426)
inflend punishment on, supplicium sūmō de
inform some one, aliquem certiorum faciō
injure, noceō, 2, with dat. (§ 153)
injury, injūria, -ae, f.
into, in, with acc.
intrust, committō, 3; mandō, 1
invite, vocō, 1
is, used as auxiliary, not translated; as a copula, sum (§ 494)
island, insula, -ae, f.
it, is; hic; iste; ille; or not expressed
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.
its, eius; huius; istius; illius; reflexive, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
itsel, sui. See self
love
L
labor (noun), labor, -ōris, m.
labor (verb), laborō, i
lack (noun), inopia, -ae, f.
lack (verb), egeō, 2, with abl. (§ 180)
lady, domina, -ae, f.
lake, lacus, -ūs, m. (§ 260. 2)
land, terra, -ae, f.
language, lingua, -ae, f.
large, ingēns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um
larger, maior, maius
lately, nūper
Latona, Lātōna, -ae, f.
law, lex, légis, f.
lay waste, vāstō, 1
lead, dūcō, 3
leader, dux, ducis, m. and f.
learn, know, cognōscō, 3
leave, depart from, discēdō, 3
leave behind, abandon, relinquō, 3
left, sinister, -tra, -trum
legion, legiō, -onis, f.
legionaries, legiōnārii, -ōrum, m.
plur.
length, longitūdō, -inis, f.
lest, nē, with subjv.
letter (of the alphabet), littera, -ae, f.; (an epistle) litterae, -ārum, f.
plur.
lieutenant, légātus, -i, m.
light, lūx, lūcis, f.
like (adj.), similis, -e
like, love, amō, 1
line of battle, aciēs, aciēi, f.
little, parvus, -a, -um
live, habito, i; incolō, 3; vivō, 3
long, longus, -a, -um
long, for a long time, diū
long for, désiderō, i
look after, curō, 1
love, amō, 1

J
join battle, proelium committō
journey, iter, itineris, n. (§ 468)
judge (noun), iūdex, -icis, m.
judge (verb), iūdicō, i
Julia, Iūlia, -ae, f.
just now, nūper

K
keep, contineō, 2; prohibeo, 2; teneō, 2
keep on doing something, expressed by the impf. indict.
kill, interficiō, 3; necō, 1; occidō, 3
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
kingdom, rēgnum, -i, n.
know, cognōscō, 3, in perf.; scio, 4
maid, maid servant, ancilla, -ae, f.
make, fació, 3
make war upon, bellum inferō with dat. (§ 426)
man, homō, -inis, m. and f.; vir, virī, m.
man-of-war, nāvis longa
many, multī, -ae, -a, plur. of multus
march, iter, itineris, n. (§ 468)
Mark, Márcus, -i, m.
mariage, mātrimōniun, mātrimōnium, n.
master, dominus, -ī, m.; magister, -trī, m.
matter, negōtiun, negōtī, n.; rēs, rēī, f.
means, by means of, the abl.
messenger, nāntius, nāntī, m.
midnight, media nox
mile, mīla passuum (§ 331. b)
miles, mīlia passuum
mind, animus, -ī, m.; mēns, mentis, f.
mint, meus, -a, -um
mistress, domina, -ae, f.
money, pecūnia, -ae, f.
monster, mónstrum, -ī, n.
month, mēnsis, -is, m.
moon, lūna, -ae, f.
more (adj.), plús, plurīs (§ 313); or a comparative. Adverb, magis
most (adj.), plūrimus, -a, -um; superl. degree. Adverb, maximē; plūrimum
mother, māter, mātrīs, f.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
move, movēō, 2
moved, commōitus, -a, -um
much (by), multō
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, f.
my, meus, -a, -um
myself, mē, reflexive. See self

once
name, nōmen, -inis, n.
nation, gēns, gentis, f.
near, propinquus, -a, -um
nearest, proximus, -a, -um
nearly, ferē
neighbor, fīnitimus, -ī, m.
neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um
neither, neque or nec; neither . . . nor,
neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)
ever, numquam
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus, -a, -um
next day, posttridiē eius diēɪ
next to, proximus, -a, -um
night, nox, noctis, f.
nine, novem
no, minimē; or repeat verb with a negative (§ 210)
no, none, nūllus, -a, -um (§ 109)
no one, nēmō, nūllus
nor, neque or nec
not, nōn
not even, nē . . . quidem
not only . . . but also, nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam
nothing, nihil or nihilum, -ī, n.
now, nunc
number, numerus, -ī, m.

obey, pāreō, 2, with dat. (§ 153)
of, sign of gen.; ēō, with abl.; out of, 
e or ex, with abl.
ofen, saepe
on (of place), in, with abl.; (of time) 
abl. without prep.
on account of, propter, with acc.; or 
abl. of cause
on all sides, undique
once (upon a time), ōlim
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

one

one, ūnus, -a, -um (§ 108)
one . . . another, alius . . . alius

(§ 110)
only (adv.), sōlum; tantum

opportunae, opportūnus, -a, -um

opposite, adversus, -a, -um

oracle, orāculum, -i, n.
orator, orātor, -ōris, m.

order, imperō, 1; iubeō, 2

ornament, ornāmentum, -i, n.

other, alius, -a, -ud (§ 109)
others (the), reliqui, -ōrum, m. plur.

ought, debeō, 2

our, noster, -tra, -trum

ourselves, nōs, as reflexive object. See self

overcome, superō, 1; vincō, 3

own (his, her, its, their), suus, -a, -um

rest

prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī,—(§ 497)

prepare for, parō, 1, with acc.

press hard, premō, 3

protection, fidēs, fadei, f.

province, prōvincia, -ae, f.

public, pūblicus, -a, -um

Publius, Pūbius, Pūbli, m.

punishment, poena, -ae, f.; supplecium, supplecī, n.

purpose, for the purpose of, ut, qui,
or quō, with subj.; ad, with gerund or gerundive; causā, following the genitive of a gerund or gerundive

pursue, insequor, 3

queen, rēgīna, -ae, f.

quickly, celeriter

quite, expressed by the comp. degree

P

part, pars, partis, f.

peace, pāx, pācis, f.

people, populus, -i, m.

Perseus, Perseus, -i, m.

persuade, persuādeo, 2, with dat.

(§ 153)
pitch camp, castra pōnō

place (noun), locus, -i, m.

place, arrange, conlocō, 1

place, put, pōnō, 3

place in command, praeficiō, 3, with acc. and dat. (§ 426)

plan (a), cōnsilium, cōnsīli, n.

please, placēō, 2, with dat. (§ 154)

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um

plow, arō, 1

Pompeii, Pompeii, -ōrum, m. plur.

possible (as), expressed by quam and superl.

powerful (be), valeō, 2

praise, laudō, 1

R

rampart, vāllum, -i, n.

rear, novissimum agmen

reason, causa, -ae, f.

receive, accipio, 3; excipio, 3

recent, recēns, -entis

recently, nūper

redoubt, castellum, -i, n.

refuse, recūsō, 1

remain, maneō, 2

remaining, reliquus, -a, -um

reply, respondeō, 2

report (noun), fāma, -ae, f.; rumor, -ōris, m.

report (verb), adferō; deferō; referō (§ 498)

republic, rēs pūblica

require, postulō, 1

resist, resistō, 3, with dat. (§ 154)

rest (the), reliquī, -ōrum, m. plur.
restrain

restrain, contineō, 2
retainer, cliēns, -entis, m.
retreat, pedeō referō; terga vertō
return, redeō, 4; revertor, 3
revolution, rēs novae
Rhine, Rhēnus, -i, m.
right, dexter, -tra, -trum
river, flūmen, -inis, n.; fluvius, flūvī, m.
road, via, -ae, f.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
row, ōrdō, -inis, m.
rule, regō, 3
rumor, fāma, -ae, f.; rūmor, -ōris, m.
run, currō, 3

stand

she, ea; haec; ista; illa (§ 115); or not expressed
ship, nāvis, -is, f. (§ 243. 1)
short, brevis, -e
shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.
show, dēmōnstrō, r
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, f.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum
side, latus, -eris, n.
siege, obsidiō, -ōnis, f.
since, cum, with subj. (§ 396); the abl.
   abs. (§ 381)
sing, canō, 3; cantō, r
sister, soror, -ōris, f.
sit, sedēō, 2
size, magnītūdō, -inis, f.
skilled, peritus, -a, -um
slave, servus, -ī, m.
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, f.
slow, tardus, -a, -um
small, parvus, -a, -um
snatch, rapiō, 3
so, ita; sic; tam
so great, tantus, -a, -um
so that, ut; so that not, ut nōn
soldier, miles, -itis, m.
some, often not expressed; quis (qui),
   qua (quaes), quid (quod); aliquī, ali-
   qua, aliquod
some one, quis; aliquis (§ 487)
some . . . others, alii . . . alii (§ 110)
something, quid; aliquid (§ 487)
son, filius, fili, m.
soon, mox
space, spatium, spatī, n.
spear, pilum, -ī, n.
spirited, ācer, ācris, ācre; alacere,
   alacrīs, alacīē
spring, fōns, fontis, m.
spur, calcar, āris, n.
stand, stō, r
state, cívítas, -āüs, f.
station, conlocō, 1
steadiness, cónstantía, -ae, f.
stone, lapis, -idis, m.
storm, oppugnō, 1
story, fábula, -ae, f.
street, via, -ae, f.
strength, vís, (vís), f.
strong, fortís, -e; validus, -a, -um
sturdy, validus, -a, -um
such, tālis, -e
suddenly, subitō
suffer punishment, supplicium dō
sufficiently, satis
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um
summer, aestás, -ätis, f.
sun, sól, sólis, m.
supplies, commeá tus, -ús, m.
surrender, trádō, 3
suspect, suspicor, r
swift, celer, -eris, -ere; vēlōx, -ōcis
sword, gladius, gladi, m.

T

take, capture, capiō, 3
take part in, intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, with dat. (§ 426)
take possession of, occupō, r
tall, altus, -a, -um
task, opus, operis, n.
teach, doceō, 2
teacher, magister, -trī, m.
tear (noun), lacrima, -ae, f.
tell, dīcō, 3; nárrō, r
ten, decem
terrified, perterrēitus, -a, -um
terrify, perterrēō, 2
than, quam
that (conj. after verbs of saying and the like), not expressed
that (pron.), is; iste; ille

T

that, in order that, in purpose clauses, ut; after verbs of fearing, nē (§§ 349, 366, 372)
that not, lest, in purpose clauses, nē; after verbs of fearing, ut (§§ 349, 366, 372)
the, not expressed
their, gen. plur. of is; reflexive, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
their own, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)
then, at that time, tum
then, in the next place, deinde, tum
there, as expletive, not expressed
there, in that place, ibi
therefore, itaque
they, iī; hi; isī; illī; or not expressed
think, arbitrōr, rī; exīstīmō, rī; putō, rī
third, tertīus, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
though, cum, with subj. (§ 396)
thousand, mīlle (§ 479)
three, trīs, tria (§ 479)
through, per, with acc.
thy, tuus, -a, -um

time, tempus, -oris, n.
to, sign of dat.; ad, in, with acc.; expressing purpose, ut, quī, with subj.; ad, with gerund or gerundive

to each other, inter, with acc. of a reflexive pron.
to-day, hodie
tooth, dēns, dentis, m.
top of, summus, -a, -um
tower, turris, -īs, f. (§ 243. 2)
town, oppidum, -i, n.
townsman, oppidānus, -i, m.
trace, vestigium, vestīgium, n.
trader, mercātor, -ōris, m.
train, exerceō, 2
tree, arbor, -oris, f.
tribe

tribe, gēns, gentis, f.
troops, cópiæ, -ārum, f. plur.
true, vērus, -e, -um
trumpet, tuba, -ae, f.
try, cōnor, i; temptō, i
twelve, duodecim
two, duo, duæ, duo (§ 479)

under, sub, with acc. or abl.
undertake, suscipiō, 3
unharmed, incolmūs, -e
unless, nisi
unlike, dissimilis, -e
unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — (§ 497)
up to, sub, with acc.
us, nōs, acc. plur. of ego

very, superl. degree; maximē; ipse, -a, -um (§ 285)
victor, victor, -ōris, m.
victory, victōria, -ae, f.
village, vicus, -i, m.
viole, viés, (viís), f.
violently, vehementer
voice, vōx, vōcis, f.

wage, gerō, 3
wagon, carrus, -i, m.
wall, mūrus, -i, m.
want, inopia, -ae, f.
war, bellum, -i, n.
watch, vigilia, -ae, f.
water, aqua, -ae, f.
wave, fluctus, -ūs, m.
way, iter, itineris, n. (§ 468); via, -ae, f.
way, manner, modus, -i, m.
we, nōs, plur. of ego; or not expressed

woman

weak, iñfirmus, -a, -um
weapons, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.; tēla, -ōrum, n. plur.
wear, gerō, 3
weary, défessus, -a, -um
what, quis (qui), quae, quid (quod) (§ 483)
when, ubi; cum (§ 396); often expressed by a participle
where, ubi
which, qui, quae, quod (§ 482); which of two, uter, utra, utrum (§ 108)
while, expressed by a participle
whither, quō
who (rel.), qui, quae (§ 482); (interrog.) quis (§ 483)
whole, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 108)
whose, cuius; quōrum, quārum, quōrum, gen. of qui, quae, quod, rel.; or of quis, quid, interrog.
why, cūr
wicked, malus, -a, -um
wide, lātus, -a, -um
width, lātitūdō, -inis, f.
wild beast, fera, -ae, f.
willing (be), volō, velle, volui, — (§ 497)
win (a victory), reportō, i
wind, ventus, -i, m.
wine, vinum, -i, n.
wing, cornū, -ūs, n.
winter, hiems, -emis, f.
wisdom, consilium, consiliī, n.
wish, cupiō, 3; volō, velle, volui, — (§ 497); wish not, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — (§ 497)
with, cum, with abl.; sometimes abl.
withdraw, sé recipere
without, sine, with abl.
woman, femina, -ae, f.; mulier, -eris, f.
### ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wonderful</td>
<td>mīrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word</td>
<td>verbum, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>labor, -ōris, m.; opus, -eris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worse</td>
<td>peior, peius, comp. of malus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worst</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um, superl. of malus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound</td>
<td>vulnus, -eris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound</td>
<td>vulnerō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wreath</td>
<td>corōna, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wretched</td>
<td>miser, -era, -erum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrong</td>
<td>iniūria, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zeal</td>
<td>studium, studi, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>year</td>
<td>annus, -ī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes</td>
<td>certē; ita; vērō; or, more usually, repeat the verb (§ 210)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yonder</td>
<td>ille, -a, -ud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>sing. tū; plur. vōs (§ 480); or not expressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>sing. tuus, -a, -um; plur. vester, -tra, -trum (§ 98. b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Y
INDEX

The numbers in all cases refer to sections.

ä-declension of nouns, 57, 461
ä-verbs, conjugation of, 488
ablative case, 48, 50
   absolute, 381
   after a comparative, 309
   of accompaniment, 104
   of agent, 181
   of cause, 102
   of description, 444, 445
   of manner, 105
   of means or instrument, 103
   of measure of difference, 317
   of place from which, 179
   of place where, 265
   of separation, 180
   of specification, 398
   of time, 275
accent, 14-16
accompaniment, abl. of, 104
accusative case, 33
   as subject of the infinitive, 214
   object, 37
   of duration and extent, 336
   of place to which, 263; 266
   predicate, 392
   with prepositions, 340
adjectives, 54, 55
   agreement, 65
   comparison, regular, 301; by adverbs, 302; irregular, 307, 311, 312, 315
decision of comparatives, 303
   of first and second declensions, 83, 93, 469
   of third declension, 250-257, 471
   with the dative, 143
adverbs, 319
   comparison, 320, 323
   formation, regular, 320, 321; irregular, 322, 323
   agent, expressed by the abl. with ἀ or ἀb, 181
agreement
   of adjectives, 65, 215. a
   of appositive, 81
   of predicate nouns, 76
   of relative pronouns, 224
   of verbs, 28
aliquis, 487
alias, 108, 110, 470
alphabet, 1-3
alter, 108, 110
antepenult, 9. 3; accent of, 15
apposition, 80, 81
article, not used in Latin, 22. a
base, 58
cardinal numerals, 327-329, 478
case, 32. 2
causal clauses with cum, 395, 396
cause, expressed by the abl., 102
characteristic, subj. of, 389, 390
comparative, declension of, 303
comparison
   abl. of, 309
   degrees of, 300
   of adjectives, 300-315; irregular, 311-315; 473, 475
   of adverbs, regular, 320, 476; irregular, 323, 477
   positive wanting, 315
   six adjectives in -lis, 307
complementary infinitive, 215
compound verbs, with the dative, 425, 426
INDEX

concessive clauses with cum, 395, 396
conjugation stems, 184
conjugations, the four regular, 126.
488-491; irregular, 494-500
consonants, 2
copula, 21
cum, conjunction, 395
cum, preposition, 209
dative case, 43
of indirect object, 44, 45
of purpose, or end for which, 437
with adjectives, 143
with compound verbs, 426
with special verbs, 153
dea, declension of, 67
decension, 23, 32
degree of difference, expressed by the
abl., 317
demonstrative adjectives and pronouns,
112-115, 290-292, 481
depONENT verbs, 338, 339, 493
descriptive ablative and genitive, 441-
445
descriptive relative clause, with the
subjv., 389, 390
deus, declension of, 468
difference, measure of, 316, 317
diphthongs, 6
direct statements, 414
distributive numerals, 327-3, 334
domī, locative, 267
domus, declension of, 468
duo, declension of, 479
duration of time, expressed by the
acc., 336

e-declension of nouns, 273, 273, 467
e-verbs, conjugation of, 489
e-verbs, conjugation of, 490
ego, declension of, 280, 480
eclitics, 16
eō, conjugation of, 499
extent of space, expressed by the acc.,
336
fearing, subjv. after verbs of, 370-
372
ferō, conjugation of, 498
fifth or ē-declension, 272, 273, 467
fīlia, declension of, 67
fīlius, declension of, 87-89
finite verb, defined, 173
fiō, conjugation of, 500
first conjugation, 488
first or ā-declension, 57, 461
fourth conjugation, 491
fourth or u-declension, 259, 260, 466
from, how expressed, 178-181
future participle, formation of, 374-3
future perfect, formation of, active,
187.3; passive, 202
future tense, formation of, 137, 156
gender
in English and in Latin, 60
in the first declension, 61
in the second declension, 72
in the third declension, 247
in the fourth declension, 260
in the fifth declension, 272
general observations on declension, 74
genitive case
English equivalents of, 33
of description, 443, 445
of nouns in -ius and -ium, 87
partitive, 331
possessive, 38, 499
gerund, a verbal noun, 402, 403
gerundive, a verbal adjective, 404;
with ad to express purpose, 407
hic, declension and use of, 290, 291
how to read Latin, 17
i, consonant, 3
i-stems of nouns, 231, 241-244
i-verbs, conjugation of, 491
idem, declension of, 287, 481
iēns, declension of, 472
ille, declension and use of, 290-293
481

345
imperative, formation of 161, 175; irregular, 161. 2; in commands, 161
imperfect indicative, formation and use of, 133, 134, 165. 1
imperfect subjunctive, 354
indefinite pronouns and adjectives, 296, 297, 484-487
independent clauses, 219
indirect object, 44, 45
indirect questions, 430-432
indirect statements, 414-419
infinitive
as object, 213
as subject, 216
complementary, 215
definition of, 173
does not express purpose, 352
formation of, 126, 174, 265, 266
in indirect statements, 415-419
used as in English, 213-216
inflection, defined, 23
instrument, abl. of, 100. b, 103
intensive pronoun, ipse, declension and use of, 285, 286, 481
interrogative pronouns and adjectives, 225-227, 483
intransitive verbs, defined, 20. a; with the dative, 153
īs-verbs of the third conj., 492
ipse, declension and use of, 285, 481
irregular adjectives, 108
irregular comparison, of adjectives, 307, 311, 312; of adverbs, 323
irregular nouns, 67, 246, 468
irregular verbs, 494-500
īste, declension and use of, 113-116
iste, declension and use of, 290, 292, 481
iter, declension of, 468
Latin word order, 68
locative case, 267
magis and maximē, comparison by, 302
māno, conjugation of, 497
manner, abl. of, 105
means, abl. of, 103
measure of difference, abl. of, 316, 317
mille, declension of, 479; construction with, 331. a, b
moods, defined, 121
-ne, enclitic, in questions, 210
nē, conj., that not, lest, with negative clauses of purpose, 350. 11; with verbs of fearing, 370
nine irregular adjectives, 108-110
nōlō, conjugation of, 497
nominative case, 35, 36
nonne, in questions, 210
ös, declension of, 280, 480
nouns, 19. 2
first declension, 57, 461
second declension, 71-74, 87-92, 462
third declension, 230-247, 463-465
fourth declension, 259, 260, 466
fifth declension, 272, 273, 467
num, in questions, 210
number, 24
numerals, 327-334, 478, 479
o-decension of nouns, 71-74, 87-92, 462
object, 20; direct, 37; indirect, 44, 45
order of words, 68
ordinal numerals, 327. 2, 478
participial stem, 201. 2
participles, defined, 203
agreement of, 204
formation, of present, 374. b; of perfect, 201; of future, 374. c, d
of deponent verbs, 375
tenses of, 376
translated by a clause, 377
partitive genitive, 330, 331
passive voice, defined, 163; formation of, 164, 202
penult, 9. 3; accent of, 15
perfect indicative
formation, in the active, 185, 186; in the passive, 202
meaning of, 190
definite, 190
distinguished from the imperfect, 190
perfect infinitive, active, 195; passive, 205
perfect passive participle, 201
perfect stem, 185
perfect subjunctive, active, 361; passive, 362
person, 122
personal endings, active, 122; passive, 164
personal pronouns, 280, 480
place, where, whither, whence, 263-265; names of towns and donum and rūs, 266-268
pluperfect indicative, active, 187.2; passive, 202
pluperfect subjunctive, active, 361; passive, 363
plus, declension of, 313
possessive pronouns, 97, 98
possum, conjugation of, 495
predicate, defined, 19
predicate adjective, defined, 55
predicate noun, 75, 76
prepositions, with the abl., 209; with the acc., 340
present indicative, 128, 130, 147
present stem, 126. a
present subjunctive, 344
primary tenses, 356
principal parts, 183
pronouns
classification of, 278
defined, 19.2. a
demonstrative, 481
indefinite, 297, 484-487
intensive, 285, 286, 481
interrogative, 483
personal, 480
possessive, 97, 98
reflexive, 281
relative, 220, 221
pronunciation, 4-7
prōsum, conjugation of, 496
purpose
dative of, 436, 437
expressed by the gerund or gerundive with ad, 497
not expressed by the infinitive, 352
subjunctive of, 348-350, 365-367
quality, gen. or abl. of, 441-445
quam, with a comparative, 308
quantity, 11-13
questions, direct, 210; indirect, 430-432
qui, declension and use of, 220, 221, 482
quidam, declension of, 485
quis, declension and use of, 225-227, 483
quisquam, declension of, 486
quisque, declension of, 484
reflexive pronouns, 281
relative clauses of characteristic or description, 389, 390
relative clauses of purpose, 348, 349
relative pronouns, 220, 221
result clauses, 384-387
reviews, 502-528
rūs, constructions of, 266
sē, distinguished from īpse, 285. a
second conjugation, 489
second or o-declension, 71-93, 462
sentences, simple, complex, compound, 219
separation, abl. of, 180
separative ablative, 178-181
sequence of tenses, 356-358
space, extent of, expressed by the acc., 336
specification, abl. of, 398
stems, of nouns, 230; of verbs, 184
subject, defined, 19.2; of the infinitive, 213, 214
subjunctive, formation of the present, 344
INDEX

of the imperfect, 354
of the perfect, 361, 362
of the pluperfect, 361. c, 363

subjunctive constructions
characteristic or description, 389, 390
indirect questions, 430–432
purpose, 349, 366, 372
result, 385, 386
time, cause, or concession, with cum, 395, 396

subjunctive ideas, 346
subjunctive tenses, 342, 343
subordinate clauses, 219
suī, declension of, 281, 480
sum, conjugation of, 494
suus, use of, 98. c, 116
syllables, 8; division of, 9; quantity of, 13
syntax, rules of, 501

temporal clauses with cum, 395, 396
tense, defined, 120
tense signs
imperfect, 133
future, 137, 156
pluperfect active, 187. 2
future perfect active, 187. 3
tenses, primary and secondary, 356;
sequence of, 357, 358
third conjugation, 496, 492
third declension of nouns
classes, 231, 463
consonant stems, 232–238, 464
gender, 247

i-stems, 241–244, 465
irregular nouns, 246
time, abl. of, 275
time, acc. of, 336
towns, rules for names of, 266, 267, 268
transitive verb, 20. a
trēs, declension of, 479
tu, declension of, 280, 480
tuus, compared with vester, 98. b

u-declension of nouns, 259, 260, 466
ultima, 9. 3

verbs
agreement of, 28
conjugation of, 126, 488–491
deponent, 338, 339, 493
irregular, 494–500
personal endings of, 122, 164
principal parts of, 183
vester, compared with tuus, 98. b
vis, declension of, 468
vocalaries
English-Latin, pp. 332–343
Latin-English, pp. 299–331
special, pp. 283–298
vocative case, 56. a
of nouns in -us of the second declension, 73. b
of proper nouns in -ius and of filius, 88
voice, defined, 163
volō, conjugation of, 497
vōs, declension of, 280, 480
vowels, sounds of, 5, 6; quantity of, 12